Owner's Manual
English North America 08.2026
8B1012721BF

8B1012721BF

www.audi.com

2027 A5 Owner's Manual

# Owner's Manual

## 2027 A5

Audi Vorsprung durch Technik

ownersmanual.audi.com

These instructions may not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without written consent of AUDI AG. All rights reserved by AUDI AG.

© 2026 AUDI AG

# Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi – we value your trust in us.

Your new Audi will allow you to experience the best in groundbreaking technology and premium quality equipment that a vehicle has to offer. Audi recommends that you read your Owner's Manual thoroughly so that you quickly become acquainted with your Audi and make use of all of its features.

In addition to explaining how the different features work, there are many useful tips and information concerning your safety, how to care for your vehicle, and how to maintain your vehicle's value. Audi also gives you useful tips and information on how to drive your vehicle more efficiently and in an environmentally-friendly manner.

Audi hopes you enjoy driving your vehicle and wishes you safe and pleasant motoring.

**WARNING**

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

8B1012721BF

**Summary** . . . . . 6
**Quick reference information** . . . . . 6
About this Owner's Manual . . . . . 6
Using the digital Owner's Manual . . . . . 7
Cockpit . . . . . 9
Overview of indicator lights . . . . . 10

**Display and operation** . . . . . 17
**Instrument cluster** . . . . . 17
Overview and operation . . . . . 17
Description of the displays . . . . . 18

**Touch displays** . . . . . 19
Gestures and input . . . . . 19
Overview of Multi Media Interface displays . . . . . 20
Operating and customizing the MMI . . . . . 23
Opening the vehicle menu . . . . . 25

**Head-up display** . . . . . 25
Operating the head-up display . . . . . 25
Adjusting the head-up display . . . . . 25

**Audi assistant** . . . . . 26
Voice control . . . . . 26
Routines and proactive suggestions . . . . . 27
External voice operation . . . . . 27

**Valet mode** . . . . . 28
Introduction . . . . . 28
Opening the valet mode settings menu . . 28
Using the valet mode . . . . . 28

**Starting and driving** . . . . . 29
**Personalization** . . . . . 29
Users . . . . . 29
Key user . . . . . 30

**Opening and closing** . . . . . 30
Central locking . . . . . 30
Anti-theft alarm system . . . . . 34
Passenger occupant detection system . . . 35
Manually unlocking and locking the doors . 37
Keys . . . . . 39
Unlocking and locking . . . . . 42
Luggage compartment lid . . . . . 44
Power windows . . . . . 47
Convenience opening and closing . . . . . 47
Garage door opener . . . . . 47

**Lights and vision** . . . . . 49
Exterior lighting . . . . . 49
Interior lighting . . . . . 53
Vision . . . . . 54
Windshield wipers . . . . . 57
Digital compass . . . . . 58

**Sitting correctly and safely** . . . . . 59
Maintaining the correct seating position . 59
Front seats . . . . . 60
Seat functions . . . . . 61
Steering wheel . . . . . 63
Head restraints . . . . . 64
Safety belts . . . . . 65
Airbag system . . . . . 69
Child restraint systems . . . . . 73

**Storage and convenience** . . . . . 78
Storage and compartments . . . . . 78
Information about power sources . . . . . 79
Information about the cup holders . . . . . 80
Luggage compartment . . . . . 80
Roof rack . . . . . 82

**Warm and cold** . . . . . 83
Climate control system . . . . . 83
Information about the fluids in the climate control system . . . . . 87

**Driving** . . . . . 88
Starting systems . . . . . 88
Drive system . . . . . 89
Transmission selector positions and driving programs . . . . . 91
When driving . . . . . 93
Start/Stop system . . . . . 96
Brakes . . . . . 97
Parking brake . . . . . 99
Special driving situations . . . . . 101

**Driving dynamics** . . . . . 102
Audi drive select . . . . . 102
Suspension . . . . . 103
Steering . . . . . 104

All wheel drive (quattro) . . . . . 104
Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) . . . . 105

**Trailer towing** . . . . . 107
Driving with a trailer . . . . . 107
Trailer hitch . . . . . 109

**Assist systems** . . . . . 111
**General information about assist systems** . . . . . 111
Overview of the assist systems . . . . . 111
Safety information about the assist systems and system limitations . . . . . 113
Surrounding area detection . . . . . 114
Driver assistance menu . . . . . 116
Driver assistance systems general messages . . . . . 116
Driver monitoring camera . . . . . 117
Opening the parking system menu . . . . . 117

**Warning systems** . . . . . 118
Speed warning . . . . . 118
Distance warning . . . . . 118
Side assist . . . . . 119
Exit warning . . . . . 121
Fatigue warning . . . . . 122
Distraction warning . . . . . 123

**Lane assist systems** . . . . . 124
Lane departure warning . . . . . 124
Lane center guidance . . . . . 126
Lane change assist . . . . . 129
Assisted hands-free driving . . . . . 130

**Cruise control systems** . . . . . 133
Adaptive cruise control . . . . . 133
Predictive speed adjustment . . . . . 139

**Combined assist systems** . . . . . 141
Adaptive cruise assist . . . . . 141

**Braking and evasive action systems** . . . . . 142
Emergency assist . . . . . 142
Active front assist . . . . . 144
Rear turn assist . . . . . 147

**Other assist systems** . . . . . 149
Predictive efficiency messages . . . . . 149
Camera-based traffic sign recognition . . . 150
Hazard information . . . . . 151
Proactive occupant protection . . . . . 153
Traffic light information . . . . . 154
Lap timer . . . . . 155
Integrated Toll Module . . . . . 156

**Parking systems** . . . . . 157
Parking systems with distance display . . . 157
Rearview camera and surround view cameras . . . . . 159
Rear emergency brake assist . . . . . 163
Rear cross-traffic assist . . . . . 164
Curb warning . . . . . 165
Maneuver assist . . . . . 166

**Assisted parking systems** . . . . . 169
Assisted parking options . . . . . 169
System limitations of the assisted parking systems . . . . . 170
Searching for a parking space for assisted parking . . . . . 170
Transferring a parking space you have approached and measured to the assisted parking system . . . . . 172
Assisted parking and exiting of a parking space . . . . . 172
Remote-controlled parking . . . . . 175
Reversing assist . . . . . 180
Trained parking . . . . . 182

**Infotainment system** . . . . . 185
**Phone** . . . . . 185
Introduction . . . . . 185
Opening the phone function . . . . . 185
Connecting a mobile device . . . . . 185
Overview of phone symbols . . . . . 186
Opening the phone settings menu . . . . . 186
Opening the messages menu . . . . . 186
Using phone functions . . . . . 186
Using text message functions . . . . . 188
Using the phone compartment . . . . . 188
Phone troubleshooting . . . . . 190

8B1012721BF

**Audi connect** . . . . . 191
Information about Audi connect . . . . . 191
Using the Internet in the vehicle . . . . . 192
Audi connect services . . . . . 193
Connecting a mobile device to the vehicle hotspot . . . . . 194
Store . . . . . 194

**Emergency call** . . . . . 195
Emergency call systems . . . . . 195
Online roadside assistance . . . . . 196

**Navigation** . . . . . 197
Introduction . . . . . 197
Navigation system limitations . . . . . 197
Opening navigation . . . . . 197
Overview of navigation symbols . . . . . 197
Opening the navigation settings menu . . . 198
Opening the map contents menu . . . . . 198
Entering a destination . . . . . 198
Using functions with active route guidance . . . . . 200
Using predictive route guidance . . . . . 201
Operating the map . . . . . 201
Using map functions . . . . . 202
Using traffic information . . . . . 202
Performing an online map update . . . . . 202
Navigation troubleshooting . . . . . 203

**Radio** . . . . . 203
Introduction . . . . . 203
Operating the radio . . . . . 203
Overview of radio symbols . . . . . 204
Opening the radio settings menu . . . . . 204
Using radio functions . . . . . 204
SiriusXM . . . . . 205
Radio troubleshooting . . . . . 207

**Media** . . . . . 207
Introduction . . . . . 207
Information about using mobile devices and media . . . . . 207
Connecting mobile devices and media . . . 208
Using media . . . . . 208
Opening the media settings menu . . . . . 209
Using media functions . . . . . 209
Information about supported media and file formats . . . . . 209
Media troubleshooting . . . . . 210

**Dash cam** . . . . . 210
Introduction . . . . . 210
Starting the dash cam . . . . . 210
Opening the dash cam settings menu . . . 211
Operating the dash cam . . . . . 211
Using dash cam functions . . . . . 211

**Interior entertainment** . . . . . 212
Introduction . . . . . 212
Using themes . . . . . 212
Using experiences . . . . . 212
Using game controllers . . . . . 213

**Smartphone interface** . . . . . 214
Introduction . . . . . 214
Connecting a smartphone . . . . . 214
Smartphone interface troubleshooting . . 215

**Additional settings** . . . . . 215
Opening the settings menu . . . . . 215
System settings . . . . . 215
Connection manager . . . . . 216
Software update . . . . . 217
Legal information . . . . . 218

**Maintenance and Care** . . . . . 220
**Checking and Filling** . . . . . 220
Fuel . . . . . 220
Refueling . . . . . 221
Emissions control system . . . . . 223
Particulate filter . . . . . 223
Engine compartment . . . . . 224
Engine oil . . . . . 228
Cooling system . . . . . 233
Brake fluid . . . . . 237
Electrical system . . . . . 238
Battery . . . . . 239
Windshield washer system . . . . . 243
Service interval display . . . . . 243
Online Car Care . . . . . 244

**Wheels** . . . . . 244
Tires and rims . . . . . 244
Tire pressure monitoring system . . . . . 262
Information about run-flat tires . . . . . 264

**Care and cleaning** . . . . . 265
Introduction . . . . . 265
Washing your vehicle . . . . . 265
Cleaning and care information . . . . . 267
Taking your vehicle out of service . . . . . 271

**Do it Yourself** . . . . . 272
**Emergency assistance** . . . . . 272
Introduction . . . . . 272
Equipment . . . . . 272
Tire repair kit . . . . . 272
Replacing wheels . . . . . 274
Jump-starting . . . . . 276
Towing . . . . . 278

**Fuses and bulbs** . . . . . 280
Replacing fuses . . . . . 280
Replacing bulbs . . . . . 284

**Customer information** . . . . . 285
**Data privacy** . . . . . 285
Privacy information . . . . . 285
Image recording . . . . . 285
Data storage . . . . . 285
Privacy settings . . . . . 287
Information about data collection . . . . . 289

**Accessories and technical changes** . . . . . 289
Warranty . . . . . 289
Audi Literature Shop . . . . . 289
Driving in other countries . . . . . 289
Maintenance, repairs, and technical modifications . . . . . 290
Accessories and replacement parts . . . . . 291

**Technical data** . . . . . 292
Identification data . . . . . 292
Vehicle data . . . . . 292

**Other information** . . . . . 293
Information about brands and licenses . . 293
Disposal instructions . . . . . 293
Customer information for specific countries . . . . . 293
Reporting Safety Defects . . . . . 294

**Index** . . . . . 296

8B1012721BF

# Quick reference information

## About this Owner's Manual

### Introduction

This Owner's Manual contains important information, safety precautions, and tips for using your vehicle.

**READ THIS OWNER'S MANUAL AND KEEP IT!**

Read this Owner's Manual carefully before using your vehicle. Keep this manual and any other applicable documents in your vehicle at all times. This is especially important if you loan your vehicle to others or sell it.

### Versions of the Owner's Manual

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the following versions of the Owner's Manual may be available for your vehicle:

**Digital Owner's Manual and printed Owner's Manual**

Both a digital and a printed version of the Owner's Manual are available for your vehicle.

**Printed Owner's Manual**

Only a printed version of the Owner's Manual is available for your vehicle.

**Supplements and updates to the Owner's Manual**

Please note that it has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. "Audi" refers to AUDI AG, the respective importer in a country, as well as joint ventures. Audi reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured. Therefore, it is also possible that the Owner's Manual may be updated. This can be done in the form of supplements or software updates. Supplements may be provided to you in both printed and digital form.

If a supplement was provided only in digital format or after a software update, the information in the printed Owner's Manual may differ from the digital Owner's Manual. In these cases, the digital Owner's Manual will contain the more current version.

**Additional documents in the vehicle**

**READ THESE PRINTED DOCUMENTS AND KEEP THEM!**

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, additional documents may be included in your vehicle *only* in a printed format. These may supplement or change the Owner's Manual. Read these documents carefully before using your vehicle. Keep these documents in your vehicle at all times. This is especially important if you loan your vehicle to others or sell it.

### Information about vehicle equipment

**Vehicle-specific features**

This Owner's Manual is not tailored to your specific vehicle, but rather describes all standard equipment, equipment for specific markets, and special equipment that is available for the entire model line. It is possible that some of the equipment described is not available in your vehicle. Standard equipment and special equipment are not labeled. In addition, it is possible that some of the equipment and functions will only be available at a later time or they may only be available in certain markets. The illustrations in this manual are a guide. Some of the details in your vehicle may differ from the illustrations. Text, illustrations, and specifications are based on the most current information available at the time of printing, and shall not constitute a basis for liability claims.

**Availability of equipment**

You can use the following methods to determine if your vehicle is equipped with certain equipment:

– You can visually see the described controls, buttons, vehicle components, body styles, etc. ▶

– You can perform the operation or settings for described functions, components, or equipment in the MMI or instrument cluster.
– You can find the equipment/function under the vehicle details in the “myAudi App”. The availability of the “myAudi app” and its functions varies depending on the country. There may be an app other than the “myAudi app” available for your vehicle.
– You can find the equipment/function in the equipment list in the purchase agreement.

If you cannot find information about the equipment, then you should assume that your vehicle is not equipped with it. If you are uncertain, you can contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

## Symbols and standards for descriptions

Pay attention to the following symbols and standards for descriptions in this Owner's Manual.

The appearance of symbols and cross references may differ in the printed and digital Owner's Manual.

▶ The section continues on the next page.

⇨ *page 69* Cross reference to other descriptions or topics.

⇨ ⚠ Cross reference to a “WARNING”.

**Directions**, such as “left”, “right”, “front”, and “rear”, are based on the vehicle's direction of travel.

**WARNING**

Text with this symbol contains information about safety and how to reduce the risk of serious personal injury or death.

**Note**

Text with this symbol contains information about reducing the risk of damage to your vehicle.

**For the sake of the environment**

Text with this symbol contains information on protecting the environment.

# Using the digital Owner's Manual

## Availability of the digital Owner's Manual

Depending on the country, you have the following options for accessing the digital Owner's Manual:
– myAudi
– Vehicle Infotainment system

The content is the information that was available at the time of the editorial deadline for this manual. There may be changes over the service life of the vehicle.

## Accessing the Owner's Manual in myAudi

Depending on the country, you can access the Owner's Manual in myAudi on your mobile device. This function is not available for all mobile devices.

Requirement: you must have a registered myAudi account. Your vehicle must be registered in your myAudi account.

▸ Visit my.audi.com, or
▸ Start the myAudi app on your mobile device.

## Accessing the Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Depending on the country, you can access the Owner's Manual directly in the vehicle.

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Online owner's manual**.

Each time you access the Owner's Manual, it will automatically display in the language that is set for your MMI.
▸ To change the language of the Owner's Manual, select: ⊞ > **Online owner's manual** > ⚙. ▶

### Usage options

– Access the Owner's Manual content sorted by chapters
– View supplements (as long as a supplement is available)
– View available indicator lights and their meanings
– Search the index for a specific keyword
– Search the Owner's Manual for words of your choice using the free text search

**WARNING**

To reduce the risk of an accident, only use the digital Owner's Manual when the vehicle is parked safely.

# Cockpit

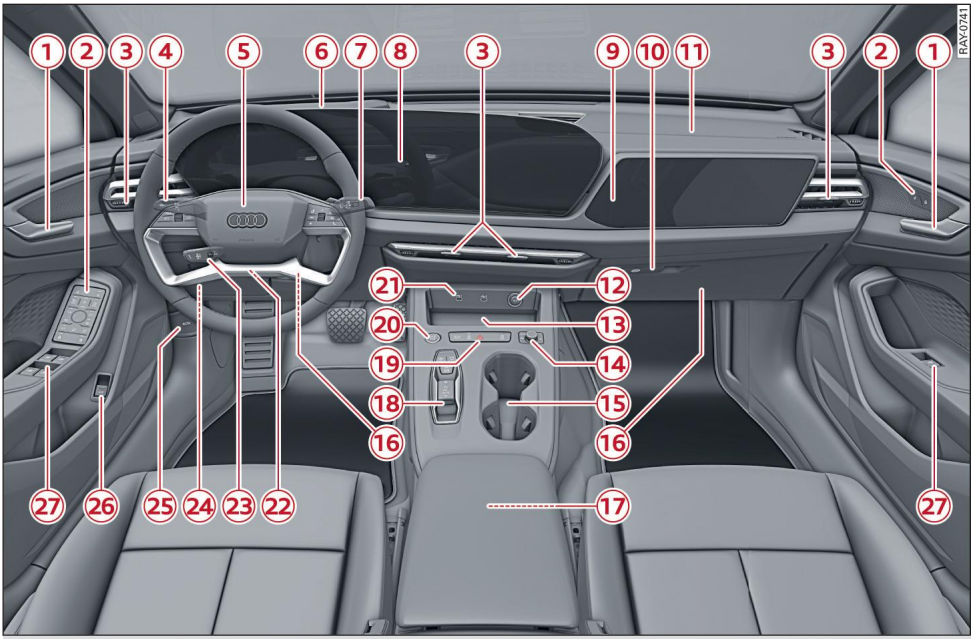



**Fig. 1** Cockpit

Some of the equipment listed here is only installed in certain models or is available as an option.

1. Door handle
2. Depending on equipment, controls for:
   - – Central locking . . . . . 33
   - – Lights . . . . . 49
   - – All-weather lights . . . . . 49
   - – Exterior mirror adjustment . . . . . 54
   - – Memory function . . . . . 62
   - – Child safety lock . . . . . 34
3. Air vent
4. Lever for:
   - – Turn signals and high beams . . . . 50
   - – High beam assistant . . . . . 51
   - – Lane departure warning . . . . . 124
   - – Lane center guidance . . . . . 127
5. Multifunction steering wheel with:
   - – Horn
   - – Driver's airbag . . . . . 69
   - – Operating buttons . . . . . 17
   - – Shift paddles . . . . . 94
6. Head-up display . . . . . 25
7. Windshield washer system lever . . 57
8. Panoramic display with:
   - – Instrument cluster . . . . . 17
   - – Central display . . . . . 20
9. Front passenger display
10. Lockable glove compartment . . . . . 79
11. Front passenger's airbag . . . . . 69
12. Socket . . . . . 79
13. Depending on equipment:
    - – Storage compartment
    - – Phone compartment with wireless charging function . . . . . 188
14. MMI control knob . . . . . 23
15. Cup holder . . . . . 80
16. Knee airbag . . . . . 69
17. Center armrest with storage compartment. Depending on vehicle equipment, it may have: ▶

8B1012721BF

– Starting the vehicle when there is a malfunction . . . . . 88
(18) Depending on equipment:
– Driver assistance systems button . 116
– Parking systems button . . . . . 117
– Electromechanical parking brake button . . . . . 99
– Transmission selector . . . . . 91
(19) Depending on equipment, buttons for:
– drive select . . . . . 102
– Start/Stop system . . . . . 96
– Emergency flashers . . . . . 52
– Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) . . . . . 106
(20) START ENGINE STOP button . . . . 88
(21) USB ports with charging function . 208
(22) Steering wheel adjustment . . . . . 63
(23) Lever for:
– Adaptive cruise control . . . . . 133
(24) Connection port for the On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) . . . . . 286
(25) Hood release . . . . . 226
(26) Button for:
– Luggage compartment lid . . . . . 44
(27) Power window controls . . . . . 47

# Overview of indicator lights

## Introduction

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster or central display blink or turn on. They indicate functions or malfunctions. Some warning and indicator lights turn on when you turn on the vehicle and must turn off when the drive system is turned on or while driving.

With some indicator lights, messages may appear and warning signals may sound. The indicator lights and messages may be covered by other displays. To display the messages again, open the notification center in the central display.

Some indicator lights in the display can be shown in several colors.

## ⚠ Central indicator light

If the ⚠ or ⚠ indicator light turns on, check the message in the instrument cluster.

## Overview of indicator lights

The following indicator lights may be available, depending on the vehicle equipment:

| Red indicator lights | |
|---|---|
| ⚠ | Central indicator light<br>⇨ *page 10*,<br>Instrument cluster<br>⇨ *page 17* |
| | Safety belt<br>⇨ *page 67*,<br>⇨ *page 67* |
| | Status display of the seats<br>⇨ *page 67* |
| | Drive system<br>⇨ *page 91* |
| BRAKE | Brake system<br>⇨ *page 98*,<br>⇨ *page 238*,<br>Electromechanical parking brake<br>⇨ *page 101* |
| | Brake system<br>⇨ *page 98*,<br>⇨ *page 238*,<br>Electromechanical parking brake<br>⇨ *page 101* |
| PARK | Electromechanical parking brake<br>⇨ *page 99* |
| Ⓟ | Electromechanical parking brake<br>⇨ *page 99* |
| | Steering<br>⇨ *page 104* |
| | Distance warning<br>⇨ *page 118* |
| | Lane departure warning intervention<br>⇨ *page 125* |

▶

| | |
|---|---|
| | Take-over prompt (lane center guidance)<br>⇨ *page 127*,<br>⇨ *page 128* |
| | Steering take-over prompt (lane center guidance)<br>⇨ *page 128* |
| | Lane change assist<br>⇨ *page 129*,<br>Lane change assist canceled<br>⇨ *page 130* |
| | Brake take-over prompt (adaptive cruise control)<br>⇨ *page 136* |
| | Brake take-over prompt (adaptive cruise control)<br>⇨ *page 136*,<br>Safe start monitor<br>⇨ *page 137* |
| | Safe start monitor<br>⇨ *page 137* |
| | Emergency assist<br>⇨ *page 143* |
| | Emergency assist<br>⇨ *page 143* |
| | Emergency assist<br>⇨ *page 143* |
| | Active front assist<br>⇨ *page 145* |
| | Swerve assist<br>⇨ *page 145* |
| | Cross-traffic information<br>⇨ *page 146* |
| | Proactive occupant protection<br>⇨ *page 153* |
| P OFF | Assisted parking (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 175*,<br>Remote-controlled parking (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 180* |
| OFF | Reversing assist (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 182* |
| P OFF | Trained parking (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 184* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Software update<br>⇨ *page 218* |
| | Hood<br>⇨ *page 227* |
| | Engine oil pressure<br>⇨ *page 232* |
| MIN | Engine oil level (MIN)<br>⇨ *page 232* |
| | Cooling system<br>⇨ *page 233*,<br>⇨ *page 235*,<br>⇨ *page 236* |
| | Electrical system<br>⇨ *page 238* |

**Yellow indicator lights**

| | |
|---|---|
| | Central indicator light<br>⇨ *page 10* |
| | Engine speed limitation<br>⇨ *page 18*,<br>Drive system<br>⇨ *page 91*,<br>Cooling system<br>⇨ *page 233*,<br>⇨ *page 235*,<br>⇨ *page 236* |
| | Central locking<br>⇨ *page 33* |
| | Passenger occupant detection malfunction<br>⇨ *page 37* |
| | Battery in remote control key<br>⇨ *page 40* |
| | Bulb failure indicator<br>⇨ *page 53* |
| | Adaptive light<br>⇨ *page 53* |
| | Headlight range control system<br>⇨ *page 53* |
| | Light/rain sensor<br>⇨ *page 53* |
| | Windshield wipers<br>⇨ *page 58* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Safety systems<br>⇨ *page 70* |
| | Vehicle starting system<br>⇨ *page 88* |
| | Convenience key<br>⇨ *page 88* |
| POWER LIMIT | Drive system<br>⇨ *page 91* |
| OFF | Vehicle sound<br>⇨ *page 91* |
| | Transmission<br>⇨ *page 95* |
| | Brake system<br>⇨ *page 98*,<br>⇨ *page 238* |
| | Electromechanical parking brake<br>⇨ *page 101* |
| HOLD | Hold function<br>⇨ *page 101* |
| | Damper control<br>⇨ *page 104* |
| | Steering<br>⇨ *page 104* |
| | All wheel drive<br>⇨ *page 105* |
| OFF | Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)<br>⇨ *page 106*,<br>⇨ *page 106* |
| ESC OFF | Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)<br>⇨ *page 106* |
| | Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)<br>⇨ *page 107* |
| ABS | Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)<br>⇨ *page 107* |
| ABS | Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)<br>⇨ *page 107* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Distance warning (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 119*,<br>Active front assist<br>⇨ *page 147*,<br>Rear turn assist<br>⇨ *page 148* |
| | Side assist<br>⇨ *page 120* |
| | Exit warning<br>⇨ *page 122* |
| | Fatigue warning<br>⇨ *page 122*,<br>⇨ *page 123* |
| | Distraction warning<br>⇨ *page 123*,<br>⇨ *page 124* |
| | Lane departure warning (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 126* |
| | Steering take-over prompt (lane center guidance)<br>⇨ *page 128* |
| | Lane center guidance (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 128* |
| | Lane change assist (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 130* |
| | Hands-free driving (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 132* |
| | Adaptive cruise control (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 139*,<br>Adaptive cruise assist (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 142* |
| | Emergency assist (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 143* |
| | Camera-based traffic sign recognition<br>⇨ *page 151* |
| | Proactive occupant protection<br>⇨ *page 154* |

▶

| | |
|---|---|
| P | Parking systems<br>⇨ *page 159*,<br>Curb warning<br>⇨ *page 166* |
| | Rear cross-traffic assist (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 165* |
| | Maneuver assist<br>⇨ *page 168* |
| P OFF | Assisted parking<br>⇨ *page 175* |
| P | Assisted parking (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 175*,<br>Remote-controlled parking (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 180* |
| OFF | Reversing assist (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 182* |
| P | Trained parking (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 184* |
| SOS | Emergency call function<br>⇨ *page 196* |
| | Software update<br>⇨ *page 218* |
| | Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)<br>⇨ *page 221*,<br>⇨ *page 223* |
| | Tank system<br>⇨ *page 223* |
| | Tank system<br>⇨ *page 223* |
| | Particulate filter<br>⇨ *page 224* |
| MIN | Engine oil level (MIN)<br>⇨ *page 229* |
| MAX | Engine oil level (MAX)<br>⇨ *page 229*,<br>⇨ *page 232* |
| SENSOR | Engine oil sensor<br>⇨ *page 232* |
| | Engine warm-up request<br>⇨ *page 232* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Cooling system<br>⇨ *page 236* |
| | Electrical system<br>⇨ *page 238* |
| | Washer fluid level<br>⇨ *page 243* |
| | Tire pressure<br>⇨ *page 263* |
| TPMS | Tire pressure<br>⇨ *page 263* |

**Other indicator lights**

| | |
|---|---|
| | Active passenger occupant detection<br>⇨ *page 37* |
| | Low beam headlights<br>⇨ *page 49* |
| | Parking lights<br>⇨ *page 49*,<br>Low beam headlights<br>⇨ *page 49* |
| | Turn signals<br>⇨ *page 50*,<br>⇨ *page 52* |
| | Turn signals<br>⇨ *page 50*,<br>⇨ *page 52* |
| | Rear safety belt<br>⇨ *page 67* |
| | Status display of the seats<br>⇨ *page 67* |
| A | Start/Stop system<br>⇨ *page 97* |
| HOLD | Hold function<br>⇨ *page 100* |
| | Lane departure warning (ready to provide warnings on at least one side)<br>⇨ *page 125* |
| | Lane center guidance (active)<br>⇨ *page 127* |
| | Lane change assist<br>⇨ *page 129* |

8B1012721BF

| | |
|---|---|
| | Hands-free driving active<br>⇨ *page 131* |
| | Adaptive cruise control (active)<br>⇨ *page 134* |
| | Adaptive cruise control (active)<br>⇨ *page 134* |
| | Adaptive cruise control (active)<br>⇨ *page 134*, |
| | Adaptive cruise control (active)<br>⇨ *page 134*,<br>Vehicle driving ahead (predictive messages)<br>⇨ *page 149* |
| 50 | Speed limit (predictive speed adjustment)<br>⇨ *page 139*,<br>Speed limit (predictive messages)<br>⇨ *page 149* |
| | Speed limit removed (predictive speed adjustment)<br>⇨ *page 139* |
| | Curve (predictive speed adjustment)<br>⇨ *page 139*,<br>Curve (predictive messages)<br>⇨ *page 149* |
| | Entrance ramp (Predictive speed adjustment)<br>⇨ *page 139* |
| | Exit (predictive speed adjustment)<br>⇨ *page 139*,<br>Exit (predictive messages)<br>⇨ *page 149* |
| | Intersection (predictive speed adjustment)<br>⇨ *page 139*,<br>Intersection (predictive messages)<br>⇨ *page 149* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Traffic circle (predictive speed adjustment)<br>⇨ *page 139*,<br>Traffic circle (predictive messages)<br>⇨ *page 149* |
| | Speed bump (predictive speed adjustment)<br>⇨ *page 139* |
| | Right-of-way (predictive speed adjustment)<br>⇨ *page 139* |
| STOP | Stop sign (Predictive speed adjustment)<br>⇨ *page 139* |
| STOP! | Stop sign without recognized stop line (predictive speed adjustment)<br>⇨ *page 139* |
| | Predictive efficiency messages<br>⇨ *page 149* |
| % | Steep grade (predictive messages)<br>⇨ *page 149* |
| | High beam headlights<br>⇨ *page 50*,<br>⇨ *page 51* |
| AUTO | High beam assistant<br>⇨ *page 51* |
| | Door lock<br>⇨ *page 33* |
| | Passenger occupant detection with warning tone<br>⇨ *page 37* |
| | Passenger occupant detection<br>⇨ *page 37* |
| AUTO | High beam assistant<br>⇨ *page 51*,<br>⇨ *page 53* |
| | Rear safety belt<br>⇨ *page 67* |
| | Status display of the seats<br>⇨ *page 67* |
| | Convenience key<br>⇨ *page 88* |

| | |
|---|---|
| AUTO | Recuperation<br>⇨ *page 90* |
| | Brake system<br>⇨ *page 98* |
| | Brake<br>⇨ *page 101* |
| MPH | Speed warning system<br>⇨ *page 118* |
| Km/h | Speed warning system<br>⇨ *page 118* |
| | Distance warning malfunction<br>⇨ *page 119* |
| | Side assist<br>⇨ *page 120* |
| | Exit warning<br>⇨ *page 122* |
| | Fatigue warning<br>⇨ *page 122*,<br>⇨ *page 123* |
| | Distraction warning<br>⇨ *page 123*,<br>⇨ *page 124*,<br>⇨ *page 131* |
| | Lane departure warning (turned on, not ready to provide warnings)<br>⇨ *page 125* |
| | Lane departure warning (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 126* |
| | Lane center guidance (turned on, but not active)<br>⇨ *page 127*,<br>⇨ *page 128* |
| | Lane center guidance (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 128* |
| | Lane change assist<br>⇨ *page 129*,<br>Lane change assist canceled<br>⇨ *page 130*,<br>Lane change assist (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 130* |
| | Hands-free driving available<br>⇨ *page 131* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Hands-free driving (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 132* |
| | Adaptive cruise control<br>⇨ *page 134*,<br>Adaptive cruise control (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 139*,<br>Adaptive cruise assist (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 142* |
| RES | Driving starts automatically (adaptive cruise control)<br>⇨ *page 137* |
| | Emergency assist canceled<br>⇨ *page 143*,<br>Emergency assist (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 143* |
| | Emergency assist turned off<br>⇨ *page 143* |
| OFF | Active front assist<br>⇨ *page 146* |
| | Active front assist<br>⇨ *page 147* |
| | Rear turn assist<br>⇨ *page 148* |
| | Camera-based traffic sign recognition<br>⇨ *page 151* |
| | Proactive occupant protection<br>⇨ *page 154* |
| P | Parking systems<br>⇨ *page 159*,<br>Curb warning<br>⇨ *page 166* |
| | Rear emergency brake assist<br>⇨ *page 163*,<br>Rear emergency brake assist (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 164*,<br>Braking intervention (maneuver assist)<br>⇨ *page 167*,<br>Maneuver assist<br>⇨ *page 168* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Rear cross-traffic assist (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 165* |
| P OFF | Assisted parking<br>⇨ *page 175* |
| P | Assisted parking (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 175*,<br>Remote-controlled parking (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 180* |
| OFF | Reversing assist<br>⇨ *page 181*,<br>Reversing assist (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 182* |
| | Reversing assist<br>⇨ *page 181* |
| P OFF | Trained parking<br>⇨ *page 184* |
| P | Trained parking<br>⇨ *page 184*,<br>Trained parking (malfunction)<br>⇨ *page 184* |

# Instrument cluster

## Overview and operation

### Safety information about the instrument cluster

**WARNING**

– If there is a serious system malfunction, the display may turn off. The ⚠ indicator light may also turn on. Stop the vehicle safely. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– At temperatures below 41°F (+5°C), a snowflake symbol appears in front of the temperature display ❄. Do not assume the roads are free of ice based on the outside temperature display. Be aware that there may be ice on roads even when the outside temperature is around 41°F (+5°C) and that ice can increase the risk of accidents.

### Display areas in the instrument cluster

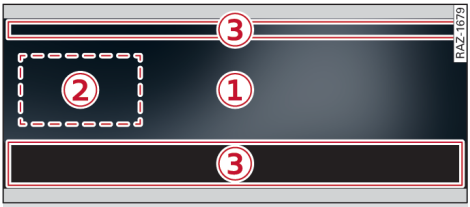



**Fig. 2** Display areas in the instrument cluster

The instrument cluster is divided into the following display areas. The visibility and appearance of the display areas depends on the selected view and Audi drive select mode.

Speeds are displayed in mph (miles per hour) or km/h (kilometers per hour).

Certain content in the instrument cluster can also be displayed in the head-up display.

#### ① Central display area

The central display area shows content about vehicle operation, among other things.

Examples of content that can be displayed:
– Navigation
– Assist systems area view

#### ② Left display area

The left display area shows the on-board computer and Infotainment system content. The content displayed is divided into multiple tabs.

Examples of content that can be displayed in the various tabs:
– On-board computer
– Radio/media
– Phone
– Navigation
– Lap timer

#### ③ Status bar

Examples of displays:
– Digital speedometer
– Indicator lights
– Remaining range
– Transmission selector position that is selected
– Outside temperature display

### Operating the instrument cluster

You can adjust the brightness of the instrument cluster in the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25*.

You can operate the instrument cluster using the controls on the multifunction steering wheel.

| Control | Function |
|---|---|
| ▭ / ▭ | **Press:** switches between tabs<br>**Press and hold:** hides tabs |
| Left thumbwheel | **Turn:** scrolls upward or downward within a tab<br>**Press:** confirms selection<br>**Press and hold:** resets value/memory |
| VIEW | **Press:** switches between views |

### Changing the instrument cluster display

The instrument cluster has multiple views. Each view emphasizes a certain display, for example displaying the map or driver assistance systems. Within each view, you can also switch between the Audi drive select-specific displays. ▶

You have the following options for changing the instrument cluster display:

- To switch between views, press the VIEW button.
- To switch the Audi drive select-specific display, change the drive select mode.

You can specify the Audi drive select-specific display yourself in the **balanced** or **individual** Audi drive select modes.

# Description of the displays

## Information about the tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM). The beginning of the red zone in the tachometer indicates the maximum permissible engine speed for all gears once the engine has been broken in. Before reaching the red zone, you should shift into the next higher gear, select the "D" or "S" position, or remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

If the engine speed limitation was activated by an engine control malfunction, the indicator light will turn on. Make sure the engine speed does not go above the speed displayed, for example when downshifting. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Note**

The needle in the tachometer may only be in the red area of the gauge for a short period of time before there is a risk of damaging the engine.

## Information about the engine oil temperature indicator

Depending on vehicle equipment, the engine oil temperature indicator will only be displayed in certain Audi drive select modes, for example in the **dynamic** Audi drive select mode. The display is located in the status bar or below the tachometer.

The engine has reached its operating temperature when the engine oil temperature is between 176°F (80°C) and 248°F (120°C) under normal driving conditions. The engine oil temperature can rise significantly if there is heavy engine load and high outside temperatures. This is not a cause for concern as long as the or indicator lights do not turn on.

## Information about the on-board computer

### Changing the display in the trip computer

- Turn the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel until the desired display is shown.

### Displays in the on-board computer

Examples of displays:

– Short-term and long-term memory
– Consumption
– Distances

### Resetting values to zero

– To reset the value in memory to zero, press and hold the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel for one second.

### Information about routes

The trip odometer shows the distance driven since it was last reset. This value can be reset manually.

The odometer shows the total distance that the vehicle has been driven.

Distances are displayed in mi (miles) or km (kilometers).

### Information about consumption

The current consumption can be shown using a bar graph. The average consumption stored in the short-term memory is also displayed.

### Information about the short-term and long-term memory

The short-term memory collects driving information from the time the vehicle is turned on until it is turned off. If you start driving again within two hours after turning the ignition off, the new ▶

values that are added will be included when calculating the current trip information.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not reset automatically. You can select the time period for evaluating trip information yourself.

### Information about the shift light indicator

The shift light indicator indicates when the RPM limit is reached.

▸ Select the **dynamic+** mode.

The shift light indicator is displayed with yellow, orange, and red areas in the upper ranges of the tachometer. The shift light indicator will blink red when approaching the engine speed limit. Shift to the next highest gear at the right time.

# Touch displays

## Gestures and input

### Controlling touch displays

#### Selecting a function or button

▸ Press the desired function or button.

#### Opening the context menu

For some items, you can open a context menu that is not directly visible.

▸ Press and hold an item until the associated context menu is displayed.

#### Moving items

Certain items can be moved, for example to change the location of the item:

▸ Press and hold the item and move it to the desired location.
▸ In some areas, you can create folders that contain several items. To do this, press and hold the item and drag it onto another item.

#### Changing/flipping pages

▸ To move a page, swipe your finger to the right or left.

#### Scrolling through pages/lists

▸ To scroll through a page or list, swipe upward or downward with one finger.

#### Opening/closing a hidden view

▸ To open a hidden view, swipe from the edge of the display (for example from the upper edge) toward the center of the display.
▸ To close a hidden view, swipe from the center of the display toward the edge.

#### Operating the slider

▸ To change the scale of a slider, press the slider and drag it to the desired setting, or
▸ Press any location on the scale and drag the slider to the desired setting.

#### Changing the view or perspective

▸ To increase the size of an item, touch it with two fingers and pull your fingers apart.
▸ To decrease the size of an item, touch it with two fingers and pinch your fingers together.
▸ To rotate an item, touch it with two fingers and rotate it.
▸ To tilt a 3D view, touch it with two fingers and drag them up or down.

### Text input on touch displays

You can enter letters, numbers, and characters in an input field, for example to find an address in navigation. You can enter characters or words using the keyboard, handwriting input, or voice recognition.

#### Overview of keyboard symbols

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| | Changing the input language |
| | Switch to handwriting input |
| | Switch to the keyboard |
| | Minimizing the keyboard |
| | Minimizing the handwriting input |

### Entering text

– Applies to: on-screen keyboard: To enter text, press the desired button on the on-screen keyboard. Depending on the country and the usage context, you can also swipe over the letters.
– Applies to: handwriting input: To enter text, simply write in the input area using one finger. You can write the separate characters next to each other or one on top of the other without having to move your finger over after writing a character. When you end the entry, the writing is interpreted by the system.
– Applies to: on-screen keyboard with an input language that uses accented characters: To enter accented characters (such as â, ç, ñ, ö), press and hold a character that has accented versions available and select the desired accented character.
– Applies to: handwriting input: To enter a space, drag a line from left to right in the input section.
– To select a location in the text input, press on the desired location in the input field. Depending on the country, you can control the location more accurately using the slider in the display.
– To delete individual characters, press ⌫, or
– Applies to: handwriting input: Drag a line from right to left in the input section.
– To delete multiple characters, press and hold ⌫.

## Information about system paths

In the Owner's Manual, paths show you at a glance how to open a desired app and its settings and functions.

If a menu or symbol in the path is in parentheses, for example ( ⚙), then it is an optional menu item that does not need to be used in every system.

### Example of a path

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Vehicle** > **More** > **Steering wheel button assignment**.

### Following the path

▸ First, determine which display should be used to follow the path. If no display is mentioned in the path, for example “Select:”, then the path specification primarily refers to the central display, and where applicable also to the front passenger’s display. If a display is mentioned in the path, then the path given refers only to the display mentioned.
▸ In the direct access area, press ⊞. The app overview will appear.
▸ Select the desired app in the app overview, for example: **Vehicle**. If the **Vehicle** app is not displayed, swipe upward or downward with one finger until it appears.
▸ In an app, the additional path information can be found in a list or in the tab area. In this example, the **More** menu is located in the tab area.
▸ Press **More**.
▸ If the **Steering wheel button assignment** button is not displayed, swipe upward or downward with one finger until it appears.
▸ Press the **Steering wheel button assignment** button.

# Overview of Multi Media Interface displays

## Introduction

You can display Infotainment and vehicle functions and control them with touch gestures using the Multi Media Interface (MMI).

### Configuration wizard

After starting for the first time, the configuration wizard helps you to set up the vehicle, for example to set the desired system language and to configure privacy settings.

### Information about the MMI front passenger display

Under certain circumstances, the MMI front passenger display will be automatically hidden for the driver.

## Information about traffic safety

Certain functions are not available while driving. Audi also recommends using certain Infotainment system functions, such as entering a ▸

destination or pairing a mobile device, only while the vehicle is stationary. Be prepared to stop operating the Infotainment system at any time in the interest of your safety and the safety of other road users.

**WARNING**

– Only use the Infotainment system when road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions permit and always in a way that allows you to maintain complete control over your vehicle.
– This also applies to operating your mobile device through the MMI. Do not allow the visual or audio signals from a mobile device to distract you from traffic, because this increases the risk of an accident.

## User interface in the central display

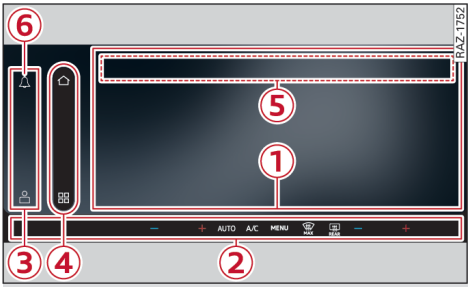



**Fig. 3** Central display: user interface

### ① Display area

Examples of displays in the display area:

– Overview screens
– App overview
– App content

### ② Climate control system control bar

The climate control system control bar is always visible, even if the display is turned off.

### ③ Status bar

The status bar displays information about the vehicle and connected devices, such as the connection status of a phone or if there is a message in the notification center.

### ④ Direct access area

Apps from the app overview can be placed in the direct access area. The ⌂ and ⊞ items cannot be moved.

– To place an app in the direct access area, move the app from the app overview into the direct access area.

### ⑤ Tab area in an app

A tab area may be located at the top of an app. The various items in the tab area are used to navigate within an app.

### ⑥ Notification center with quick access area

All system and app notifications are shown in the notification center. A symbol will indicate if there are new notifications. An additional quick access area offers a selection of functions and apps for direct use.

## Using the notification center quick access area

### Notification center

– To open the notification center, press the button ⑥ or swipe from the upper edge of the display toward the center of the display.
– To clear a notification from the notification center, drag it toward the edge of the screen.
– To close the notification center, swipe from the lower edge of the display toward the upper edge of the display.

### Quick access area

The quick access content can be customized.

– To configure the quick access content, press and hold an item until a context menu appears.

## Information about the goodbye screen

The goodbye screen will appear in the central display before you exit the vehicle. It shows various settings that you can adjust before getting out of the vehicle.

– To show the goodbye screen, park the vehicle safely and press the START ENGINE STOP button.

## User display in the MMI front passenger display

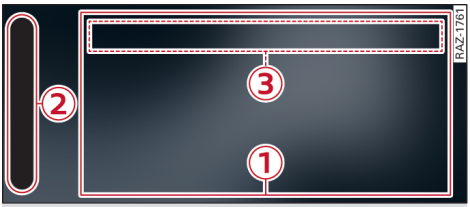



**Fig. 4** Front passenger's display: overview of the user interface

### ① Display area

Examples of displays in the display area:

– Overview screen
– App overview
– App content

### ② Direct access area

Apps from the app overview can be placed in the direct access area. Certain symbols cannot be moved.

### ③ Tab area in an app

A tab area may be located at the top of an app. The various items in the tab area are used to navigate within an app.

## Overview of symbols in the MMI

You can operate the standard functions using the symbols listed. The symbols may be found in any app, depending on the context.

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| ⌂ | Open the overview screen |
| ⊞ | Open the app overview |
| ↩ | Go back one level |
| × | Close the view |
| 🔍 | Search for content |
| ⓘ | See explanations |
| ⚙ | Open settings for the selected app |
| ✎/✎/✎ | Change settings |
| ☆/★ | Store/delete as a favorite |
| ☐/☑ | Turn functions on or off |
| ⊂⊃/⊂⊃ | |
| ○/◉ | |
| ••• | Open additional actions |
| > | Open additional information |
| 🗑 | Delete an item |

### Overview of symbols and functions in the quick access area

The following table shows possible functions in the quick access area:

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| ✎ | Open configuration mode |
| | Open head-up display settings |
| | Turn the lane departure warning on or off |
| | Open the **Vehicle** app |
| | Open the **Driver assistance** app |
| | Open the interior lighting settings |
| | Open the privacy settings |
| | Open the sound settings |
| | Turn the vehicle Bluetooth interface on or off |
| | Turn the vehicle hotspot on or off |
| | Turn the Wi-Fi on or off |
| | Select the number of passengers in the vehicle |
| | Select the system language |
| | Open the connection manager |
| | Operating the garage door opener |

### Overview of symbols in the status bar

The following table shows possible symbols in the status bar: ▶

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| | A personalized user symbol will appear when a user is logged in. The symbol will appear when a guest user is logged in. **Press**: opens user management. |
| | A mobile device is connected. The bar indicates the signal strength of the mobile phone connection. |
| | Turning the notification/tone for the traffic sign-based speed warning on or off |

# Operating and customizing the MMI

## Adjusting the audio and system volume

The volume of an audio source or a system message (such as from the Audi assistant) can be adjusted directly while the audio is playing.

### Adjusting the volume using the MMI control knob

- To adjust the volume up or down, turn the MMI control knob clockwise or counter-clockwise.
- To mute, press the MMI control knob.

### Adjusting the volume using the multifunction steering wheel

- To increase or decrease the volume, turn the right thumbwheel upward or downward.
- To mute, press the right thumbwheel.

**WARNING**

To reduce the risk of an accident, adjust the volume of the audio systems so that signals outside of the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

## Changing the track or station

### Changing the track or station using the MMI control knob

- To select the previous/next track or station, briefly press the MMI control knob to the left/right.

### Changing the track or station using the multifunction steering wheel

- Press the ⏮ / ⏭ button to select the previous/next track or station.

## Performing MMI functions using the steering wheel button

You can use the ✻ button on the multifunction steering wheel to perform an MMI function. You can select which function should be performed from a predefined list.

- To perform the function that is currently programmed, press the ✻ button.
- To check which function is currently programmed or to change it, press and hold the ✻ button, or:
- Select: ⊞ > **Vehicle** > **More** > **Steering wheel button assignment**.
- Select another function if necessary.

## Shutting down, booting up, or restarting the MMI

### Shutting down or booting up the MMI

- To shut down the MMI, press and hold the MMI control knob until all Infotainment functions are shut down.
- To boot up the MMI, press the MMI control knob.

### Restarting the MMI

- Press and hold the MMI control knob for at least 10 seconds.

## Turning the displays on or off

### Turning the central display on or off

- To turn off the central display, press and hold the MMI control knob for at least 2 seconds.
- Press **Turn off display**.
- Touch the central display to turn it on.

### Turning the MMI front passenger's display on or off

- To turn off the MMI front passenger display, press ⏻ on the MMI front passenger display and then select **MMI passgr. display off**, or ▶

- Press and hold the MMI control knob for at least 2 seconds and then select: **MMI passgr. display off** > **Turn off** in the central display.
- To turn on the MMI front passenger's display, touch it, or
- Press and hold the MMI control knob for at least 2 seconds and then select: **MMI passgr. display on** on the MMI central display.

### Turning the standby screen for the MMI front passenger's display on or off

The front passenger display has a standby mode. In this mode, only a screensaver is shown. You can change the design of the screensaver in the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25*.

- To turn on the standby screen, press ⏻ and select **Standby screen on**, or
- Press and hold the MMI control knob for at least 2 seconds and then select: **MMI passgr. display off** > **Standby screen** in the central display.
- To turn the standby screen off, touch the MMI front passenger's display.

## Customizing the MMI

Some items in the MMI can be customized. For example, items can be moved or a context menu can be opened.

- To move an item, press and hold the it and then drag it to the desired location.
- To open the context menu for an item, press and hold the item.

### Customization options

The following customizations may be possible, depending on the context and the item:

– You can arrange apps in the app overview and in the direct access area in any order.
– You can permanently delete downloaded apps using the context menu in the app overview.
– You can create, rename, and delete folders containing multiple apps in the app overview.
– You can create a certain number of home screens and personalize them with widgets.

### Configuring home screens

The view on the home screens can be personalized. The available widgets can be arranged in any location on the home screens. A widget cannot be used more than once. The home screens in the central and front passenger display can be configured.

– To personalize home screens, press and hold a widget until the context menu opens.
– Keep pressing the widget and slide it to the desired location.
– To confirm the view, press the **Confirm** button.

### Creating and managing folders

– To create a folder, press and hold an item and drag it onto another one.
– To rename the folder, open it and press on its name. Enter the name you would like to use.

Each folder and all the items in it have a context menu. Using this context menu, you can remove individual items from the folder or delete the entire folder.

### Changing the brightness of the MMI

You can adjust the brightness of the MMI in the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25*.

## Using MMI accessibility options

The MMI accessibility options can make it easier to operate the MMI. Depending on the equipment, you can use the following accessibility options:

– Subtitles
– High contrast text
– Magnification

Additional accessibility options can be downloaded from the store.

### Adjusting MMI accessibility options

Select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Accessibility**.

You can turn certain functions on or off by pressing ⊂⊃ or ⊂⊃ or adjust their settings by pressing [>]. ▶

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs.

## Opening the vehicle menu

In the **Vehicle** menu, you can turn certain functions on or off or adjust the vehicle settings to your preferences. The available settings depend on the country and vehicle equipment.

- Select: ⊞ > **Vehicle**, or
- Open the quick access area in the central display and press ⊟.

You can turn certain functions on or off by pressing ⊂⊃ or ⊂⊃ or adjust their settings by pressing [>].

# Head-up display

## Operating the head-up display

The head-up display shows certain information in the driver's field of vision, such as the vehicle speed. The content available in the head-up display is divided into multiple tabs.

### Turning on or off

- To turn the head-up display on or off, press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel, or
- You can turn the head-up display on or off in the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25*.

### Selecting the head-up display

The head-up display must be selected in order to operate the tabs in the head-up display.

- To select the head-up display, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

### Switching tabs in the head-up display

Requirement: the head-up display is selected.

- Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until the desired tab is displayed.

### Operating the head-up display with the multifunction steering wheel

| Control | Function |
|---|---|
| | **Press and hold:** turns the head-up display on or off<br>**Press:** selects the head-up display<br>**Press repeatedly:** Switches the tabs in the head-up display |
| Left thumbwheel | **Turn:** scrolls upward or downward within a selected tab<br>**Press:** confirms the selection |

### Head-up display notices

– If a message appears in the instrument cluster, it might not be possible to operate the head-up display.
– Sunglasses with polarization filters and unfavorable lighting conditions can impair visibility of the display.
– A special windshield is needed for the head-up display function.

**Note**

To reduce the risk of scratches on the glass that covers the head-up display, do not place any objects in the projection opening.

## Adjusting the head-up display

In the **Vehicle** ⇨ *page 25* menu, you can adjust head-up display settings such as brightness, the height of the display, and the content that is displayed.

### Adjusting the display height

You can adjust the height of the display. To achieve optimal results, sit in a correct seating position and then adjust the head-up display.

### Selecting which content is displayed

You can select which information should be displayed in the head-up display. Some information and warnings cannot be hidden.

# Audi assistant

## Voice control

### Safety information about voice operation

**WARNING**

– Direct your full attention to driving. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the functions in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.
– Do not use voice operation in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. The system may take longer to dial the number or may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.

### Introduction

The Audi assistant allows you to operate many of the vehicle and Infotainment functions using your voice. If there is an active Internet connection, online content such as the current weather information can be accessed.

### Using the voice operation system effectively

- Speak clearly and distinctly at a normal volume. Speak louder when driving faster.
- Emphasize the words in the commands evenly and do not leave long pauses.
- To reduce background noise, close all glass panels that can be moved, such as the windows. Make sure that passengers are not speaking when you are giving a voice command.
- Do not direct the air vents toward the hands-free microphone, which is in the roof headliner near the front interior lights.

### Operating the Audi assistant

Requirement: the vehicle and the MMI must be turned on. A system language supported by the Audi assistant must be set. There must be no phone calls in progress and the parking system must not be active.

There are no voice guidance prompts when a dialog is active.

#### Activating with the steering wheel button

- Briefly press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- Say the desired command.

#### Activating with a voice command

Requirement: you have activated the **Wake word** function in the **Audi assistant** menu ⇨ *page 27*.

- Say the wake word "*Hey Audi*" together with the desired command.

Depending on the country, it may be possible to use voice commands without saying the wake word. The following requirements must be met to do this:
- You are seated in the driver's seat.
- You are the only person in the vehicle.
- You have activated the **Just talk** function in the **Audi assistant** menu ⇨ *page 27*.

#### Activating with the central display ••••

If the vehicle has an overview screen for the Audi assistant, then the system can be activated as follows:

- Open the Audi assistant overview screen by pressing ••••.
- In the Audi assistant overview screen, press •••• and say the desired command.

The Audi assistant overview screen also shows possible tool tips, proactive suggestions, and routines.

#### Canceling voice input

- To cancel voice input, say "*Cancel*" or press on the multifunction steering wheel.

#### Continuing voice input

If you have activated the **Extended listening** function in the **Audi assistant** menu, you can give additional commands without reactivating the system for a brief period of time ⇨ *page 27*.

#### Commands and assistance

The **Audi assistant** menu provides assistance on using the system ⇨ *page 27*. ▶

▸ To receive context-dependent assistance for the current dialog, say or press "*Help*".

### Opening the Audi assistant menu

You can adjust the system settings in the **Audi assistant** menu. The available settings depend on the country and vehicle equipment.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Audi assistant**.

#### Online voice recognition product improvement

You can activate online voice recognition to use additional functions and to improve the results of voice recognition. A supported menu language must be selected. When there is an active Internet connection, recognized voice input is evaluated both in the vehicle and online.

Before activating online voice recognition, read the Terms of Use ⓘ. By activating the function, you also accept the Terms of Use.

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs.

## Routines and proactive suggestions

### Introduction

The vehicle tries to recognize behavior patterns of the user who is logged in, in order to set up routines and make proactive suggestions for an easier and more comfortable driving experience.

### Using routines and proactive suggestions

Requirement: you must be logged into the vehicle with a myAudi user.

#### Routines

If a recurring pattern of specific operations or actions is recognized, then the Audi assistant can suggest routines. A saved routine will run automatically if the requirements for the routine are met. For example, the climate control system could be turned on at a certain outside temperature. In some cases, it may not be possible to run certain routines anymore and they will be unlearned.

You can turn routines that were saved automatically on or off or delete them in the **Audi assistant** menu ⇨ *page 27*. You can cancel a routine that is running by turning off the function or by saying "*Hey Audi, cancel routine*". Canceling a routine with a voice command is only possible for a short time after the routine starts running.

#### Proactive suggestions

If certain functions are not being used, then the vehicle can suggest using a function depending on a specific situation.

Error messages that occur during interactions with proactive suggestions are given in audio format only.

#### Turning routines and proactive suggestions on or off

You can turn routines and proactive suggestions on or off in the **Audi assistant** menu, or delete them if needed ⇨ *page 27*.

#### System limitation

Routines and proactive suggestions may be limited if the GPS position is not accurate.

## External voice operation

### Introduction

You can access and control voice operation on a connected mobile device through your vehicle. Audi simply provides access to control your mobile device with voice operation and does not assume any responsibility for the contents and commands within the external voice control.

### Using external voice operation

#### Turning external voice operation on or off

Requirement: the vehicle and the MMI must be turned on. A mobile device is connected via Apple CarPlay, Android Auto, or as a mobile device ⇨ *page 217*. The connected mobile device must offer voice control that can be controlled ▸

externally. There must be no phone calls in progress and the parking system must not be active.

- To turn on external voice operation, press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- To turn off external voice operation, press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

### Using external voice operation

- Say the desired command after the signal tone.
- To reactivate voice operation when it is paused, press the button briefly on the multifunction steering wheel.

# Valet mode

## Introduction

With the valet mode, you can lock the central and front passenger display for the amount of time that you specify and also limit certain vehicle functions. Access to your personal data will be limited if the vehicle is handed over temporarily to others, for example during a service visit at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility or when using valet parking.

The valet mode will limit the following functions:

– Audi assistant
– Navigation and central display
– Radio and media playback
– Bluetooth and Wi-Fi

## Opening the valet mode settings menu

You can turn certain functions on or off and adjust their settings in the **Valet mode** settings menu. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

- Select: > **Valet mode** > .

## Using the valet mode

### Opening the valet mode

- Select: > **Valet mode**.

### Starting the valet mode

- Enter a PIN.
- Press **Activate valet mode**.

The valet mode will remain active until the PIN that was set is entered or until the set duration elapses.

You can set a customized duration in the **Valet mode** settings menu ⇨ *page 28*.

# Personalization

## Users

### Introduction

Depending on vehicle equipment and your country, your vehicle may be able to manage different users in the MMI. Each user will be assigned the settings that they last used.

Before you begin driving, you can select a user in the MMI and load personalized Infotainment and vehicle settings.

Possible users in the MMI:

– **myAudi user**: as a myAudi user, you can store personal settings, access them at a later time and, depending on the country and vehicle equipment, also use certain settings in other vehicles. You have access to Audi connect services and you can use them in the vehicle.
– **Local user**: as a local user, you can only store personal settings in this vehicle. Your settings cannot be transferred to other vehicles. You do not have access to Audi connect services in the vehicle, which require a different myAudi user.
– **Guest user**: as a guest user, you can store settings in the vehicle without changing the settings for existing users. Audi recommends using the guest user account only temporarily, because personal settings are only stored temporarily in this vehicle. You do not have access to Audi connect services in the vehicle, which require a different myAudi user.

If the driver's door has been opened, then the active user can be recognized before entering the vehicle using the following options, depending on vehicle equipment:

– Vehicle key
– Digital key

#### Information for users with PIN protection

If a user has the symbol, a PIN has been created. If you just start driving or you keep waiting without entering the PIN for the recognized user, then the guest user will be selected. Some settings for the recognized user will be applied to the guest user.

### System limitations on customizing

– Certain Infotainment and vehicle settings (such as mirrors and radio stations) may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment. You can find additional information in the MMI. Select: > **Legal notices**.
– The stored settings for a myAudi user can only be transferred to vehicles that are capable of receiving the transmitted information. There may be restrictions that prevent this, particularly in other countries. The settings can only be transferred and loaded when there is coverage from the applicable mobile phone service provider.

**WARNING**

It may not be possible to load Infotainment and vehicle settings, or they may only load partially. To reduce the risk of an accident, the driver must be responsible for the Infotainment system settings and vehicle settings at all times.

### Managing users

#### Selecting a user

▸ Press the symbol for the current user in the central display status bar. All users are displayed.
▸ Press on the desired user.
▸ Follow the system instructions.

#### Adding a user

▸ Press the symbol for the current user in the central display status bar. All users are displayed.
▸ Press **Add user**.
▸ Follow the system instructions.

#### Editing users

Requirement: the respective user must be selected and that user's settings must be loaded.

▸ Press the symbol for the current user in the central display status bar. All users are displayed.
▸ Press on the user whose settings are loaded. ▶

You have the following options, depending on the user type:

**Change PIN protection**: users may be protected with a PIN. If no PIN has been created, any person in the vehicle can select the user.

**Remove the user from the vehicle**: the user will only be deleted from user management in the vehicle.

**Change name**: you can change the name of a user. The guest user cannot be renamed.

**Removing users**

- Press the symbol for the current user in the central display status bar. All users are displayed.
- Press and hold the desired user and press 🗑.

## Key user

### Introduction

The vehicle owner must be set as the key user to use some of the specific Audi connect vehicle control services that depend on vehicle equipment.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, as a key user you can grant authorization for additional users to use Audi connect vehicle control services.

The key user automatically has remote access authorization. This remote access authorization is necessary to control certain functions that depend on vehicle equipment, such as Audi connect vehicle control services, through the myAudi app.

### Setting the key user

Requirement: a key user must not be set yet.

- To set a key user for the vehicle, you will need a myAudi account. Register in the myAudi app.
- Add your vehicle to the myAudi app.
- Follow the instructions in the myAudi app.

### Removing the key user

Requirement: a key user must be set.

If you remove the key user, all other users that were stored by the key user and their authorizations will be deleted. It will no longer be possible to use Audi connect vehicle control services, depending on vehicle equipment.

Depending on vehicle equipment, all digital keys will also be deleted.

You have the following options to delete the key user:

**Deleting the key user in the myAudi app**

- Open the myAudi app and delete the key user.

**Deleting the key user in the MMI**

- Press the symbol for the current user in the central display status bar. All users are displayed.
- Press **Key user** in the tab area.
- Press **Remove key user**.

If you sell your vehicle, use the myAudi app to remove the key user immediately. Reset the system to the factory default settings.

# Opening and closing

## Central locking

### Safety information about the central locking system

**WARNING**

– When you leave the vehicle, turn off the vehicle and take the key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise, children could start the vehicle or operate electrical equipment (such as power windows), which increases the risk of an accident.
– No one, especially children, should stay in the vehicle when it is locked from the outside, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside. Locked doors make it more difficult for responders to enter the vehicle, which increases the risk of death.
– No one, especially children, should stay in the vehicle when the child safety lock is activated, because the rear doors and the ▶

windows can no longer be opened from the inside. This increases the risk of death.

## Introduction

Do not leave valuables unattended in the vehicle. A locked vehicle is not a safe!

The central locking system has the following functions and features:

– All doors and the luggage compartment lid can be centrally unlocked and locked at once. You can select in the MMI if the entire vehicle or only the driver's door should unlock when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 32*.
– The turn signals flash twice when you unlock the vehicle and flash once when you lock the vehicle. If they do not flash when locking, check if all doors and lids are closed.
– The LED in the driver's door rail blinks when you lock the vehicle. If the LED turns on for approximately 30 seconds after locking, there is a malfunction in the central locking system. Have the problem corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may have different options for centrally unlocking and locking your vehicle.

– Vehicle key
– Sensors in the door handles
– Automatic unlocking and locking
– Digital key on your mobile device (such as a mobile phone)
– Digital key card
– Lock button in the luggage compartment lid
– Central locking switch inside

### Key / vehicle key

When the word “key” is used, it can refer to the remote control key, the convenience key, a mobile device with a digital key, or the activated digital key card.

The term “vehicle key” refers to the remote control key or convenience key. The convenience key is a remote control key with special functions.

### Automatic locking

If you unlock the vehicle but then do not open any of the doors, the luggage compartment, or the hood within a short period time, the vehicle locks again automatically. This feature prevents the vehicle from being accidentally left unlocked for a long period of time.

### Unintentionally locking yourself out

If the turn signals flash multiple times and there is a warning tone when locking the vehicle and then closing the door or luggage compartment lid , then the vehicle key or digital key that was last used is still inside the vehicle ⇨ ⓘ.

A digital key with a drained battery or a digital key card cannot be detected in the vehicle ⇨ ⓘ

Only lock your vehicle when all of the doors and the luggage compartment lid are closed and there is no key in the vehicle. This reduces the risk of locking yourself out accidentally.

The following features help to reduce the risk of locking your vehicle key or digital key in the vehicle:

– If the driver's door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked by pressing the button on the vehicle key or by touching the lock sensor on a door. The lock sensor is not equipped on all vehicles.
– If the vehicle key or digital key that was last used is detected inside the vehicle, then the vehicle cannot be locked from the outside ⇨ ⓘ.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 30*.

**Note**

The following applies when locking the vehicle:
– If the vehicle key or digital key that was last used is detected inside the vehicle interior, then the vehicle cannot be locked from the outside using the sensor. Take the vehicle key or digital key with you and lock the vehicle again. Otherwise, the vehicle will not be protected against unauthorized access.
– If the turn signals flash multiple times and there is a warning tone, depending on ▶

vehicle equipment, then the vehicle was locked using the convenience key or digital key while a door or the luggage compartment lid was still open, and then the convenience key or digital key that was last used was detected inside the vehicle once the open door or the luggage compartment lid was closed. Open one of the doors or the luggage compartment lid right away, find the convenience key or digital key, and then remove it from the vehicle. Otherwise, the vehicle will be locked automatically with the convenience key or digital key still inside the vehicle. This prevents the vehicle from being left unlocked for long periods of time.

– If you lock your vehicle using a digital key with a drained battery or a digital key card while a door or the luggage compartment lid is open, and then you place the digital key or the digital key card inside the vehicle and close the door or luggage compartment lid, then these digital keys will not be detected and, as a result, they will be locked inside the vehicle.

## Adjusting central locking settings

You can adjust the central locking system settings in the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25*. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

### Door unlocking

– If you select **All**, all doors and the luggage compartment lid will be unlocked when unlocking the vehicle.
– If you select **Driver's door**, only the driver's door will be unlocked. To unlock all doors and the luggage compartment lid, press the button on the vehicle key twice. In vehicles with a convenience key, only the driver's door will unlock when you pull the driver's door handle. If you pull another door handle, the entire vehicle will be unlocked.

If you press the button, the entire vehicle will always lock.

### Long press to open windows

You can select if all windows should open using the vehicle key ⇨ *page 47, Window convenience opening and closing*.

### Lock when driving (Auto Lock)

To reduce the risk of someone from outside entering the vehicle (for example, when you are stopped at a light), you can select if the vehicle should lock automatically at speeds of approximately 9 mph (15 km/h) and above.

The vehicle will unlock again if the unlock function in the central locking switch is pressed, the “P” position is selected, or the vehicle is turned off.

You can open the front doors individually from the inside by pulling the door handle once. To open the rear doors individually, you must pull the door handle twice.

In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors will unlock automatically to allow access into the vehicle.

### Disable rear lid handle

You can select if the luggage compartment lid can be opened with the handle ⇨ *page 45, fig. 14*. If you activate this function, the luggage compartment lid can only be opened with the button on the vehicle key or in the driver's door. In vehicles with a convenience key or a digital key, you can still open the luggage compartment lid using the handle if an authorized convenience key or the digital key is detected ⇨ *page 44*.

### Fold mirrors

You can select if the exterior mirrors automatically fold in when locking.

### Tone when locking

Depending on the country, you can select if an audio signal sounds when locking the vehicle.

### Open with convenience key

You can deactivate the function for unlocking using the door sensor. The function for locking using the sensor will still be enabled. ▶

### Interior monitoring

You can turn the interior/towing protection monitor on or off ⇨ *page 34*.

### Advanced keyless entry - automatic unlocking when approaching

You can set if the vehicle should automatically unlock when approaching it ⇨ *page 43*.

### Advanced keyless entry - automatic locking when leaving

You can set if the vehicle should automatically lock when walking away from it ⇨ *page 43*.

## Information about the central locking switch

The central locking switch ( 🔒 / 🔓 buttons) is located in the door trim panel.

▸ To lock or unlock the vehicle, press the 🔒 or 🔓 button ⇨ ⚠.

When locking the vehicle with the central locking switch, the following applies:

– The doors and the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened from the outside for security reasons, for example to reduce the risk of unauthorized entry while stopped at a light.
– The LED in the central locking switch turns on when all doors are closed and locked.
– You can open the front doors individually from the inside by pulling the door handle once. To open the rear doors individually, you must pull the door handle twice.
– Once a door has been opened from the inside of the vehicle, then it will be possible to open it from the outside again. To make sure you are still protected against unauthorized access from the outside, press the locking button 🔒 on the central locking switch again.
– In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors will unlock automatically to allow access to the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

– Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 30*.
– The central locking switch also works when the vehicle is turned off.
– The central locking switch is inoperative when the vehicle is locked from the outside.

## Central locking system messages

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

**Vehicle electronics: malfunction! Shift to P before leaving vehicle. Please contact Service**

There is a malfunction in the vehicle electronics. Before exiting, set the parking brake to secure the vehicle. This will engage the “P” position automatically. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

**Central locking: malfunction! See owner's manual**

There is a malfunction in the central locking or the door system. If the doors cannot lock, you can mechanically lock the doors ⇨ *page 39*. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Door lock: opening while driving is only possible with the emergency release. See owner's manual**

It is not possible to power unlock the doors at speeds above approximately 9 mph (15 km/h). If you must open doors at higher speeds in cases of emergency, you can manually unlock the door by forcefully pulling the door handle beyond its noticeable resistance twice. Then press the door handle back into its original position, if necessary.

**Vehicle key detected in vehicle interior**

or

**Vehicle key detected in luggage compartment**

This message appears if a vehicle key or digital key was detected inside the vehicle when a door or the luggage compartment lid was closed after locking the vehicle. The vehicle will also respond by flashing the turn signals several times and sounding a warning tone, depending on vehicle equipment. Retrieve the vehicle key or digital key ▶

right away. Otherwise the vehicle will be locked automatically and the vehicle key or digital key will be locked inside the vehicle. This prevents the vehicle from being left unlocked for long periods of time.

**WARNING**

A malfunction in the child safety lock could allow the rear doors to be opened from the inside, which increases the risk of an accident.

## Turning the child safety lock on or off

The child safety lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside and the rear power windows from being operated. The child safety lock buttons are located in the door trim panel on the driver's door.

- To activate or deactivate the child safety lock for the respective rear door (which applies to the controls for the rear power windows and the inside door handle), press the left or right button. The LED in the button will turn on or off.
- Make sure the child safety lock is active by checking if the controls for the rear power windows and the door lever are working.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 30*.
– A malfunction in the child safety lock could allow the rear doors to be opened from the inside, which increases the risk of an accident.

# Anti-theft alarm system

## Introduction

### Anti-theft alarm system

If the anti-theft alarm system detects a vehicle break-in, audio and visual warning signals are triggered. The anti-theft alarm system is turned on or off when locking or unlocking your vehicle. If the alarm is triggered, it will shut off automatically after a certain amount of time.

### Interior/towing protection monitor

The alarm will be triggered if there are movements detected in the vehicle interior (for example, by animals) or if there is a change in the vehicle angle (for example, when the vehicle is being towed). The interior/towing protection monitoring only functions correctly when the windows are closed. You can prevent the alarm from being triggered by deactivating the interior/towing protection monitor.

## Stopping the alarm for the anti-theft alarm system

### Break-in security feature

The alarm will sound if there is a break-in at the doors, hood, and/or luggage compartment lid.

### Turning off the alarm manually

- To turn off the alarm, press the button on the vehicle key or turn on the ignition.

## Deactivating the interior/towing protection monitor

There are the following options for deactivating the interior/towing protection monitor:

- Press the button on the vehicle key a second time within two seconds, or
- Touch the sensor on the door handle a second time within two seconds. This will only be possible if your vehicle is equipped with a convenience key. Or
- Select the **Interior monitoring** ⇨ *page 25* function in the **Vehicle** menu.

If you lock the vehicle in this way, then the interior/towing protection monitor will remain off until the next time the vehicle is unlocked.

Once deactivated, the LED in the door rail will blink briefly and then will stay off for about 30 seconds.

# Passenger occupant detection system

## Introduction

The passenger occupant detection system should remind the driver when the vehicle has been turned off and persons, especially children, could still be seated in rear bench seat.

The passenger occupant detection system should reduce the chances of unintentionally leaving individuals behind in the vehicle.

Before locking the vehicle, make sure that there are no persons or pets left behind in the vehicle. Depending on vehicle equipment, the vehicle may lock automatically when you exit.

Depending on vehicle equipment, different passenger occupant detection systems may be used.

### Indirect passenger occupant detection without a sensor

The system monitors if rear doors are opened. If a rear door is opened, then the system assumes that someone could be in the rear seats ⇨ *page 37, Messages about the passenger occupant detection system*.

### Direct passenger occupant detection with a sensor

A radar sensor located in the headliner detects if persons are located in the rear seats. If there are, various warning levels may be activated ⇨ *page 35, Functionality of the direct passenger occupant detection system*.

**WARNING**

Never leave anyone behind in the vehicle unattended, even if the vehicle is equipped with a passenger occupant detection system.

## Functionality of the direct passenger occupant detection system

The warning concept consists of three warning levels that are escalated if necessary. Requirement: the system detected persons in the rear of the vehicle.

The passenger occupant detection system can be deactivated in the MMI ⇨ *page 36, Adjusting settings in the passenger occupant detection system*.

Passengers are detected based on movement in the rear of the vehicle.

The warning level will start under the following circumstances:

– If persons are detected in the rear of the vehicle after the drive ends.
– If a door was opened and closed again while the vehicle was parked, and then persons were detected in the rear of the vehicle after that.

### Warning level 1

A message appears in the instrument cluster accompanied by a notification tone. Make sure no persons or pets are left behind in the vehicle.

### Warning level 2

Requirement for warning level 2: the passenger occupant detection system is activated in the MMI. Depending on the country, some features of warning levels 2 and 3 may also require the myAudi app to be installed on your smartphone.

When all doors are closed and persons are detected in the rear of the vehicle, then the turn signals will flash and the horn will honk after a short period of time.

Go back to your vehicle and make sure that no persons (especially children) or pets have been left behind in the vehicle.

When using the passenger occupant detection system, follow regulations that are applicable in the area, for example regarding whether or not parked vehicles are permitted to activate their horn.

### Warning level 3

If you do not react to warning level 2 within approximately two minutes, then the turn signals will flash and the horn will honk periodically to alert people in the surrounding area. ▶

Go back to your vehicle and make sure that no persons (especially children) or pets have been left behind in the vehicle.

### Deactivating the warning levels

Warning levels 2 and 3 can be deactivated temporarily or on a long-term basis. If the system is deactivated, then a message indicating this will appear when you turn on your vehicle.

– Temporarily: after warning level 1 is triggered, a slider bar will appear in the goodbye screen in the central display for deactivating the warning levels temporarily until the next time you start to drive. If warning level 2 or 3 is currently active, a display that allows you to deactivate the warning levels will also appear in the central display. If the passenger occupant detection system has been deactivated temporarily, it will be activated again automatically the next time the vehicle is driven.
– For information on deactivating on a long-term basis, see ⇨ *page 36, Adjusting settings in the passenger occupant detection system*:

**Note**

– If emergency services are needed for persons or pets trapped inside the vehicle, your vehicle may be damaged during the rescue operation.
– The use of emergency services may result in financial costs for you.

## System and functional limitations of the direct passenger occupant detection system

### System limitations

The first row of seats and the luggage compartment are not monitored by the sensor.

The passenger occupant detection system is designed to detect persons, especially children, in the rear of the vehicle. Pets might not be detected.

### Functional limitations

The following factors may affect the functionality of the passenger occupant detection system:

– A false alarm could be triggered if traffic passing by on the side of the vehicle while it is stationary causes an object in the rear of the vehicle to vibrate.
– Objects in the rear, such as liquids in containers, may result in a false alarm. Secure objects like this in the luggage compartment when transporting them.
– A backrest that is not folded all the way down or up may result in a false alarm.

Other factors that could have an influence include:

– Sources of strong radar signals in the area around the vehicle, such as radio towers
– The myAudi app is not installed
– Smartphone without Bluetooth connection
– Smartphone in airplane mode
– Low charge level in the 12 volt vehicle battery

### Information about declarations of conformity

The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 293*.

**WARNING**

– To reduce the risk of serious injuries or death, the driver is responsible at all times for persons and pets inside the vehicle.
– Persons or pets that are covered, for example with heavy blankets, might not be detected by the sensor, or the accuracy of the sensor may be limited.
– Items located in the rear, such as cardboard boxes, can impair the function of the radar sensor.
– The system does not actively intervene to protect a person or pet left behind in the vehicle from death due to heat exposure.

## Adjusting settings in the passenger occupant detection system

You can adjust the passenger occupant detection system settings to your personal preference in the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25*.

The settings depend on the vehicle equipment. ▶

The following settings are possible:

### Rear notification tone

In vehicles equipped with the indirect passenger occupant detection system, you can turn the notification tone for instrument cluster messages on or off.

### Notification tone when exiting the vehicle

In vehicles equipped with the direct passenger occupant detection system, you can turn the notification tone for warning level 1 on or off.

### Notification when starting to drive

In vehicles equipped with the indirect passenger occupant detection system, you can select if a message should appear when starting to drive if persons or pets have been detected in the rear bench seat.

### Rear occupant detection

In vehicles equipped with the direct passenger occupant detection system, you can turn the system itself on or off. If the system has been deactivated, a message about this will appear each time you turn on the vehicle.

## Notifications for the passenger occupant detection system

When the system is active, the indicator light will turn on briefly in the instrument cluster, for example when turning on the vehicle.

The central display will show if persons or pets were detected in the rear of the vehicle when starting to drive.

## Messages about the passenger occupant detection system

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

**Rear occupant detection: malfunction! See owner's manual**

Check if the rear headliner is covered by an object. Remove the object. Larger persons in the rear bench seat may also cover the sensor. If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

**/ Please check the rear seats!**

After the end of every trip, a message in the central display will remind you that someone might still be seated in the rear seats. If a rear door has been opened, then a message will also appear in the instrument cluster. Before exiting the vehicle, make sure no persons or pets are left behind in the vehicle.

**/ Please do not leave any children or pets behind!**

Have all other passengers exit the vehicle before leaving the vehicle yourself or locking it.

# Manually unlocking and locking the doors

## Manually unlocking the driver's door when the vehicle key battery is drained

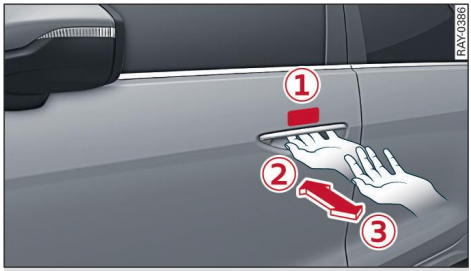



**Fig. 5** Driver's door: manually unlocking the power door handle

If the vehicle key battery is drained, the driver's door must be unlocked manually.

- Use one hand to hold the vehicle key centered over the exterior door handle (1).
- To unlock the vehicle, use your other hand to pull the door handle as usual (2). Completely remove your hand from the door handle after pulling on it (3).
- Repeat this process a couple of times more than one second apart until the door opens.

The vehicle key battery must be replaced after manually unlocking the door ⇨ *page 40*.

## Manually unlocking the driver's door when the 12 volt vehicle battery is drained

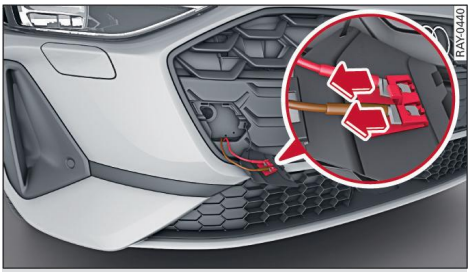



**Fig. 6** Front bumper: cover with 12 volt connections clipped in

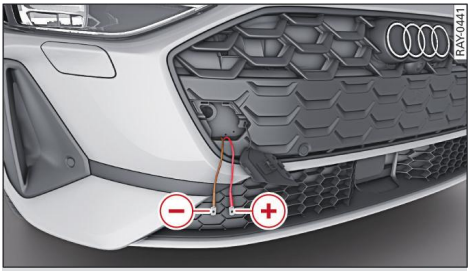



**Fig. 7** Connecting the power source

### Manually supplying the central locking system with power

To manually unlock, the vehicle must be manually supplied with power using the contacts in the bumper.

- Press the cap inward with brief, strong pressure ⇨ *page 280, fig. 128*. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
- Loosen both of the contact pins from the cover.
- Connect the positive terminal ⊕ of the 12 volt power supply to the positive terminal ⊕ of the contact pin (red cable) on your vehicle.
- Connect the negative terminal ⊕ of the 12 volt power supply to the negative terminal ⊕ of the contact pin (brown cable) on your vehicle.
- Unlock the driver's door with the convenience key button or Near Field Communication (NFC) technology.
- Open the driver's door as usual.
- Remove the power source clamps again.
- Attach the contact pins to the cover again.
- Install the cover in the bumper again.
- Open the hood and charge the 12 volt vehicle battery.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not touch the non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps. This can cause a short circuit.

## Manually unlocking the doors if the door release mechanism malfunctions

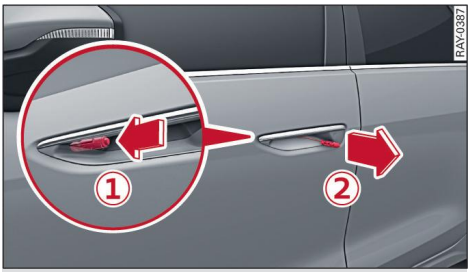



**Fig. 8** Door: manual operation

Requirement: the vehicle is unlocked.

If the manual release mechanism malfunctions, the doors must be opened manually.

You should only perform the following steps if you have the necessary technical knowledge.

- Briefly press the pin ① in the door handle in the direction of travel ⇨ *fig. 8*. This will cause the pin to disengage and to spring out of the door handle.
- Pull on the end of the cable ② until the door opens.
- After manually opening the door, guide the cable and the pin back into the door handle.
- Press the pin ① all the way into the door handle in the direction of travel. This will engage the pin again.

## Manually opening the doors after a collision

In the event of a collision with airbag deployment, the vehicle will unlock automatically and the power door locks will be deactivated. The emergency release (pin) is automatically pushed ▶

out of the door handle when this happens. The door must be opened manually.

- Pull on the end of the cable (2) ⇨ *page 38, fig. 8* until the door opens.

## Manually locking the doors

**Fig. 9** Door: mechanically locking

If the central locking system malfunctions, all doors must be locked individually.

When mechanically locking the doors, the anti-theft alarm will not be activated.

### Manually locking the doors

Use the mechanical key or a suitable screwdriver to manually lock the doors.

The mechanical lock is located on the edge of the doors. It is only visible when the door is open.

- Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 40*.
- If necessary, remove the cap from the opening at the edge of the door.
- Insert the mechanical key or screwdriver into the slot on the inside of the door and turn it all the way to the right (left door) or left (right door).
- If necessary, install the cap in the opening and close the door.

Once the doors are closed, it is no longer possible to open them from the outside. The front doors can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle once. The rear doors can be unlocked from the inside by pulling the door handle once and then opened by pulling the door handle again. If the vehicle is without power, the doors can be unlocked from the inside by first pulling the door handle beyond its noticeable resistance once. The doors can then can be opened by pulling the handle again. If the child safety lock in one of the rear doors is activated, you must first pull the door handle from the inside. Then you can open the door from the outside.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 30*.

# Keys

## Safety information about the key

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 30*.

**WARNING**

A coin battery is installed in the vehicle key. There is the risk of life-threatening or serious injuries due to chemical burns and burns if a coin battery is swallowed.

– Keep vehicle keys and key fobs with coin batteries out of the reach of children.
– Store new and used coin batteries safely and out of reach of children.
– Do not continue to use the vehicle key if the battery compartment is damaged or cannot be closed securely.
– If you suspect that a coin battery has been swallowed or has otherwise entered the body, seek medical attention immediately.

**Note**

Protect the key against high temperatures and direct sunlight.

**For the sake of the environment**

Batteries and electrical/electronic devices must be disposed of in an environmentally safe manner ⇨ *page 293, Disposal instructions*.

## Overview of the key set

**Fig. 10** Your vehicle key

The key set consists of two vehicle keys, and there may also be a key tag that contains information about reordering vehicle keys. You can see the number of vehicle keys programmed to the vehicle in the **Vehicle** menu.

### ① Vehicle key

You can unlock and lock your vehicle with the vehicle key.

### ② Mechanical key and release button for mechanical key

A mechanical key is integrated into the vehicle key. To remove it, press the release button and remove the mechanical key.

You can use the mechanical key to manually lock and, depending on vehicle equipment, manually unlock the vehicle.

### ③ PANIC button

In an emergency, you can press the PANIC button to trigger a visual and audio vehicle alarm, as long as you are within the range of the vehicle key.

– To trigger the alarm, press the PANIC button ⇨ *fig. 10*.
– To turn the alarm off, press the PANIC button again.

### Information about declarations of conformity

The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 293*.

## LED and battery in the vehicle key

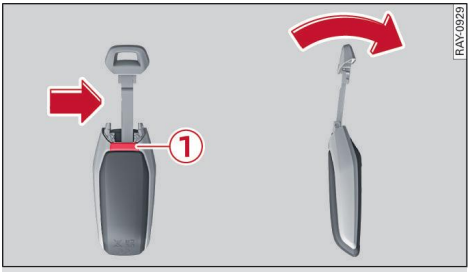



**Fig. 11** Vehicle key: removing the battery cover

### LED in the vehicle key

The LED indicates the vehicle key function.

- If you press a button briefly, the LED will blink once. If the LED does not blink, there is a malfunction or the vehicle key is not within range of the vehicle. The LED also will not blink if the key battery is drained.
- If you press and hold a button (convenience opening/closing), the LED blinks several times.

### Replacing the vehicle key battery

If the indicator light appears with a corresponding message, the vehicle key battery is drained and must be replaced.

The replacement battery in the vehicle key must meet the same specifications as the original battery (battery type CR 2032).

- Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 40* and insert it into the opening.
- To operate the release button on the inside ①, position the key bit flush in the right side of the recess and press the mechanical key into the opening.
- Use the key bit as a lever to remove the cover.
- Remove the cover from the battery tray.
- Insert the new battery with the **+** facing up.
- Close the battery tray with the cover.
- Insert the mechanical key.

## Information about the digital key

You can unlock, lock, and start your vehicle with your mobile device. ▶

Requirement: a key user verified by the dealer must be set up. You and all other users must use a compatible mobile device.

To prevent the vehicle battery from discharging, the energy management function turns off convenience functions that are not needed. The functionality of the digital key may be limited.

### Turning the digital key on or off in the vehicle

You can turn the digital key function for your vehicle on or off. If you turn off the function, the assigned digital keys and the digital key card will be temporarily disabled. Once you turn the function on again, all assigned digital keys and the digital key card can be used again.

- Select: ⊞ > **Digital key** > **Management**.
- Press ⊂⊃/⊂⊃ to turn the digital key function on or off.
- Follow the system instructions.

### Preparing for using the digital key

You have the following options to activate the digital key:

#### Setting up the digital key through the MMI

- Select: ⊞ > **Digital key** > **Set up main device**.
- The key user will receive a message on the mobile device. Follow the instructions given in the message.
- Follow the instructions on your mobile device to activate the digital key.
- Follow the system instructions.

#### Setting up the digital key through the myAudi app

- Open the myAudi app and set up the digital key.
- Follow the instructions on your mobile device to activate the digital key.
- Follow the system instructions.
- The key user will receive a message on the mobile device. If necessary, tap the link or follow the instructions.

### Sharing a digital key

- Open the Wallet app on your mobile device to manage digital keys.
- Share the digital key of your choice.
- The person receiving it must follow the instructions on the mobile device to activate the digital key.

### Displaying digital keys in the MMI

- Select: ⊞ > **Digital key** > **Management** > **List of keys**.

### Revoking a digital key

Through the mobile device, the digital key can be withdrawn by the key user or given back by the person who received it.

The key user can withdraw digital keys in the MMI.

Requirement: the vehicle is turned on.

- Select: ⊞ > **Digital key** > **Management** > **List of keys**.

### Removing the primary device

It may be necessary to disconnect the digital key from the primary device to reset the vehicle to factory settings.

- Select: ⊞ > **Digital key** > **Management** > **Primary device management**.

### Additional information about the digital key

– Depending on the country, you can manage the digital key using the myAudi app.
– The key user can deactivate shared digital keys at any time.
– The digital key function may malfunction if the mobile device battery is drained and is not charged for several days.
– The availability of the function depends on the mobile device manufacturer.

## Checking the status of the digital key

You can check the status of all assigned digital keys and the digital key card in the myAudi app or the MMI.

- Select: ⊞ > **Digital key** > **Management**.

8B1012721BF

## Information about the digital key card

You can open or close your vehicle with the digital key card using the NFC sensor in the driver's door. To start the engine, place the digital key card in the phone compartment. By using the digital key card, you do not need to give your mobile device to someone else, for example for vehicle service or breakdowns.

The luggage compartment lid cannot be unlocked separately using the digital key card.

### Activating and deactivating a digital key card

- Unlock your vehicle.
- Start your vehicle using the digital key.
- Place the key card in the phone compartment. The NFC sensor for activating the digital key card is located on the driver's side in the phone compartment. Follow the directions in the MMI.

The key card is automatically deactivated once the vehicle is turned on using a digital key or a vehicle key. You can keep the deactivated key card in the vehicle.

### Storing the digital key card while driving

The NFC sensor for the digital key card is located on the driver's side in the phone compartment.

- Make sure the digital key card is positioned on the reader during the entire drive.

## Loss of the key

Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility personally if you lose a vehicle key. Have that vehicle key deactivated. Bring all your keys to this appointment.

If you have lost your mobile device with a digital key, deactivate the mobile device.

To replace a digital key card, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If you cannot access the myAudi app immediately, you can deactivate all of the assigned digital keys in the MMI. You can deactivate the digital key card by starting the vehicle with the vehicle key or digital key, or by deactivating the function in the myAudi app.

Inform your insurance provider about the lost key.

# Unlocking and locking

## Unlocking and locking the vehicle using the buttons on the vehicle key

Only use the vehicle key when you can see the vehicle.

- To unlock the vehicle, press the button ⇨ *page 40, fig. 10*.
- To lock the vehicle, press the button **once**.

## Locking and unlocking the vehicle using the sensors

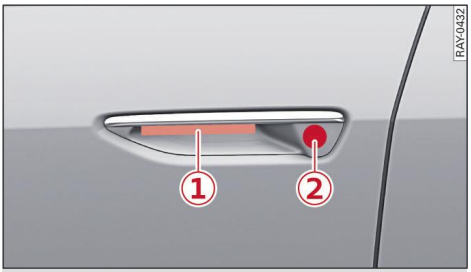



**Fig. 12** Door handle: unlocking/locking sensor

Requirement: your vehicle has a convenience key and sensors in the doors. The “P” selector position is engaged. The convenience key is not more than approximately 4 feet (1.5 meters) away from the door handle or the luggage compartment. To prevent the vehicle battery from discharging, the energy management function turns off convenience functions that are not needed. You may no longer be able to unlock your vehicle with the sensor.

- To unlock the vehicle, place your hand in the recessed grip under the door handle ① ⇨ *fig. 12*.
- To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor ② on the door handle **once**. Do not put your hand into the recessed grip while locking the vehicle, or else the vehicle will not lock. The door cannot be opened for a brief period directly after locking it. This way you have the opportunity to check if the doors locked correctly.

## Unlocking and locking the vehicle using the digital key or digital key card

Requirement: the vehicle is equipped with sensors in the doors and the digital key or digital key card is activated. You are carrying your digital key or digital key card with you.

- Requirement: the mobile device is connected via Bluetooth: To unlock and open the vehicle door, place your hand in the recessed grip under the door handle ①.
- Requirement: the mobile device is connected via Bluetooth: To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor ② on the door handle ⇨ *page 42, fig. 12* **once**. Do not grasp the door handle while locking the vehicle, or else the vehicle will not lock. The door cannot be opened for a brief period directly after locking it. This way you have the opportunity to check if the doors locked correctly.
- Applies to: Near-Field-Communication (NFC): To lock and unlock the vehicle using Near Field Communication (NFC) technology, hold the mobile device or the key card on the sensor ②.

## Unlocking and locking the vehicle automatically

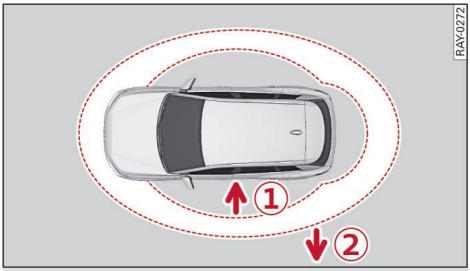



**Fig. 13** Sensor detection range

Requirement: your vehicle has a convenience key and an anti-theft alarm system, you have the vehicle key or digital key with you, and the advanced keyless entry function is activated in the MMI.

When using the advanced keyless entry function, the vehicle will automatically unlock ① when you approach it or lock ② when you walk away from it. The turn signals flash twice when you unlock the vehicle and flash once when you lock the vehicle.

If they do not flash when locking, check if all doors, the hood, and the luggage compartment lid are closed and make sure no other vehicle key is located in the vehicle or within the range for unlocking.

### Activating and deactivating functions

You can adjust the advanced keyless entry settings to your personal preferences in the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25*.

### Deactivating the unlocking function temporarily

- Lock the vehicle by pressing the button on the vehicle key.
- Press the sensor on the door handle **once** within five seconds ⇨ *page 42, fig. 12*. Do not grasp the door handle while locking the vehicle, or else the vehicle will not lock.
- To check if deactivation was successful, wait at least 10 seconds and pull the door handle again. The door should not open.

After that, it will only be possible to unlock the vehicle using the button on the vehicle key. After unlocking, the automatic unlocking function is activated again.

### Deactivating the locking function temporarily

- While the door is open, press and hold the button on the inside of the door for more than two seconds.

Automatic locking will not be available until the next time the vehicle is manually locked.

### Troubleshooting unlocking and locking issues

Check if the key battery has a sufficient charge level ⇨ *page 40*.

If the vehicle does not open when approaching it:

- First, walk away from the vehicle and approach it again, or

If the vehicle does not lock when walking away from it: ▶

- Make sure no other vehicle key is within the sensor range, or
- Check if all doors, the hood, and the luggage compartment lid are closed.

### Information about advanced keyless entry

If the vehicle is not unlocked for a long period of time, the function will only be available after the vehicle has been unlocked again. First, walk away from the vehicle briefly and then approach it again. The vehicle might need to be unlocked manually.

**Note**

If the vehicle key is within the detection area around the vehicle for a long period of time, there may be limitations on locking when walking away or unlocking when approaching the vehicle. The vehicle is not locked when walking away from it. Always check if the turn signals flash once when locking. Otherwise your vehicle is not protected against unauthorized access.

## Luggage compartment lid

### Safety information about the luggage compartment lid

**WARNING**

- No one, especially children, should stay in the vehicle when it is locked from the outside, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside. Locked doors make it more difficult for responders to enter the vehicle, which increases the risk of death.
- Always close and lock the luggage compartment lid and the doors when the vehicle is not in use. Otherwise someone, such as a child, could enter the vehicle through the luggage compartment and become locked inside it. To reduce the risk of injury, do not allow children to play in or around the vehicle.
- To reduce the risk of injuries by pinching, make sure that no one is in the operating area of the luggage compartment lid when closing, especially near the hinges, at the upper and lower edges of the lid, or all around the edge of the lid in general.
- After closing the luggage compartment lid, make sure that it is latched. The luggage compartment lid could open unintentionally while driving, which would increase the risk of an accident.
- Never drive with the luggage compartment lid ajar or open, because exhaust fumes from outside can enter the vehicle interior and increase the risk of asphyxiation.
- If there is a luggage carrier mounted on the luggage compartment lid, the luggage compartment lid may not open completely under certain circumstances or it could close by itself if open due to the extra weight. Therefore, the open luggage compartment lid must be given additional support or the cargo must first be removed from the luggage carrier.
- Pay careful attention when closing the luggage compartment lid. Otherwise, you could cause serious injury to yourself or others despite the pinch protection.

**Note**

The luggage compartment lid can bump into objects such as the garage ceiling when opening and become damaged.

## Overview of the luggage compartment lid

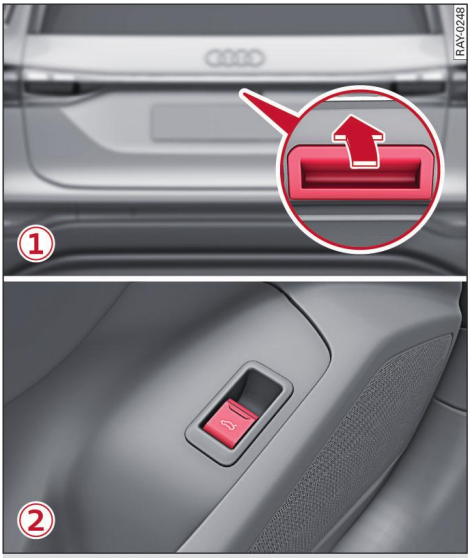



**Fig. 14** Handle in the luggage compartment lid (1), button in the driver's door (2)

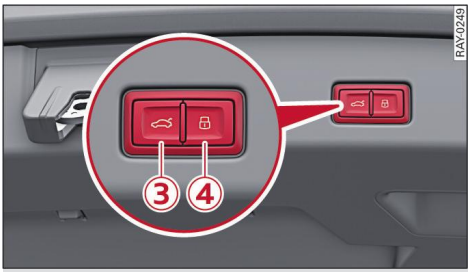



**Fig. 15** Luggage compartment lid: (3) closing button, (4) lock button

## Opening the luggage compartment lid

### Opening the luggage compartment lid with the handle

- Unlock the vehicle or the luggage compartment lid using the / button on the vehicle key and press the handle in the luggage compartment lid. When the luggage compartment is locked, the vehicle key or digital key cannot be more than approximately 4 feet (1.5 m) away from the luggage compartment.

The ability to open the luggage compartment lid using the handle can be deactivated or activated in the MMI.

### Opening the luggage compartment lid with the vehicle key

- When the vehicle is turned off, press the button on the vehicle key twice.

### Opening the luggage compartment lid with the button

- Engage the “P” selector lever position and briefly pull the button in the driver's door.

## Closing the luggage compartment lid

- Press the button in the luggage compartment lid, or
- With the vehicle turned off, press the / button in the luggage compartment lid. The vehicle key or digital key must not be located inside the vehicle. Pressing the button will lock the vehicle after closing the luggage compartment lid. If you press the button while the vehicle key is inside the luggage compartment or out of range (more than approximately 4 feet (1.5 m) away), a warning tone will sound and it will not be possible to close the luggage compartment lid, or
- With the vehicle turned on, pull the switch in the driver's door until the luggage compartment lid is closed, or
- If the luggage compartment lid is equipped with a button, press and hold the button on the vehicle key while the vehicle is turned off until the luggage compartment lid is closed. The closing process begins after a delay. Make sure there is enough distance (maximum of approximately 9 feet (3 m)) between you and the luggage compartment lid.

If the luggage compartment lid is open while the convenience key or digital key is inside the luggage compartment or the passenger compartment, then the button on the luggage compartment lid will be disabled.

## Storing the luggage compartment lid opening position

The position must be at a certain height or higher to store.

- Bring the luggage compartment lid into the desired open position. If you want to move the luggage compartment lid to a lower position, move it slowly in small increments; otherwise, the luggage compartment lid will close automatically.
- Press and hold the button in the luggage compartment lid for at least five seconds to store the desired open position. A visual and audio signal will follow.
- To set a higher open position, wait at least five seconds and then carefully lift the luggage compartment lid upward.
- Press and hold the button again for at least five seconds to store the desired open position.

Once the stored open position has been reached, you can fully open the luggage compartment lid by pressing the 2x button twice within three seconds.

## Manually opening and closing the luggage compartment lid

If the electric motor malfunctions or the vehicle battery charge level is low, the luggage compartment lid can be opened or closed by hand. Extra force will be needed to do this. Move the lid slowly to reduce the amount of force needed.

- Pull the luggage compartment lid down slightly and then press on the lid until it latches.

## Stopping the automatic movement of the luggage compartment lid

The automatic opening or closing of the luggage compartment lid will stop if:

- You press the button (3) or press the handle (1) in the luggage compartment lid again ⇨ *page 45, fig. 14*, or
- Something blocks the luggage compartment lid or makes it difficult for the lid to move, or
- You press the 2x button on the convenience key, or

If you press the button or press the handle in the luggage compartment lid again, the luggage compartment lid will open/close again.

## Manually unlocking the luggage compartment lid

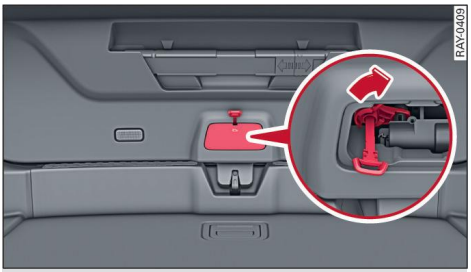



**Fig. 16** Inner luggage compartment lid: access to the manual release

The luggage compartment lid can be released from the inside in an emergency.

Use the mechanical key or a suitable screwdriver to manually unlock the doors.

- Fold the backrest on the rear bench seat forward ⇨ *page 81*.
- Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 40*.
- Using the mechanical key or screwdriver, pry off the cover in the luggage compartment lid trim panel.
- To unlock the luggage compartment lid, press the lever in the direction of the arrow using a suitable object (such as a screwdriver) or using the mechanical key if necessary.
- Fold the backrest backward until it locks into place.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 44*.
– If you have folded the backrests into the upright position, always check if the lock is correctly engaged by pulling forward on the backrest.

# Power windows

## Safety information about power windows

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 30*.
– Never close the windows carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner, because this increases the risk of injury.

## Introduction

The power window controls are located in the door trim panel and are labeled with the symbol.

You can open and close the windows using the controls for several minutes after turning the vehicle off. The power window controls are not deactivated until the driver's door or front passenger's door is opened.

The power windows are equipped with pinch protection. When closing automatically, the process may stop and the window may open again even if no obstacle is detected. Pull the control switch up until the window is raised completely.

## Opening and closing the windows

All power windows can be operated from the driver's seat. All power window controls are equipped with a two-stage function:

- To automatically open/close the window completely, briefly press/pull the control switch to the second level. The process will stop if the control switch is pressed or pulled again.
- To select a partially open position, press or pull the control switch to the first level and hold it there until the desired window position is reached.

# Convenience opening and closing

## Safety information about convenience opening and closing

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 30*.
– Never close the windows carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner, because this increases the risk of injury.
– Only open or close the windows with the vehicle key when you are able to see them and only within a maximum distance of approximately 6.5 feet (2 m) from the vehicle.
– There is a risk of pinching when closing the windows. Monitor the process while pressing the button. You can stop the closing process immediately by releasing the button.

## Window convenience opening and closing

Requirement: your vehicle has a convenience key or digital key.

You can set in the MMI if all windows can be operated at once ⇨ *page 32, Adjusting central locking settings*.

- Press and hold the / button on the remote control key until all windows reach the desired position, or
- Touch and hold the sensor on the door handle until all the windows are closed. Do not place your hand in the door handle when doing this.

When all of the windows are closed, the turn signals will flash once.

# Garage door opener

## Introduction

Requirement: your vehicle is equipped with a garage door opener.

With the garage door opener, you can activate systems such as the garage doors, security systems, or house lights from inside your vehicle. ▶

The functions are operated on the rearview mirror. Multiple receivers can be programmed, which can control the functions of up to three hand-held transmitters. A menu guide will be shown in the MMI when operating the functions.

### Information about selling the vehicle

– If you sell your vehicle, reset the system to the factory settings ⇨ *page 216*.

### Information about garage door opener compatibility

Before you program your system to the garage door opener, first check the compatibility:

– Ask an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility or check at www.homelink.com. You can also find more information about HomeLink there.
– You can display information about HomeLink (compatibility level/status/country code/HomeLink generation) in the **Vehicle** menu in the MMI ⇨ *page 25*:

### Information about declarations of conformity

The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 293*.

**WARNING**

– When operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no people or objects are in the area immediately surrounding the equipment. People can be injured or property can be damaged if struck when closing.
– Do not allow yourself to be distracted from traffic by viewing and operating the central display.

## Operating the garage door opener

**Fig. 17** Rearview mirror: buttons for the garage door opener

Requirements: the remote control transmitter must be programmed ⇨ *page 48, Programming the garage door opener*, the vehicle must be within range of the system, and the vehicle must be turned on.

To open or close the system (such as the garage door), press the corresponding button on the rearview mirror.

If the signal was transmitted successfully, the symbol on the rearview mirror will flash white.

## Programming the garage door opener

You can program both fixed code and rolling code systems in the MMI using the procedure that is described.

Requirement: the vehicle is turned on and location services for the vehicle app are active.

If programming has been started, the symbol on the rearview mirror will flash orange.

### Programming hand-held transmitters

Requirement: the hand-held transmitter must be present and the vehicle must be within range of the system (such as the garage door) that you would like to program.

▸ You can program systems in the garage door opener in the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25*. Then press the desired button (1-3). Follow the instructions in the MMI, or
▸ Press the corresponding button in the garage door opener on the rearview mirror. Follow the instructions in the MMI. ▶

- You can **reprogram** systems that are already programmed in the garage door opener in the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25* . Then press the desired button (1-3) for the opener system to be reprogrammed. Follow the instructions in the MMI.

With some systems, the garage door opener will be available immediately after programming. With other systems, the garage door opener must also be synchronized. In this case, the symbol on the rearview mirror will flash white quickly.

### Synchronizing hand-held transmitters with rolling code systems

Requirement: the hand-held transmitter must already be programmed and the vehicle must be within range of the system (such as the garage door).

If the system synchronization is performed directly after the programming procedure, follow the instructions on the MMI.

If you would like to sync at a later time:

You can **synchronize** hand-held transmitters in the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25*.

- Press the desired button (1-3) that you would like to synchronize and then press **Sync**.
- Follow the instructions in the MMI.

### Deleting programmed systems

Opener systems that are programmed can be deleted individually.

You can **delete** programming in the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25*.

- Then press the button (1-3) with the programming you would like to delete and press **Delete**.

### Information about programming hand-held transmitters

– Make sure the batteries in the hand-held transmitter are charged before starting the programming process.
– The programming process may take up to 30 seconds. It may be necessary for the hand-held transmitter to be pressed again in the meantime.
– The garage door opener may need to be synchronized with the system after programming. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for doing this.

### Information about universal receivers

In some cases, the system may need to be programmed in a different mode (“D mode”).

– Turn on the vehicle.
– You can **program** the alternative mode in the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25*.
– Then press and hold the desired button (1-3) longer.
– Select **Yes, in D mode** and follow the instructions on the MMI.

# Lights and vision

## Exterior lighting

### Turning the lights on or off

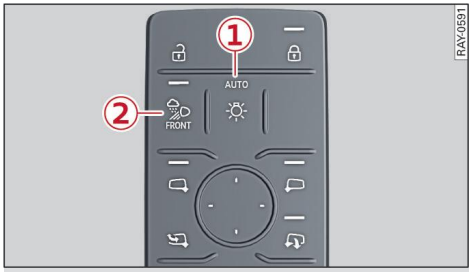



**Fig. 18** Driver's door: light switch module

**① Light switch**

Press ① repeatedly until the desired light function is selected. The selected function is displayed briefly in the instrument cluster. The AUTO light function is automatically selected when the vehicle turns on.

– AUTO - The automatic headlights adapt to the surrounding brightness automatically. The daytime running lights will automatically turn on. In vehicles for certain markets, you can turn the automatic daytime running lights on or off in the central display.
– – You can turn on the low beam headlights manually once the vehicle is turned on.

– – You can turn on the parking lights at speeds below 6 mph (10 km/h).
– OFF – You can turn off all light functions when the vehicle is turned off while the vehicle is stationary.

When the low beam headlights or the parking lights are turned on, a corresponding indicator light appears in the instrument cluster.

When the parking lights are turned on and the vehicle is turned off, a corresponding indicator light appears in the light switch module.

Only the front headlights turn on when the daytime running lights are activated. In vehicles in certain markets, the tail lights will also turn on.

### ② All-weather lights FRONT

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the all-weather lights enhance the illumination of the road when visibility is low.

### Automatic deactivation of the side marker lights

If the vehicle battery has been discharging for a while, the parking lights may turn off automatically. Avoid using the parking lights for several hours.

### Lights that have fogged over

In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals, and tail lights can fog over due to the temperature difference between the inside and outside. They will clear shortly after turning them on. This does not affect the service life of the lighting.

### Legal notes

When using lighting equipment, the driver is responsible for adhering to any local applicable regulations while driving and when parking the vehicle.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Automatic headlights are only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still responsible for controlling the headlights and may need to turn them on or off manually depending on light and visibility conditions. For example, fog cannot be detected by the light sensors. So always turn on the low beams under these weather conditions and when driving in the dark .

## Operating the turn signal and high beam lever

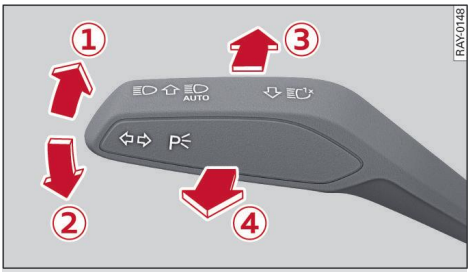



**Fig. 19** Turn signal and high beam lever: turning light functions on/off

### Turn signals

The turn signal will activate if you move the turn signal and high beam lever into a turn signal position while the vehicle is turned on. The respective or indicator light flashes. The turn signal will blink three times if you only tap the turn signal and high beam lever (convenience turn signal).

① Right turn signal

② Left turn signal

If an indicator light blinks twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. Carefully drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

The symbol does not have any function assigned to it in vehicles in certain countries.

### High beams and headlight flasher

▸ Move the turn signal and high beam lever to the corresponding position:

③ High beams on

④ High beams off or headlight flasher ▶

When the high beam headlights or the headlight flasher are turned on, a corresponding indicator light appears in the instrument cluster.

**WARNING**

High beams can cause glare for other persons, which increases the risk of an accident. For this reason, only use the high beams or the headlight flasher when they will not create glare for others.

## Turning the high beam assistant on or off

The high beam assistant automatically turns the high beams on or off depending on environmental factors.

A camera on the rearview mirror mount can detect light sources from other road users. The high beams turn on or off automatically depending on the position of vehicles traveling ahead and oncoming vehicles, the vehicle speed as well as other environmental factors and traffic conditions.

In vehicles with matrix LED headlights, individual sections of the high beams are turned on or off. The relevant area in front of the vehicle is dimmed, while the high beams stay on in the remaining areas. This allows for optimal lighting of the surrounding area without causing glare for other road users. Matrix LED headlights may be prohibited in some countries.

Adhere to any local applicable regulations when using the lighting equipment, for example in regard to reducing glare for other road users. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

### Activating the high beam assistant

Requirement: The AUTO light function must be turned on. The **High beam assistant** is turned on in the **Exterior lighting** menu ⇨ *page 52*.

- To activate the high beam assistant, tap the turn signal and high beam lever forward. The indicator light will appear in the instrument cluster display and the high beams will be turned on or off automatically. If the high beams were completely or partially turned on, the indicator light will turn on.

### Activating and deactivating the high beam head lights manually

If the high beams did not turn on or off as expected, you may turn them on or off manually instead:

- To activate the high beam headlights manually, tap the turn signal and high beam lever forward. The indicator light will turn on.
- To deactivate the high beam headlights manually, pull the turn signal and high beam lever back. The high beam assistant is deactivated.

### Operating the headlight flasher

- To operate the headlight flasher, pull the turn signal and high beam lever back. If the high beam headlights are not turned on/off, the high beam assistant will remain activated.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– The high beam assistant is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is always responsible for controlling the high beam headlights and adjusting them based on the lighting and visibility conditions.
– High beams can cause glare for other persons, which increases the risk of an accident. For this reason, only use the high beams or the headlight flasher when they will not create glare for others.

## Information about automatic light functions

### Automatic headlight range control

Your vehicle is equipped with automatic headlight range control. It reduces glare for oncoming traffic if the vehicle load changes. The headlight range adjusts automatically.

### Adaptive light

Adaptive light provides better visibility when driving in the dark. The lights are adapted to the ▶

road conditions based on speed, such as when driving on expressways, rural roads, at intersections, and around curves. Adaptive light only works when the automatic headlights are activated.

## Adjusting the exterior lighting

You can turn exterior lighting functions on or off and adjust their settings in the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25*. The available settings depend on the country and vehicle equipment.

Depending on vehicle equipment, some menu items may be found in the settings menu ⚙.

### Digital light signatures

You can choose from various light signatures. Depending on vehicle equipment, the light signature is active when the daytime running lights and/or the parking lights are active.

If you change to a different light signature, the change will go into effect shortly after you exit the vehicle.

The signatures displayed in the selection menu may differ from the signatures in the lighting equipment.

### High beam assistant

You can turn the high beam assistant on or off.

### Entry and exit lighting

The entry and exit lighting illuminates the area around the vehicle when unlocking the vehicle or when opening the driver's door while the vehicle is off. The entry and exit lighting works when it is dark and when the AUTO light function is turned on. The headlights and tail lights will turn on automatically each time the vehicle is unlocked regardless of how bright it is outside the vehicle.

### Low beam headlight activation time

You can adjust the activation timing of the low beam headlights. This will adjust the sensitivity of the light sensor.

### Daytime running lights

USA models: The daytime running lights can be turned on or off.

Canada models: The daytime running lights cannot be turned off. They will activate automatically each time the vehicle is turned on.

## Turning the emergency flashers on or off

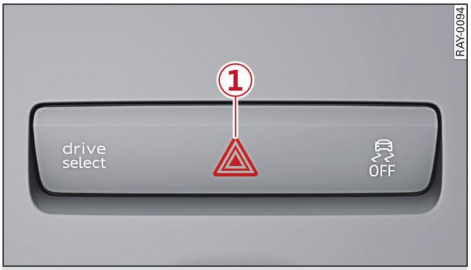



**Fig. 20** Center console: emergency flashers

The emergency flashers help to make other road users aware of your vehicle in dangerous situations.

▸ Press the ⚠ button (1) to turn the emergency flashers on or off.

When the emergency flashers are turned on, the ⇦ and ⇨ indicator lights will flash at the same time.

You should turn the emergency flashers on if:

– You are the last vehicle in a traffic jam so that all other vehicles approaching from behind can see your vehicle
– Your vehicle has broken down or you are having an emergency
– Your vehicle is being towed or if you are towing another vehicle

You can indicate a lane change or a turn using the turn signal and high beam lever when the emergency flashers are on. The emergency flashers will stop temporarily.

The emergency flashers also work when the vehicle is turned off.

## Exterior lighting messages

The indicator light indicates that a lamp has malfunctioned.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the messages again, open the notification center in the central display.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

**Adaptive light: malfunction! See owner's manual**

Adaptive light is not working. The headlights still function. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

**Headlight range control: malfunction! See owner's manual**

There is a malfunction in the headlight range control system, which may cause glare for other road users. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**High beam assistant: malfunction! See owner's manual**

You can still turn the high beams on or off manually. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

**High beam assistant: currently unavailable. Camera view limited due to surroundings. See owner's manual**

This message appears if the camera's visual field is blocked. The system will turn itself off. Try turning the systems on later.

**Automatic headlights: malfunction! See owner's manual**

The light/rain sensor is malfunctioning. When the AUTO light function is on, the low beams will remain on at all times for safety reasons. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

# Interior lighting

## Turning the front interior lighting on or off

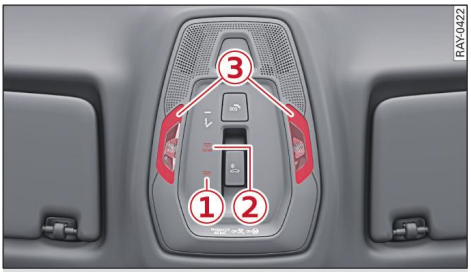



**Fig. 21** Headliner: interior lighting

### Interior lighting buttons

(1) – Interior lighting on/off

(2) REAR – Rear interior lighting on/off

### Touch-sensitive reading lights

- To turn a reading light on or off, touch the surface (3) briefly.
- To dim the reading lights, touch the surface (3) while the light is off and keep touching it until the desired brightness is reached.

## Turning the rear interior lighting on or off

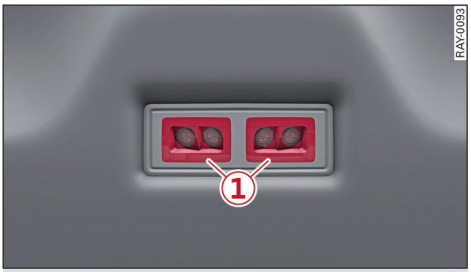



**Fig. 22** Headliner: rear reading lights

### Reading lights

- To turn a reading light on or off, touch the surface (1) briefly.

▸ To dim the reading lights, touch the surface ① while the light is off and keep touching it until the desired brightness is reached.

These reading lights are located on the side, depending on vehicle equipment.

## Adjusting the interior accent lighting

The interior accent lighting turns on when the vehicle is turned on. The interior accent lighting is deactivated when the lights are set to OFF.

You can adjust the interior accent lighting in the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25*.

Possible settings:

– You can adjust the brightness and color of the interior accent lighting separately for the line and surface lighting.
– You can also choose from multiple preconfigured color settings.
– You can pair the line and surface lighting with the selected Audi drive select mode.

## Adjusting the functional interior accent lighting

The functional interior accent lighting uses the line and surface lighting to indicate active functions and to warn about hazards. Examples of this include indicating when a turn signal is active and warning when a door is opened. The main display is the light bar at the lower edge of the windshield.

You can turn functional interior accent lighting on or off for specific functions or adjust the brightness in the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25*.

The functional interior accent lighting will always remain activated for some functions.

## Adjusting the display brightness

You can adjust the brightness level of the cockpit or available individual displays in the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25*.

# Vision

## Adjusting exterior mirrors

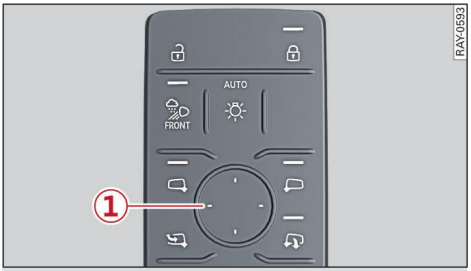



**Fig. 23** Driver's door: control panel for the exterior mirrors

The buttons for adjusting the exterior mirrors are located in the driver's door control panel.

/ – Selects the left or right exterior mirror. To adjust the mirror, press on the desired direction on the control panel ①.

– Folds the exterior mirrors in. To fold the mirrors out again, press again. In the central display, you can select if the mirrors should fold in automatically when you lock the vehicle.

– Selects the front passenger exterior mirror lowering function.

If the power adjusting function malfunctions, the glass in both mirrors can be adjusted by pressing on the edge of it by hand.

### Front passenger exterior mirror lowering function

Select this function to get a better view of the curb, for example when backing into a parking space. The front passenger exterior mirror lowering function can only be activated when “R” is engaged.

▸ Press to activate the front passenger exterior mirror lowering function.
▸ Select the left and/or right exterior mirror.
▸ Adjust the mirror position if necessary using the control panel.

The vehicle stores the current settings for the respective user. When the front passenger exterior mirror lowering function is active, an LED in the ▶

control panel will pulse to indicate which mirror is activated when "R" is engaged.

The mirror moves back into its original position

– When you turn off the vehicle.
– When you drive forward at speeds faster than 9 mph (15 km/h).
– When you deactivate the front passenger exterior mirror lowering function by pressing the button again.

**WARNING**

Curved mirror surfaces (for example convex) enlarge the field of vision. However, they make objects in the mirror appear smaller and farther away. When using these mirrors to estimate your distance to vehicles behind you when changing lanes, you could estimate incorrectly, which increases the risk of an accident.

**Note**

– Applies to: vehicles with power folding exterior mirrors: If the mirror housing was moved by outside forces (such as an impact when maneuvering), you must use the power folding function to fold the mirror all the way out. There will be a loud noise when the mirrors latch into place again. The mirror housing must not be moved back into place by hand because this could impair the function of the mirror mechanism.
– Applies to: vehicles without power folding exterior mirrors: If the mirror housing was moved by outside forces (such as an impact when maneuvering), you must move it back into place by hand.
– If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage to the mirrors. Never fold power folding exterior mirrors by hand. Only fold them in and out using the power controls.

## Dimming the mirrors

### Automatic dimming rearview mirror

▸ The interior and exterior mirrors dim automatically when light shines on them, for example from headlights on a vehicle behind you.

If the light reaching the rearview mirror is obstructed, the automatic dimming mirror will not function correctly,

The automatic dimming mirrors do not dim when the interior lighting is turned on or the reverse gear is selected.

**WARNING**

– If the glass on an automatic dimming mirror breaks, electrolyte can leak out. This liquid can irritate the skin, eyes and respiratory system. If there is contact with the fluid, flush immediately with plenty of water. Seek medical attention if necessary.
– Repeated or long-term exposure to electrolyte fluid can lead to irritation of the airways, especially in people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Take deep breaths immediately after leaving the vehicle or, if this is not possible, open all of the doors and windows as wide as possible.
– If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the eyes, flush them thoroughly with plenty of clean water for at least 15 minutes and then seek medical attention.
– If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the skin, flush the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes, and then clean with soap and water and seek medical attention. Clean affected clothing and shoes thoroughly before wearing again.
– If the fluid was swallowed and the person is conscious, flush the mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless this is recommended by medical professionals. Seek medical attention immediately.

**Note**

If the glass on an automatic dimming mirror breaks, electrolyte can leak out. This liquid ▸

damages plastic surfaces and paint. Clean this liquid as quickly as possible, for example with a wet sponge.

## Operating the panoramic glass roof with switchable transparency

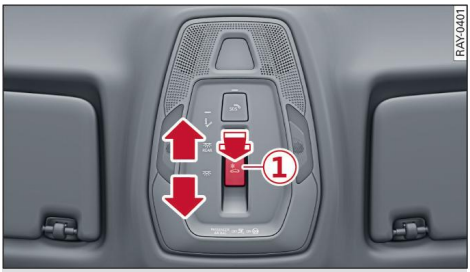



**Fig. 24** Headliner: button for panoramic glass roof with switchable transparency

The panoramic glass roof with switchable transparency is divided into segments. You can make individual segments clear or matte. You can also choose predefined designs.

The switching process may be delayed when exterior temperatures are low, especially below freezing.

### Setting the transparency

You can adjust the transparency of each segment by sliding the button ①.

- Automatic process: briefly move the button to one of its end positions to make all segments clear or matte at once. You can stop the automatic process at any time and any desired position by pressing the button again.
- Manual process: move the button to an end position and keep it pressed until the segments are as clear or matte as desired. You can stop the manual process at any time and any desired position by releasing the button again.

### Selecting a predefined transparency design

You can set predefined designs by pressing the button ①.

- Press the button to select a transparency design or to switch between them.

## Operating the sun visors

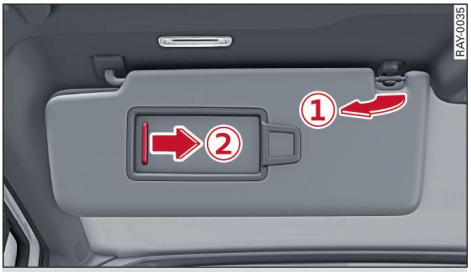



**Fig. 25** Roof headliner: sun visor

### Sun visors

The sun visors can be moved out of their brackets ① and turned toward the doors.

They can also be moved back and forth lengthwise in this position.

### Vanity mirror

- Move the cover ② on the make-up mirror. The mirror light turns on.

## Operating the side shades

**Fig. 26** Rear door: side shade

- Pull the side shade out of the rear door and secure it in the retainer at the top of the door frame.

# Windshield wipers

## Operating the windshield wipers

**Fig. 27** Windshield wiper lever: windshield wiper

▸ Move the windshield wiper lever to the corresponding position:

⓪ Windshield wipers off

① Rain sensor/intermittent mode. The windshield wipers turn on when it is raining once the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 2 mph (4 km/h). The higher the sensitivity of the rain sensor that is set (switch ⑥ to the right), the earlier the windshield wipers respond to moisture on the windshield. In certain conditions, the wipers may wipe once while in rain sensor mode to improve the camera view. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode in the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25*, which turns the intermittent mode on. In intermittent mode, you can adjust the interval time using the switch ⑥.

② Slow wiping

③ Fast wiping

④ Single wipe If you hold the windshield wiper lever in this position longer, the wipers switch from slow wiping to fast wiping. The single wipe function also works when the vehicle is turned off.

⑤ Clean the windshield. The number of wipes and afterwipes depends on how long the windshield wiper lever is held in position ⑤.

When driving, the wipers wipe one time after a few seconds to remove water droplets. You can turn this function off by moving the windshield wiper lever to position ⑤ within 10 seconds of the afterwipe. The afterwipe function is reactivated the next time you turn on the vehicle.

The headlight washer system operates only when the low beam headlights are turned on. If you move the windshield wiper lever into position ⑤, the headlights will be cleaned at regular intervals.

**WARNING**

– The rain sensor is only intended to assist the driver. The driver may still need to turn the wipers on manually depending on visibility conditions.
– The windshield must not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Under unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness, and when the sun is low, these coatings can cause increased glare, which increases the risk of an accident. They can also cause wiper blade chatter.

**Note**

– If there is frost, make sure the windshield wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield. Turning on the windshield wipers when the blades are frozen to the windshield can damage the wiper blades.
– Turn off the windshield wipers (windshield wiper lever in ⓪ position) before cleaning your vehicle in a car wash. This prevents the wipers from turning on unintentionally and causing damage to the windshield wiper system.

## Cleaning or replacing the front wiper blades

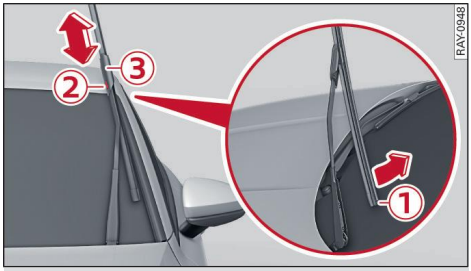



**Fig. 28** Windshield wipers: replacing the wiper blades ▶

### Activating the wiper change position

Requirement: the hood must be closed.

- Turn off the vehicle and hold the windshield wiper lever in position ④ ⇨ *page 57, fig. 27* until the windshield wiper moves into the wiper change position.
- To bring the windshield wipers into the normal position, turn on the vehicle and hold the windshield wiper lever in position ④ until the windshield wipers go back into their original position, or drive faster than 8 mph (12 km/h).

You can also turn the wiper change position on or off in the central display:

- Turn the windshield wipers off (position ⓪ ⇨ *page 57, fig. 27*).
- Select: ⊞ > **Vehicle** > **More** > **Windshield wipers** > **Wiper change position**.

### Cleaning the wiper blades

Requirement: the windshield wipers must be in the wiper change position.

- Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
- For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *table on page 267*.

### Replacing the wiper blades

Requirement: the windshield wipers must be in the wiper change position.

- Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
- Tilt the wiper blade ① as far away as possible and hold it in this position.
- Press the locking knob ② on the wiper blade.
- Remove the wiper blade from the windshield wiper arm mount ③.
- Insert the new wiper blade into the mount on the wiper arm until it clicks into place.
- Place the wiper arm back on the windshield.
- Exit the wiper change position.

**WARNING**

Worn and dirty windshield wiper blades can impair vision, which increases the risk of an accident. Clean the wiper blades if they are dirty. Replace the wiper blades one to two times per year. The wiper blades should also be replaced if they are impairing clear sight and driving safety, for example due to damage to the blades.

**Note**

– The windshield wipers must only be lifted up when in the wiper change position. Otherwise, you risk damaging the paint on the hood or the windshield wiper motor.
– You should not move your vehicle or press the windshield wiper lever when the wiper arms are folded up from the windshield. The windshield wipers would move back into their original position and could damage the hood and windshield.

### Windshield wiper messages

If is displayed when there is a malfunction, the windshield wiper functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the messages again, open the notification center in the central display. Try to turn the windshield wipers on again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

## Digital compass

### Turning the digital compass on or off

**Fig. 29** Rearview mirror: digital compass is turned on

The digital compass only works when the vehicle is turned on.

To prevent inaccurate compass readings, do not bring any remote controls, electrical devices, or metallic objects near the mirror.

- To turn the digital compass on or off, press a suitable object, such as a paper clip, into the opening at the bottom of the mirror housing for approximately 3 seconds until the compass display in the mirror turns on or off.

The directions are indicated with abbreviations: **N** (north), **NE** (northeast), **E** (east), **SE** (southeast), **S** (south), **SW** (southwest), **W** (west), **NW** (northwest).

### Adjusting the magnetic zone

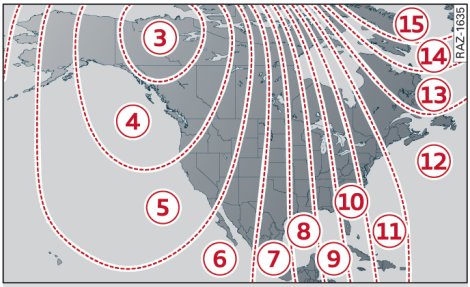



**Fig. 30** Magnetic zone map

The magnetic zone must be adjusted correctly for the compass to read accurately.

- Press a suitable object, such as a paper clip, into the opening at the bottom of the mirror housing for approximately 8 seconds ⇨ *page 58, fig. 29* until the number of the magnetic field zone that is set appears in the rearview mirror.
- Set the magnetic field zone by briefly pressing repeatedly. The selection mode turns off after a few seconds.

### Calibrating the digital compass

You must recalibrate the digital compass if it does not display the correct direction.

- Press a suitable object, such as a paper clip, into the opening at the bottom of the mirror housing for approximately 10 seconds ⇨ *page 58, fig. 29* until **C** appears in the rearview mirror.
- Drive in a circle at about 6 mph (10 km/h) until a direction is displayed in the rearview mirror.

> **WARNING**
> To reduce the risk to yourself and other road users, calibrate the digital compass in an area where there is no traffic.

# Sitting correctly and safely

## Maintaining the correct seating position

### Safety information about seating positions

As the driver, you are responsible for making sure each person in the vehicle is sitting correctly in their seat and maintaining this correct seating position while driving. Make sure that:

– Each person in the vehicle has adjusted their seat correctly ⇨ *page 60*.
– The steering wheel is adjusted correctly ⇨ *page 63*.
– The mirrors are adjusted so that there is a sufficient view of the area around the vehicle ⇨ *page 54*.
– Each person in the vehicle has adjusted their head restraint correctly ⇨ *page 64*.
– Each person in the vehicle has adjusted their safety belt correctly ⇨ *page 65*.
– The activation status of the front passenger's airbag is suitable for the person in the front passenger's seat ⇨ *page 71*.
– Children are secured in suitable child restraint systems that are secured to appropriate vehicle seats ⇨ *page 73*. Read and observe the important safety information pertaining to the use of child restraint systems on the front passenger's seat ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety information about child restraint systems on page 73*.

If you or other passengers in the vehicle have physical limitations that prevent sitting in a correct position, modifications to the vehicle may be ▶

necessary. For more information, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, or call Audi customer support at 1-800-822-2834.

### Examples of incorrect seating positions

Safety belts can only provide optimal protection when they are routed correctly. Incorrect seating positions significantly reduce the protective functions of the safety belts and increase the risk of injury due to incorrect belt routing.

The following list includes examples of seating positions that could be dangerous for all vehicle occupants. This is not a complete list. Audi would simply like to increase your awareness of the topic. The following points apply when the vehicle is in motion:

– Never stand inside the vehicle.
– Never stand on the seats.
– Never kneel on the seats.
– Never tilt your backrest far back.
– Never lean against the instrument panel.
– Never lie down on the rear bench seat.
– Never sit only on the front section of the seat.
– Never sit sideways on the seat.
– Never lean against the window.
– Never place your feet out of the window.
– Never place your feet on the instrument panel.
– Never place your feet on the seat cushion.
– Never ride in the footwell.
– Never sit on the armrests.
– Never drive or ride in a seat without fastening your safety belt.
– Never ride in the luggage compartment.

**WARNING**

Incorrect seating positions, failure to wear a safety belt, or being too close to an airbag increase the risk of serious injury or death to vehicle occupants, especially if the airbags deploy and come into contact with vehicle occupants who are not seated correctly. Note the important information and warnings in the chapters for the topics given above.

## Front seats

### Safety information about the front seats

Make sure that:

– You can press the pedals down completely while your legs are slightly bent.
– The distance between your upper body and the steering wheel or instrument panel is at least 10 inches (25 cm).
– The distance between your knees and the instrument panel is at least 4 inches (10 cm).
– Your thighs are lightly supported by the front surface of the seat.
– The backrest is in an upright position and the back of the person seated is resting against it.
– You have a sufficient view of the area around the vehicle.
– You have a clear view of the instrument cluster, indicator lights, and the head-up display.

Only control a seat using one control panel at a time.

**WARNING**

– If you are too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel, the airbag system cannot provide the optimal protection, which increases the risk of injury and death.
– To reduce the risk of injury to the driver in the event of sudden braking maneuvers or accidents, never drive with the backrest reclined very far. The airbag system and safety belts can only provide optimal protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing the safety belt correctly. If the backrest is angled back too far, the safety belt can shift to soft areas of the body, such as the stomach, which increases the risk of injury.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, only adjust the seats when the vehicle is stationary.
– Be careful when adjusting the seat. Lack of control or attention when adjusting can result in injuries due to pinching for vehicle occupants both in the front seats and rear seats.

▶

– Never place objects in the driver's footwell. Objects could shift and enter the area around the pedals, which could prevent you from using them. You would then be unable to use the pedals if sudden driving or braking maneuvers were needed, which increases the risk of an accident.
– Make sure that the floor mats are always securely attached.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, never place additional floor mats or other floor covers over the installed floor mats, because this reduces the pedal's range of motion and can impair pedal operation.
– To reduce the risk of injury, never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window, or on the seat surfaces. This also applies to persons in the rear seats.
– The power front seats can also be adjusted when the vehicle is turned off. To reduce the risk of injury, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.

**Note**

To reduce the risk of damage, be very careful when adjusting the seat to make sure the head restraints do not come into contact with the roof.

## Adjusting the front power seats

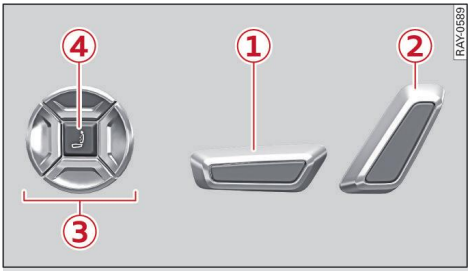



**Fig. 31** Front seat: seat adjustment buttons

You can adjust the basic settings using the buttons.

The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

### Adjusting the seat position

▸ To move the seat forward or back, push the button (1) forward or back.
▸ To adjust the seat upward or downward, push the rear section of the button (1) upward or downward.
▸ To tilt the seat surface, press the front part of the button (1) upward or downward.

### Adjusting the backrests

▸ To move the backrest forward or back, press the button (2) forward or back.

### Adjusting the lumbar support

▸ To adjust the lumbar support, press one of the four direction buttons (3).

### Massage function

To turn the massage function on or off, press the button (4).

## Adjusting the thigh support

**Fig. 32** Front seat: adjusting the seat depth

▸ To make the thigh support longer or shorter, lift the handle (5) and slide the thigh support.

# Seat functions

## Seat settings in the MMI

You can adjust additional settings and turn functions on or off in the MMI.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Vehicle** > **Seats**.

These settings depend on vehicle equipment and can be operated through the MMI.

## Operating the front seat massage function

▸ Press the button on the front seat to turn the massage function on or off.

The **Massage** menu will be displayed.

▸ Additional functions depend on vehicle equipment and can be operated through the MMI.

The massage function turns off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.

## Using easy entry for the front seats

Easy entry makes it easier to enter and exit the front seats.

You can turn easy entry on or off and adjust its settings in the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25*.

## Adjusting the backrest bolster

You can adjust the backrest bolsters and turn functions on or off in the MMI.

▸ Select: > **Vehicle** > **Seats**.

These settings depend on vehicle equipment and can be operated through the MMI.

## Information about the front center armrest

The front center armrest is located between the front seats.

### Adjusting the center armrest

The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

▸ To move the center armrest out of its initial position, lift the armrest. Press the button (depending on vehicle equipment).
▸ To close to the center armrest, press and hold the button (depending on vehicle equipment).
▸ To adjust to any angle, press and hold the button and move the center armrest to the desired position (depending on vehicle equipment).
▸ To move the center armrest back to its initial position, fold it downward. Press and hold the button (depending on vehicle equipment).

**WARNING**

– In certain positions, the front center armrest can interfere with the driver's arm movement, which increases the risk of injury.
– Applies to: center armrest with button: Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.

## Operating the memory function

### Introduction

Seat profiles can be stored and recalled using the memory function. Depending on vehicle equipment, the seat profiles can store various settings, such as the position of the driver's seat and the exterior mirrors.

The memory function buttons are located in the door trim panel.

The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

### Storing a seat profile

▸ Press the SET button. If the LED in the button turns on, a seat profile can be stored.
▸ Push one of the numbered memory buttons. A tone confirms that the settings were stored.

### Recalling a seat profile

▸ Press one of the numbered memory buttons and follow any instructions given by the system.

**WARNING**

– To reduce the risk of an accident, the seat setting can only be recalled when the vehicle is stationary.
– To reduce the risk of injuries such as pinching, each adjustment operation in a stored setting can be interrupted by pressing any seat adjustment button on the seat being adjusted.

# Steering wheel

## Safety information about the steering wheel

Make sure that:

– The distance between your upper body and the steering wheel is at least 10 inches (25 cm).
– Your arms are bent slightly at the elbows.
– You have a sufficient view of the area around the vehicle and you have a clear view of the instrument cluster and head-up display.
– You are always holding the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge at the sides (9:00 and 3:00 position) when driving.

**WARNING**

– To reduce the risk of an accident, make sure the steering wheel is adjusted correctly and cannot be moved out of position before you start to drive.
– If you are too close to the steering wheel, the driver's airbag cannot provide optimal protection, which increases the risk of injury or death.
– Never hold the steering wheel in the 12:00 position or in any other way, such as holding the center of the steering wheel. Otherwise, your arms, hands, and head could be injured in the event that the driver's airbag deploys.

## Adjusting the steering wheel position manually

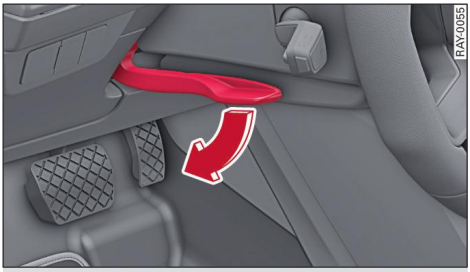



**Fig. 33** Steering column: lever for adjusting the steering wheel position

The steering wheel position can be adjusted up and down, and forward and back.

▸ Pull the lever in the direction of the arrow.
▸ Bring the steering wheel into the desired position.
▸ Push the lever all the way up until it engages.

**WARNING**

– To reduce the risk of an accident, only adjust the steering wheel before you start driving.
– Push the lever upward firmly so that the steering wheel position does not change unintentionally while driving, which would increase the risk of an accident.

## Power steering wheel position adjustment

**Fig. 34** Steering column: switch for adjusting the steering wheel position

The power adjustment can be used to move the steering wheel up and down, and forward and back.

▸ To adjust the steering wheel, press the button in the direction in which you would like the steering wheel to move.

The steering wheel can also be adjusted when the vehicle is turned off.

# Head restraints

## Safety information about the head restraints

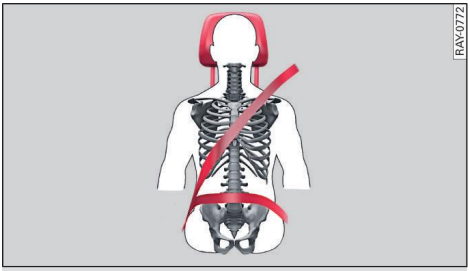



**Fig. 35** Correctly-adjusted head restraint

Make sure that:

– The upper edge of the head restraint is as even as possible with the top of your head.
– The head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.
– The head restraints on the occupied rear seats are positioned as high as possible.

**WARNING**

– There is one head restraint for each seat. All vehicle occupants must adjust the head restraints correctly before every trip. Having head restraints that are not adjusted correctly or not installed in the vehicle increases the risk of a neck injury during sudden or unexpected driving or braking maneuvers or in a collision.
– Only remove the rear seat head restraints if it is necessary in order to install a child restraint system ⇨ *page 73*. Stow the removed head restraints securely, for example in the luggage compartment. Reinstall the head restraints immediately once the child restraint system has been removed. Driving without head restraints increases the risk of serious neck injuries.

## Adjusting the front head restraints

**Fig. 36** Front seat: adjusting the head restraint

The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

▸ To adjust the head restraint upward or downward, press the button on the side and slide the head restraint. Release the button and slide the head restraint farther until it locks into place.

## Adjusting the rear head restraints

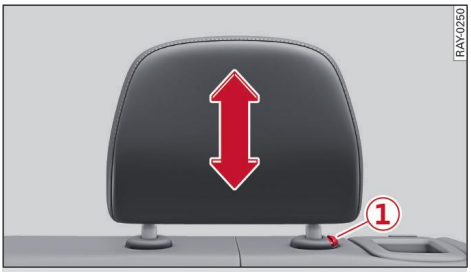



**Fig. 37** Rear seat: adjusting the head restraint

The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

▸ To adjust the center head restraint upward, slide it until it locks into place.
▸ To adjust the outer head restraints upward, press the button (1) and slide the head restraint. Release the button and slide the head restraint farther until it locks into place.
▸ To adjust the head restraint downward, press the button (1) and slide the head restraint. Release the button and slide the head restraint farther until it locks into place.

## Removing or installing the rear head restraints

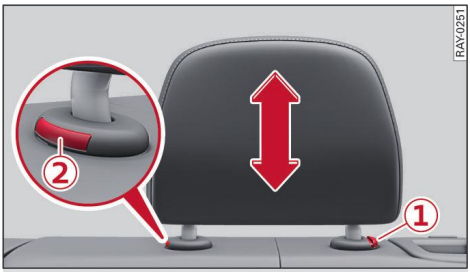



**Fig. 38** Rear seat: removing or installing a head restraint

### Removing the head restraints

Requirement: in vehicles with folding backrests, the backrest must be folded.

- Move the head restraint all the way up.
- Press the buttons ① and ② at the same time and pull the head restraint out of the backrest ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety information about the head restraints on page 64*.

### Installing the head restraints

Requirement: in vehicles with folding backrests, the backrest must be folded.

- Slide the posts on the head restraint down into the guides until the posts click into place.
- Press the button ① and slide the head restraint all the way down. It should not be possible to remove the head restraint from the backrest without pressing the button.

# Safety belts

## Safety information about the safety belts

Each seat is equipped with a three-point safety belt. Safety belts that are worn correctly are the most effective way to reduce the risk of serious injuries or death in a collision. Therefore, wear your safety belt correctly and make sure that all persons in the vehicle are also wearing their safety belts correctly when the vehicle is moving.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, each person in the vehicle must still always wear the appropriate safety belt. In addition to their normal protective function, safety belts also hold vehicle occupants in the correct seating position in the event of a collision so that the airbags can deploy correctly and provide additional protection. Safety belts provide protection during collisions when the airbags do not deploy or if they have already deployed.

**⚠ WARNING**

The risk of serious injury or death increases if the safety belt is not fastened, if it is worn incorrectly, or if it is damaged.

- All vehicle occupants, including the driver, must fasten their safety belts correctly before every trip and must always keep their safety belts fastened during the trip, regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not. This also applies to children that are seated in a child restraint system that is appropriate for their weight and age and that is secured with a safety belt.
- In the event of a collision, vehicle occupants who are not wearing safety belts could be propelled through the vehicle interior and collide with vehicle components, such as the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield, or doors. In some situations, vehicle occupants could also be ejected from the vehicle. Vehicle occupants in the rear seats who do not wear safety belts not only endanger themselves, but also other persons in the vehicle.
- Only one person may be fastened with a safety belt at a time. Never secure more than one person, including children, with a single safety belt.
- Never allow children or infants to ride on another person's lap and be belted into the safety belt with them.
- Insert the belt buckle only in the belt latch belonging to the corresponding seat, so that the protective function is not impaired.
- To ensure the maximum protective function of the safety belts, all persons in the vehicle must sit in a correct seating position ⇨ *page 59*.
- Check the condition of your vehicle's safety belts regularly ⇨ *page 267*. If you find ▶

damage to the belt webbing, the belt connections, the retractor, or the buckle, have the damaged safety belt replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– The safety belts must not be removed or modified in any way. Do not attempt to repair the safety belts yourself.
– Safety belts that are strained during an accident must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

## Information about correct safety belt positioning

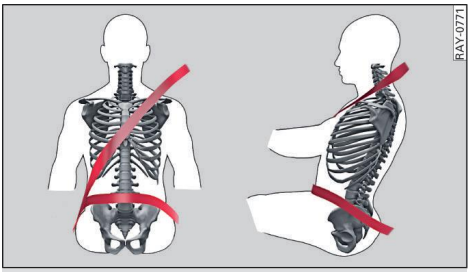



**Fig. 39** Lap/shoulder belt positioning

**Fig. 40** Safety belt positioning for pregnant women

Fastened safety belts offer optimal protection during an accident and reduce the risk of serious injury or death only when they are positioned correctly. Furthermore, the correct safety belt position holds the vehicle occupant in place so that a deployed airbag can provide maximum protection. Therefore, always fasten the safety belt and make sure it is positioned correctly ⇨ *fig. 39*.

To ensure the safety belt is positioned correctly, make sure of the following points:

– The lap portion of the safety belt must be located across the lap.
– The shoulder portion of the safety belt must rest over the center of the shoulder.
– The safety belt must always rest flat and securely on the body.

For pregnant women, the safety belt must rest evenly across the chest and as low and flat as possible on the lap, so that no pressure is applied to the lower abdomen. This should be done throughout the entire pregnancy ⇨ *fig. 40*.

**WARNING**

Incorrect safety belt positioning can cause serious injury in the event of an accident or during sudden braking or driving maneuvers.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined extremely far. The more the backrest is tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to the safety belt being routed incorrectly.
– The safety belt itself or a loose safety belt can cause serious injuries if it shifts onto soft areas of the body, such as the stomach.
– The shoulder portion of the safety belt must lie over the center of the shoulder and chest, and never under the arm, behind the back, or across the neck or face.
– The lap portion of the safety belt must lie across the lap and never over the stomach.
– The safety belt must lie flat and securely on the upper part of the body and the lap.
– The belt webbing must not be pinched or twisted, or rub against sharp edges.
– If the safety belt height is set incorrectly and/or the safety belt is routed incorrectly, then the safety belt's protective function will be impaired in the event of an accident. Make sure the safety belt is at the right height and is routed correctly for the person in the vehicle who is using it.
– A safety belt that is too loose may result in injuries during an accident, because your body will move farther forward due to kinetic energy and will be stopped abruptly by the belt.

– Bulky, loose clothing (such as a coat over a sports jacket) may prevent the seat and safety belts from functioning correctly.
– Do not position the safety belt over hard or breakable objects (such as glasses, pens, etc.).
– The lap belt portion of the safety belt must sit as low as possible on the lap of pregnant women and lie flat under the belly.

**Note**

Make sure that there are no hook-and-loop fasteners or sharp objects such as zippers or rivets on clothing in the area where the safety belt is worn. Otherwise, the safety belt could be damaged.

## Fastening and unfastening safety belts

**Fig. 41** Belt buckle and belt latch

**Fig. 42** Releasing the belt buckle from the belt latch

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 65*.

### Fastening the safety belt

▸ Pull the safety belt by the belt buckle evenly across your chest and lap.
▸ Insert the belt buckle in the belt latch belonging to the seat until it audibly engages ⇨ *fig. 41*.
▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that the belt is securely locked in the latch.

### Unfastening the safety belt

▸ Press the red button on the belt latch ⇨ *fig. 42*. The belt buckle will pop out.
▸ Guide the belt back by hand so that the safety belt can roll up more easily.

## Overview of safety belt displays

Applies to: Canada

The display showing seat usage and the indicator lights depend on the country.

- If the indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on or flashes, a safety belt is not fastened or it has been unfastened while driving. There may be additional audio warning signals.

The rear seat safety belts are also monitored by the following indicator lights in the instrument cluster:

– If the indicator light turns on, the safety belt for the rear seat that is indicated is not fastened or the seat is not occupied.

- If this indicator light turns on, the safety belt for the rear seat has been fastened.

## Safety belt status display

Applies to: USA

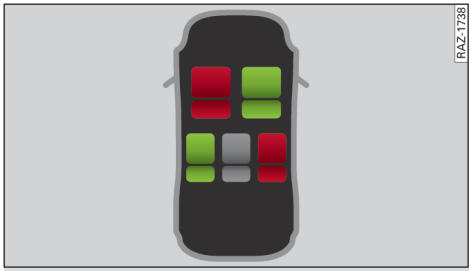



**Fig. 43** Seat status display

The seat status display helps the driver identify which passengers have fastened their safety belts when the vehicle is ready to drive. The status is displayed as follows:

– : the green symbol indicates that the safety belt for a seat is fastened.

– : the red symbol indicates that the safety belt for a seat is not fastened or has been unfastened.

– Applies to: rear seats: : the gray symbol indicates that the corresponding safety belt is not fastened or that the seat is not occupied when starting to drive.

– Applies to: front passenger seat: : the gray symbol indicates that the seat is not occupied.

To indicate readiness of the system when starting the vehicle, warning and indicator lights will be displayed, including the seat status display and the lamp.

The lamp will turn off once the safety belts are fastened on all occupied seats. The seat status display will remain visible for a few seconds before it turns off.

If the light is on, an audio signal will sound when the vehicle is turned on or when a selector position is selected while the vehicle is stationary. The status display of the seat as well as the light will flash. This audio warning signal is temporary to start but it will remain on once the vehicle reaches speeds of approximately 6–7 mph (10 km/h). The audio signal will turn off once all passengers have fastened their safety belts. The warning and indicator lights will turn off shortly after that.

## Adjusting the height of the safety belt

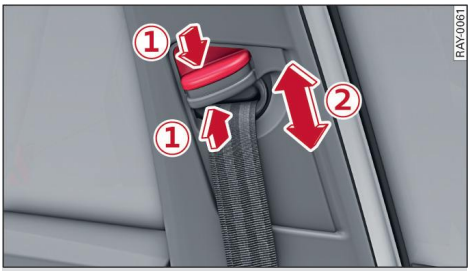



**Fig. 44** Belt height adjustment for the front seats - safety belt relay

▸ To move the belt higher, slide the safety belt relay (2) upward.

▸ To move the belt lower, press the release button (1) and slide the safety belt relay (2) downward.

▸ To check if the safety belt relay is securely locked in place, pull firmly on the belt.

You can also adjust the height of the front seats to change the position of the safety belts.

## Information about the automatic belt retractor

The safety belts are equipped with an automatic belt retractor. This automatic retractor allows the safety belt to be pulled all the way out when the belt is pulled slowly. However, the automatic retractor locks during sudden braking maneuvers. It also locks the belts when accelerating, driving uphill, and driving around curves.

## Information about the belt force limiter

Safety belts with belt force limiters reduce the force placed on the body by the safety belts during a collision.

## Information about the belt retractor

After unfastening the safety belt, the electric motor in the reversible belt tensioner will roll the belt up.

## Information about the belt tensioner

### Reversible safety belt tensioning

Safety belts may be tightened with reversible belt tensioners when you start driving and in certain driving situations. If the safety belt is too loose, it will be tightened so that the belt will rest closer to the body.

### Non-reversible (pyrotechnic) safety belt tensioning

In some collisions, pyrotechnic belt tensioners may secure the safety belts so that they cannot loosen. This reduces forward movement of the persons in the vehicle. Smoke may be released when pyrotechnic belt tensioners deploy. This is not a sign of a vehicle fire. ▸

**WARNING**

The pyrotechnic system can only provide protection during one collision. If the pyrotechnic belt tensioners deploy, the pretensioning system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

# Airbag system

## Safety information about the airbag system

**WARNING**

- If you have not fastened your safety belt, you are in an incorrect seating position, or you are too close to the airbag system, the airbag system will not be able to protect you. This increases the risk of serious injuries or death. Make sure that each person in the vehicle has their safety belt fastened correctly and is sitting in a correct seating position ⇨ *page 59*. This is necessary regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not.
- If you are transporting children in the vehicle, read the information and follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 73*.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel, over the center armrest, out of the window, or on the seat surfaces. To help ensure that the airbag system can deploy correctly, never bend forward or lean on the door, over the center armrest, or on the side window. Otherwise, serious injuries or death can occur if the airbags deploy.
- People, animals, or objects between the vehicle occupants and the airbag system can interfere with the correct deployment of the airbag or can be propelled through the vehicle interior, increasing the risk of serious injuries or death. Make sure that nothing is located between the vehicle occupants and the airbag system. Do not secure or transport any objects within the deployment zone of the airbag systems, especially on the steering wheel, on the instrument panel, on the doors, on the windows, on the center armrest, or in the footwell.
- Never put stickers on the airbag system covers or cover them with any objects.
- Only lightweight clothing should be hung from the garment hooks in the vehicle. Do not use clothes hangers to hang clothing. The pockets of the clothing must not contain any heavy, breakable, or sharp-edged objects. This could impair the effectiveness of the side curtain airbags.
- You must not use seat or protective covers that are not specifically approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags. Since the side airbags deploy from the seat backrest, such covers could impair the protective function of the side airbags.
- Damage to the original seat covers in the airbag deployment area must always be repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Airbag system components are installed at various locations in your vehicle. Incorrect work or repairs on the vehicle could damage the airbag system components or impair their functionality. This may prevent the airbags from deploying or cause them to deploy incorrectly in the event of an accident, which increases the risk of serious injuries or death. Only have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility make repairs or modifications to a vehicle.
- The airbag system can only provide protection during one collision. If there is another collision, the airbag system will not deploy again. If the airbag system has deployed, have it replaced immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Fine dust may appear if the airbags deploy. This is completely normal and does not indicate a fire in the vehicle. The fine dust can irritate the skin and mucous membranes in the eyes and can cause difficulty breathing, particularly for individuals who have or have had asthma or other health issues that affect breathing. Exit the vehicle or open the windows or doors to get access to fresh air. ▶

– You must not use seat or protective covers that are not specifically approved for use on Audi seats with center airbags. The center armrest must be closed while driving. Otherwise, the protective function of the front center airbag will be significantly impaired because it deploys from the driver's seat backrest.
– As the driver, make sure that you and all other passengers do not hold any connected devices, such as smartphones or controllers, in front of the body or head when the airbag system is active.

## Overview of safety system displays

The indicator light in the instrument cluster monitors the safety systems such as the airbags (including the control modules, sensors, and wiring) and the belt tensioners. It turns on when you turn on the vehicle and turns off after several seconds.

If the indicator light does not turn on when the vehicle is turned on, does not turn off after several seconds, or turns on or flashes while driving, there may be a malfunction in one of the safety systems. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**WARNING**

Have the malfunction in the safety systems inspected immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk that the systems may not activate during an accident, which increases the risk of serious injury or death.

## Overview of the airbags

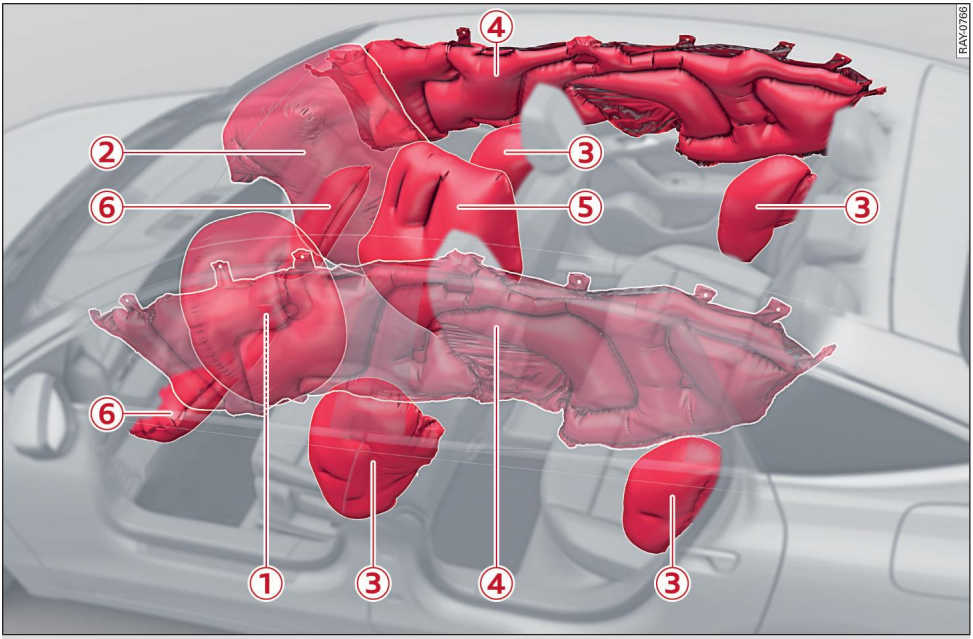



**Fig. 45** Airbag overview image (deployment area/deployed airbags)

The locations of the airbags are labeled with "AIRBAG". The following airbags are installed in your vehicle:

① Driver's airbag
② Front passenger's airbag

③ Front side airbags and rear, if applicable
④ Head curtain airbag with ejection mitigation
⑤ Front center airbag, if applicable
⑥ Knee airbags

Airbags offer the best possible protection in your vehicle during an accident when they are used together with safety belts that are fastened correctly, and when vehicle occupants are sitting in a correct seating position. Airbags are a supplementary restraint system and do not replace safety belts. There is the possibility that airbag deployment can cause injuries.

## Functionality of the airbags

Airbags may deploy during front impact, side impact, or rollover accidents.

The deployment range for the airbag system cannot be defined for every situation, since the circumstances surrounding accidents can vary widely. Factors that play an important role include the condition of the object that the vehicle hits (hard or soft), the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. The deciding factor for the deployment of the airbag system is the deceleration that occurs during an accident. Sensors in the vehicle are designed to detect the severity of an accident in conjunction with the control module, and to provide a targeted and timely deployment of the restraint system. If the vehicle deceleration that is measured during an accident is below the specified reference values in the control module, then the airbags will not deploy, even though the vehicle may be severely damaged from the accident. In these cases, the vehicle occupants will be protected by the safety belts if they are fastened and worn correctly.

The deployment of the front passenger's airbag will depend on the occupancy of the seat ⇨ *page 71*.

Each deployed airbag is filled with gas. When this occurs, the airbag covers open and the airbags unfold with great force into the deployment zone within milliseconds. Inflated airbags reduce the movement of persons in the vehicle who are wearing safety belts in the direction of the impact and thus help to reduce the risk of injury. They can help to protect the head, upper body, and lap, for example. However, there is the possibility that airbag deployment can cause injuries.

The side curtain airbags in your vehicle have ejection mitigation functions. This reduces the risk of being ejected from the vehicle interior during an accident, especially in the event of a vehicle rollover.

The airbag system works when the vehicle is turned on.

If you or other passengers in the vehicle have physical limitations that prevent sitting in a correct position, modifications to the vehicle may be necessary. For more information, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, or call Audi customer support at 1-800-822-2834.

## Information about the Advanced Airbag System

**Fig. 46** Headliner: indicator light to display the status of the front passenger's airbag

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the requirements of the United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. According to these requirements, the front Advanced Airbag System on the front passenger's side has been certified for "suppression" for infants approximately 12 months old and younger, and for "low risk deployment" for children aged 3 to 6 years old (as defined in the standard). ▶

The Advanced Airbag System will activate or deactivate the front passenger's airbag based on the occupancy of the seat.

### Components

The Advanced Airbag System consists of the following components:

– Front airbags in the steering wheel and in the instrument panel on the front passenger's side: these can protect persons in the front seats during a collision
– Passenger occupant detection sensor in the front passenger's seat: this detects if the front passenger's seat is occupied (for example, by a person or a small child in a child restraint system)
– Seat position sensors on the front seats: these determine the distance between the seat and the steering wheel or instrument panel
– Sensors in the front safety belt latch: these detect if the safety belts are fastened
– PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON indicator light in the headliner: this indicates if the front passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated
– Indicator light in the instrument cluster: this monitors the function of the Advanced Airbag System components to ensure they are functioning correctly

### How the components function together

If the front passenger's airbag is activated, the PASSENGER AIR BAG ON indicator light will turn on. If the front passenger's airbag is deactivated, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator light will turn on.

The deployment force of the front airbags adapts based on safety belt usage and the distance between the seat and the steering wheel/instrument panel. For example, if a person adjusts their seat as far forward as possible, then the function and deployment of the airbags and the safety belts will be adjusted accordingly in order to reduce the risk of injury. Comparable adjustments are also made in the rear seat area.

### Meaning of PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON indicator light

When drive ready mode is turned on, the system detects if the front passenger's seat is occupied. PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON will turn on for several seconds during this process. Then it will indicate if the front passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated.

– PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF: the front passenger's airbag is deactivated and will not deploy in the event of an accident.
– PASSENGER AIR BAG ON: the front passenger's airbag is activated and could deploy in the event of an accident.

When the vehicle is turned on, the system continually checks if the front passenger's seat is occupied. In some situations, this may cause the status of the front passenger’s airbag to change while driving. If the status changes, PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON will flash for several seconds and will then display the updated status of the front passenger's airbag.

Always make sure the indicator light corresponds to the occupancy of the front passenger's seat.

– **An adult or individual of similar size in the front passenger's seat:** the front passenger's airbag must be activated, meaning PASSENGER AIR BAG ON must turn on for a certain period of time and then turn off.
– **An individual of smaller size (for example, an adolescent or small adult) in the front passenger's seat:** the front passenger's airbag must be activated, i.e. PASSENGER AIR BAG ON must turn on for a specific period of time and then go out.
– **Child in a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat:** the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated, so PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF must remain on.
– **Front passenger's seat not occupied:** the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated, so PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF must remain on. ▶

**WARNING**

– An adult or a person with a small stature (such as a young person or small adult) seated on the front passenger's seat will not be protected by the passenger's airbag in the event of a collision if the passenger's airbag is deactivated. This increases the risk of injury and death. When the vehicle is in motion, always make sure that PASSENGER AIR BAG ON turns on for a certain period of time and then turns off. If PASSENGER AIR BAG ON does not turn on, make sure the front passenger is sitting correctly in the seat ⇨ *page 59* and that there is nothing covering the front passenger's seat (such as blankets or pillows). If PASSENGER AIR BAG ON still does not turn on, the front passenger's seat must not be used. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the airbag system inspected.
– A child in a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat - especially in a rear-facing child restraint system - can receive a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag deploys, which increases the risk of serious injury or death. Always secure child restraint systems on the rear seats. If special circumstances require the use of a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, always make sure that PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF remains on while driving. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF does not turn on, remove the rear-facing child restraint system and install it again according to the child restraint system manufacturer instructions. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF still does not turn on, the front passenger's seat must not be used. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the airbag system inspected.
– Objects on the front passenger's seat or damage to the front passenger's seat may cause the front passenger seat occupant detection to malfunction. The system may then incorrectly detect if the front passenger's seat is occupied. As a result, it could deploy the front passenger's airbag incorrectly or fail to deploy it, which increases the risk of serious injury or death. Do not transport any objects on or under the front passenger's seat.
– Seat covers or protective covers may prevent the Advanced Airbag System from correctly detecting child restraint systems or persons in the front passenger's seat. You must not use seat covers or protective covers on the front passenger's seat that are not specifically approved for use on Audi seats with an Advanced Airbag System.

# Child restraint systems

## Safety information about child restraint systems

When installing and using child restraint systems, follow the information in the Owner's Manual, the applicable state and federal regulations, and the manufacturer instructions for the child restraint system.

You can also obtain useful and current information from the following sources:

**U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration**
http://www.nhtsa.gov
http://www.safercar.gov

**National SAFE KIDS Campaign**
http://www.safekids.org

**SafetyBeltSafe U.S.A.**
http://www.carseat.org

**Transport Canada Information Centre**
http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety

**Audi Customer Experience Center**
https://www.audiusa.com/help/contact-us
https://www.audi.ca/ca/web/en/models/layer/contact.html

**WARNING**

To reduce the risk of serious injuries or death, children must always be secured in the vehicle with a child restraint system that is ▶

appropriate for their body size, weight, and age.

– Children ages 12 and under must be transported using the appropriate child restraint system. Note differences in regulations between states and countries.
– Child restraint systems secured incorrectly in the vehicle may cause serious injuries or death in the event of an accident. Always secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer instructions.
– Children or babies must not under any circumstances be held on the lap of the driver or other passengers while driving.
– Do not secure more than one child in a child restraint system.
– Never allow a child to sit in a child restraint system unsupervised.
– Never allow children to ride unsecured in the vehicle or to stand or kneel on the seats while driving. In the event of an accident, a child could be propelled through the vehicle. This can result in serious injuries or death to the child and passengers.
– If children sit in an incorrect seating position while driving, they have a higher risk of injury during a sudden braking maneuver or accident. This especially applies to children in the front passenger's seat or children who have their head near the side airbag deployment area, if the airbag system is deployed during an accident. This incorrect seating position can cause serious injuries or death.
– Make sure there is enough space in front of the child in the child restraint system. If necessary, adjust the angle and lengthwise position of the front seat that is in front of the child restraint system.
– The rear side of a forward-facing child restraint system should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat. If the head restraints make it difficult to install a child restraint system, adjust or remove the head restraints if necessary. Reinstall the head restraints immediately once the child restraint system has been removed.
– Always make sure that the backrest on the seat where the child restraint system is installed is securely locked in place and cannot move forward. Otherwise, the backrest where the child restraint system is secured could move forward in the event of an accident or other emergency situation.
– NEVER use a rear-facing child restraint system on a seat with an ACTIVATED FRONT AIRBAG; this could cause DEATH or SERIOUS INJURIES to a CHILD.
  – Always secure child restraint systems on the rear seats. If exceptional circumstances require the child restraint system to be placed on the front passenger's seat, then the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated. Always make sure that PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF remains on while driving. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF does not turn on, remove the child restraint system and install it again according to the child restraint system manufacturer instructions. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF still does not turn on, the front passenger's seat must not be used. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the airbag system inspected.
– If you must use a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far back as possible so that it is as far as possible from the front passenger's airbag. Make sure the adjustment range is clear when doing this. A child in a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat can receive a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag deploys, which increases the risk of serious injury or death.
– Replace the child restraint system after an accident because there could be damage that is not visible.
– Even if a child is not sitting in the child restraint system, the child restraint system must be secured. An unsecured child restraint system may be thrown through the vehicle interior during sudden braking maneuvers or an accident.

## Information about correct seating positions for children

Always secure children in a child restraint system designed for the body size, weight, and age of the child.

You can secure child restraint systems in your vehicle using the lower LATCH anchors or the safety belts. You can also secure child restraint systems to the top tether anchor. Depending on the child restraint system, it may also be necessary to secure it to the top tether anchor. In Canada, securing forward-facing child restraint systems to the top tether anchors is required by law.

### Always transport children in the rear seats

Accident statistics show that children that are secured correctly in the rear seats are safer than in front seats. Always transport children in suitable child restraint systems secured on the rear seats.

### In exceptional circumstances: transporting children in the front passenger's seat

If exceptional circumstances require the child restraint system to be placed on the front passenger's seat, then the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated. Please note the important information for this ⇨ *page 71, Information about the Advanced Airbag System*. If you must secure a forward-facing child restraint system, move the front passenger's seat as far back as possible so that it is as far as possible from the front passenger's airbag. Make sure the adjustment range is clear when doing this.

### Only switch to a larger child restraint system when absolutely necessary

Switch to a larger child restraint system only when absolutely necessary. Secure your child using a safety belt without a child restraint system only if all of the following statements are true:

– The child is large enough to sit upright in the seat
– The child is able to sit with their back resting completely on the seat backrest
– The child is able to sit with their knees angled over the edge of the seat surface
– The child is able to sit with both of their feet completely touching the floor in the footwell
– The lap portion of the safety belt lies flat and securely over the hip area and never over the stomach
– The shoulder portion of the safety belt lies flat and securely over the center of the shoulder and the chest, and never under the arm, behind the back, or over the neck or face.
– The child is able to maintain this seating position throughout the entire trip

Read and follow the important information and warnings regarding the correct use of safety belts ⇨ *page 65*.

### Information about child restraint systems

– Child restraint systems can also be secured to seats with side airbags. In the event of an accident, children can also be protected by the side airbags if the child is correctly secured in a suitable child restraint system that is attached correctly.
– The lower LATCH anchors as well as the safety belt may be required to correctly install some child restraint systems. Using both at the same time is permitted, provided that the fastening systems or safety belts do not impair those in an adjacent seating position.
– All child restraint systems are constructed so that they can be secured using the lap safety belt in the vehicle.
– Child restraint systems with a load leg can only be secured to the outer rear seats and to the front passenger's seat.

## Securing child restraint systems to the lower LATCH anchors

**Fig. 47** Rear bench seat: lower LATCH anchors

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 73*.

In the United States and Canada, child restraint systems can be secured without safety belts using the LATCH system. LATCH stands for Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children. In Canada, similar systems are called UCRA, LUAS, or UAS.

The lower LATCH anchors in your vehicle are located on the outer seats of the rear bench seat, between the seat surface and the backrest. These seating locations each have two lower LATCH anchors that can be used to secure a LATCH child restraint system. Marking points with a symbol are located under the covers for the lower LATCH anchors. You can locate the LATCH anchors using the marking points.

The LATCH anchors are designed for a total weight (child and child restraint system combined) up to 65 lbs (29 kg). If the total weight is greater than this, the child restraint system must be secured with the vehicle safety belt.

- Activate the child safety lock.
- Open the covers on both lower LATCH anchors.
- If you secure a child restraint system to the rear seat, secure any unused safety belts that are within reach of the child ⇨ ⚠ *in Securing child restraint systems with a safety belt on page 77*.
- Secure the child restraint system according to its manufacturer's instructions.
- Pull on the child restraint system to check if both sides are engaged correctly in the LATCH anchors.
- If possible, also secure the child restraint system to the respective top tether anchor on the seat ⇨ *page 77*.

**⚠ WARNING**

The LATCH anchors in the vehicle are only designed for child restraint systems with the LATCH system. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, never secure other child restraint systems, belts, or objects to the anchors.

## Securing child restraint systems with a safety belt

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 73*. The front passenger's seat is a dangerous location for a child, even with an Advanced Airbag System. If exceptional circumstances require the child restraint system to be placed on the front passenger's seat, then the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated. Please note the important information for this ⇨ *page 75, Information about correct seating positions for children* and ⇨ *page 71, Information about the Advanced Airbag System*.

### Securing child restraint systems

- Activate the child safety lock ⇨ *page 34*.
- If you secure a child restraint system to the rear seat, secure any unused safety belts that are within reach of the child ⇨ ⚠, ⇨ *page 78*.
- If you secure a child restraint system to the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's seat to the highest position.
- Secure the child restraint system according to its manufacturer's instructions.
- If necessary, activate the belt retractor lock ⇨ *page 76, Activating the belt retractor lock*.
- If the child restraint system is secured on the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's seat backrest until it rests flat against the child restraint system. Also make sure that the upper safety belt fixture is behind the child restraint system.
- If you secure a child restraint system on the rear seat, also secure it to the correct top tether anchor if possible ⇨ *page 77*.

### Activating the belt retractor lock

If you secure a child restraint system using the vehicle safety belt, you must activate the belt retractor lock. Follow the child restraint system manufacturer instructions.

The belt retractor lock prevents the safety belt from becoming loose while driving, which could result in the child restraint system no longer being adequately secured.

- Secure the child restraint system according to its manufacturer's instructions. While doing so, ▶

pull out the safety belt. Insert the safety belt into the belt latch that belongs to that seat until it audibly locks.

- Pull the upper belt out completely and then allow it to retract. You will hear a clicking sound while the belt is retracting. It will not be possible to pull the safety belt out any farther.
- Push the child restraint system into the seat and allow the belt to retract more.
- Make sure that the child restraint system cannot move more than 1 inch (2.5 cm).

### Deactivating the belt retractor lock

- Unbuckle the safety belt from the belt latch.
- Remove the child restraint system according to the manufacturer instructions.
- Allow the safety belt to retract completely. The belt retractor lock is deactivated.

**WARNING**

– A safety belt that is not locked by the belt retractor lock or a locking device cannot secure a child restraint system while driving or in the event of an accident, which increases the risk of death. Always make sure the belt retractor lock on the safety belt is activated if the child restraint system manufacturer instructions require it.
– To reduce the risk of death, never place a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat when the front passenger's airbag is activated.
– For the child restraint system to offer the maximum protection, it is especially important to route the vehicle safety belt correctly. Always follow the instructions from the child restraint system manufacturer for routing the safety belt correctly. Incorrectly fastened safety belts can cause injuries, even during minor accidents.

## Additionally securing a child restraint system to the top tether anchor

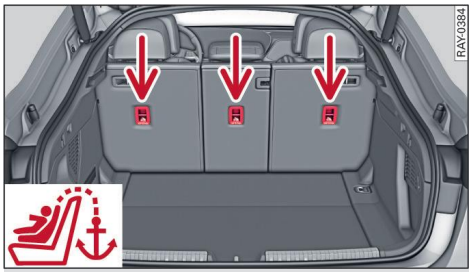



**Fig. 48** ① Rear backrest: top tether anchors to secure a child restraint system with an upper strap

**Fig. 49** Rear backrest: securing the upper strap to the top tether anchor

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 73*.

The top tether anchors are used to additionally secure a child restraint system using an upper strap. The anchors can be found in the following locations in the vehicle:

- Behind each seat of the rear bench seat.

Make sure that the combined weight of the child restraint system together with the child does not exceed 65 lbs (29 kg).

- Move the head restraint behind the child restraint system upward.
- Secure the child restraint system according to its manufacturer's instructions.
- Guide the upper strap on the child restraint system under the head restraint or along both sides of it and toward the rear (depending on the child restraint system model).
- Fasten the belt to the top tether anchor ⇨ *fig. 49*. While doing this, make sure the belt is not twisted and is not running over any sharp edges.

- Pull the belt tightly so that the child restraint system is against the top of the seat backrest.
- If necessary, move the head restraint behind the child restraint system downward.

**WARNING**

The top tether anchors in the vehicle are only designed for child restraint systems equipped with an upper strap. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, never secure other child restraint systems, belts, or objects to the anchors.

### Securing unused safety belts on the rear bench seat

**Fig. 50** Rear bench seat: securing unused safety belts

If a child restraint system is used on the rear bench seat, the child must not be able to reach any safety belts that are not being used. Secure safety belts that are within reach of the child.

- If you secure a child restraint system to the LATCH anchors, fasten the safety belt on the seat where the child restraint system is installed using the seat's safety belt latch.
- If you secure a child restraint system to one of the outer seats, fasten the safety belt for the center seat in its latch.
- Activate the belt retractor lock on the fastened safety belts. To do this, pull the upper belt out completely and then allow it to retract. You will hear a clicking sound while the belt is retracting. It will not be possible to pull the safety belt out any farther.
- Make sure the fastened safety belt does not block access to the LATCH anchors. Otherwise, it may not be possible to secure the child restraint system to the LATCH anchors correctly.

**WARNING**

A child in a child restraint system could play with the unused safety belts and then become entangled in them, which increases the risk of death. Always secure unused safety belts so that they are not within reach of children in child restraint systems.

# Storage and convenience

## Storage and compartments

### Safety information about the compartments and storage areas in the vehicle interior

Depending on vehicle equipment, there are a variety of storage areas, compartments, and retainers, such as the glove compartment, for safely storing and securing objects.

**WARNING**

- To reduce the risk of injury, make sure all storage compartments are always closed while driving.
- Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.
- Only use the storage compartments in the door trim panels to store small objects that will not protrude out of the compartment and impair the function of the side airbags.
- Only lightweight clothing should be hung from the garment hooks in the vehicle. Do not use clothes hangers to hang clothing. The pockets of the clothing must not contain any heavy, breakable, or sharp-edged objects. This could impair the effectiveness of the side curtain airbags.
- Make sure your view toward the rear is not blocked, for example by hanging clothing or objects in the vehicle.

## Operating the glove compartment

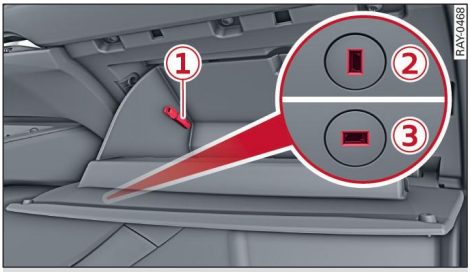



**Fig. 51** Glove compartment: glove compartment key

The glove compartment can be used to store items securely.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the glove compartment can be locked and unlocked.

- Open the glove compartment.
- Remove the glove compartment key (1) from the bracket inside the glove compartment.
- To lock the glove compartment, turn the glove compartment key to the lock position (2).
- To unlock the glove compartment, turn the glove compartment key to the unlock position (3).

# Information about power sources

## Safety information about power sources

When the vehicle is turned on, several power sources for external devices are available, depending on the vehicle equipment.

To prevent the vehicle battery from discharging, the energy management turns off the power sources that are not needed.

**WARNING**

– To reduce the risk of fatal injuries, store all devices securely when driving so that they are not thrown around inside the vehicle when braking or in the event of an accident.
– Always protect power sources, such as sockets and USB connections, from liquids. There is risk of fatal injury due to electric shock.
– Incorrect usage of power sources, such as sockets or USB connections in the vehicle, can result in serious injuries or fires. To reduce the risk of fatal injury, never leave children unattended in the vehicle with the vehicle key.

**Note**

– Read the operating instructions for connected devices. There is a risk of damage to the devices if used incorrectly.
– Do not connect any vehicle battery chargers to the power sources. The vehicle's electrical system could be damaged.
– To reduce the risk of damaging connectors, use caution when disconnecting them from the sockets and USB connections.

## Information about the 12 volt socket

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 79*.

The 12 volt sockets are located in the front center console and on the luggage compartment side trim panel. They are labeled with the 12V symbol.

You can connect electrical devices to the 12 volt sockets. The power usage from the sockets must not exceed a total of 120 W. Do not connect multiple devices to the sockets in the vehicle at the same time.

Do not connect any other devices to the sockets when using the compressor provided by the factory. The power consumption in the sockets may be temporarily exceeded when using the compressor.

## Information about the USB connections

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 79*.

The USB charging connections are located in the front center console and in the rear seat area.

Depending on the vehicle, the USB connections may be labeled with one of the following symbols: ⭠ or ⭠.

You can charge mobile devices using the USB connections. To achieve an optimal charging capacity, use a certified USB-C cable or a certified adapter.

If your vehicle is equipped with USB ports with increased charging capacity, then use a certified USB-C cable with a charging capacity of 60 W or 100 W and E-marker chip.

## Information about the cup holders

The cup holders are located in the front center console and in the rear center armrest.

▸ To use the cup holders in the rear center armrest, fold the center armrest down.

**WARNING**

– Do not put any hot beverages in the cup holder while the vehicle is moving. Hot beverages could spill, which increases the risk of injury.
– Do not use any breakable beverage containers (for example, made out of glass or porcelain). They can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of injury.

**Note**

Only put cups that can be sealed in the cup holders. Otherwise, the liquid inside could spill and cause damage to vehicle equipment.

## Luggage compartment

### Safety information about the luggage compartment

**WARNING**

– The luggage compartment cover is not a surface for storing objects. Objects placed on the cover increase the risk of injury to all vehicle occupants during sudden driving or braking maneuvers or in the event of a collision.
– Close the luggage compartment cover before each drive if the load allows it. The luggage compartment cover must always be securely fastened when in use to reduce the risk of an accident.
– The luggage compartment cover must always be securely fastened when in use to reduce the risk of an accident.
– Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Always stow all luggage and objects securely in the luggage compartment and secure them using the tie-downs. Use suitable non-elastic tensioning bands or straps for heavy objects. Securing luggage or objects with unsuitable or damaged tensioning bands or straps can increase the risk of injury during braking maneuvers or accidents.
– When transporting heavy objects, the vehicle characteristics will change due to the shift in the center of gravity, which increases the risk of an accident. Evenly distribute the cargo and put heavy objects as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment. You may need to adapt your driving style and speed to the current conditions.
– Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating and Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. Adjust the tire pressure to the load.
– Never secure a child restraint system to the tie-downs.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended, especially if the luggage compartment lid is open. Children could enter the luggage compartment and close the luggage compartment lid from the inside. This increases the risk of death, since the children would be locked inside and may not be able to escape by themselves.
– Do not allow children to play in or on the vehicle. Close and lock the luggage compartment lid as well as all other doors when you leave the vehicle.
– Never transport persons in the luggage compartment. Each person in the vehicle ▸

must be secured correctly in the vehicle using the safety belts ⇨ *page 65*.
– Be careful when releasing the backrest and folding it forward. To reduce the risk of being pinched, pay attention and check when folding backrests forward.
– Always pull forward on the backrest to make sure it is correctly locked in place. Otherwise objects from the luggage compartment can slide forward during sudden braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of injury.
– Always pull forward on the backrest to make sure it is correctly locked in place. Otherwise the optimal protection of the safety belt on the center seat cannot be guaranteed, which increases the risk of injury.
– If the safety belt becomes caught when folding the backrest back, then fold the backrest forward again and release the safety belt. Hold the safety belt with one hand and fold the backrest back carefully.
– For stability reasons, the bag hooks can hold a maximum weight of 6.6 lbs (3 kg). Heavier objects are not adequately secured. There is risk of personal injury.

**Note**

– To reduce the risk of damage, move the rear head restraints down before folding the rear backrests forward.
– Make sure that the outer safety belts are not being pinched when folding back the backrest, because this could damage them.
– To reduce the risk of damage, remove any items from the rear bench seat before folding the rear backrests forward.
– If you move the front seat back when the rear seat backrest is folded forward, you could damage the head restraints on the rear seat.
– Make sure that the heating grid strips for the rear window defogger are not damaged by abrasive objects.

## Information about the rigid luggage compartment cover

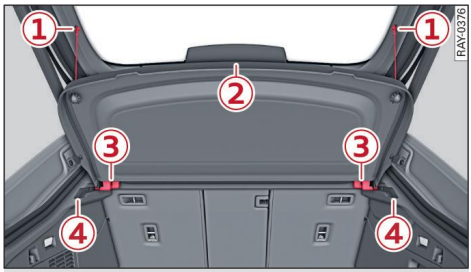



**Fig. 52** Luggage compartment: rigid luggage compartment cover

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 80*.

### Removing and installing the rigid luggage compartment cover

▸ To remove the luggage compartment cover, unhook the straps ① from the luggage compartment lid.
▸ Hold the center of the luggage compartment cover ② and pull it toward the rear of the vehicle, out of the guides ④.
▸ To install the luggage compartment cover, position the two pins on each side ③ into the guides ④.
▸ Push the luggage compartment cover ② all the way forward.
▸ Hook the straps ① into the luggage compartment lid.

## Folding the outer backrest forward and back

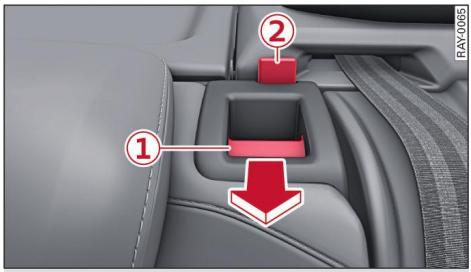



**Fig. 53** Outer backrest: release lever and latching indicator with red marking

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 80*. ▶

- To fold the backrest forward, pull the release lever (1) on the respective side of the vehicle in the direction of the arrow.
- After transport, fold the backrest up again until it latches and the red marking (2) is no longer visible.

## Folding the center backrest forward and back

**Fig. 54** Center backrest: recess in the center backrest

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 80*.

- To fold the center backrest forward, reach into the recess (1) from below and press the release handle upward.
- After using the center backrest, fold it back until it locks into place.

## Using tie-downs to secure cargo

**Fig. 55** Luggage compartment: location of the tie-downs

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 80*.

### Tie-downs

There are tie-downs at the front and rear of the luggage compartment (1) which can be used to secure luggage items and other objects.

- Fold the clip for the tie-downs (1) upward.

## Using the cargo floor in the luggage compartment

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 80*.

### Folding the cargo floor up or down

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the cargo floor can be folded up or down.

- Lift the cargo floor by the handle to fold it up.
- Pull the cargo floor by the loop toward the back of the vehicle to fold it down.

### Removing or installing the cargo floor

Depending on vehicle equipment, the cargo floor can be removed from the vehicle.

- To remove the cargo floor, pull the entire cargo floor by the loop toward the back of the vehicle.
- To install the cargo floor, lay the cargo floor into the guide and then slide it toward the backrest all the way until it stops.

# Roof rack

## Information about the roof rack

**Fig. 56** Roof: mounting points

These roof racks are the basis for a complete roof rack system. Only use roof racks that are suitable for your vehicle. Audi recommends roof racks and attachments from the Audi Genuine Accessories program.

If luggage or cargo is to be carried on the roof, you must observe the following:

- Only mount the roof rack at the specified locations on the vehicle.
- Mount the roof rack according to the installation instructions for that specific roof rack system.

Note the Gross Axle Weight Rating, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, and permissible roof load of your vehicle. The roof load is the total of the weight of the roof rack, the attachments, and the cargo you are carrying. However, you must also note the permitted load of the roof rack carrier system being used.

**WARNING**

– Follow the installation instructions provided with the roof rack system. If you do not secure the roof rack system and objects on the roof correctly, they could come loose from the vehicle and cause an accident.
– The risk of an accident increases when using a roof rack system, because it changes the driving characteristics by shifting the center of gravity and/or the increasing the surface area exposed to wind. You may need to adapt your driving style and speed to the current conditions.

**Note**

Make sure the luggage compartment lid does not hit the cargo on the roof rack when you open it.

**For the sake of the environment**

Energy usage will increase because of the increased wind resistance. Remove the roof rack when you are no longer using it.

# Warm and cold

## Climate control system

### Introduction

Your vehicle has a three zone deluxe automatic climate control system where the temperature, air distribution, and amount of air can be adjusted separately on the left and right front sides, and the temperature can be adjusted in the rear. The amount of air can be adjusted for the entire vehicle from the front seats.

The climate control system automatically maintains the set temperature. In all heating mode functions except defrost, the blower only switches to a higher level once the heater has reached a sufficient temperature.

#### Efficient operation

The climate control system warms, cools, dehumidifies, and filters the air in the vehicle interior.

– The climate control system is most effective when the windows and, depending on vehicle equipment, the roof are kept closed.
– To prevent interference with the heating or cooling output and to prevent the windows from fogging over, keep the air intake in front of the windshield free of ice, snow, and leaves.
– Ventilate the vehicle interior if there is a build-up of heat, for example by briefly opening all the windows. This can speed up the cooling process.

#### Condensation during operation

When the climate control system is running, condensation can drip from the vehicle underbody and create puddles of water on the ground. This is a normal operating condition and not a sign of a leak.

#### Energy management intervention

Some functions may be turned off temporarily by the energy management system, for example if the battery charge level is very low. The function will turn on again automatically once the energy balance is restored.

### Overview of climate control system displays

**Fig. 57** Central display: deluxe climate control system control bar

You can adjust all climate control system settings in the central display. Only certain functions are available for the rear. ▶

### Adjusting the climate control system control bar

You can replace some of the climate control functions in the lower control bar (1) with climate control functions from the climate control menu based on your personal preferences.

- Press and hold the one of the buttons (1) for several seconds. This will display the customizable functions and the selected functions in the control bar.
- Press the button for the customizable function that should be programmed to the button.
- Press **OK** to confirm the selection.

### Control panel in rear

Using the control panel, you can adjust the temperature and, depending on vehicle equipment, the seat heating for the rear.

## Adjusting the climate control system settings

In the central display, the climate control functions are located in the lower control bar and in the climate control menu. Press Menu in the climate control menu bar to open the climate control menu.

Press the buttons to turn the functions on or off. A bar on the button illuminates when the function is turned on.

### Temperature

By pressing - / + in the central display, you can adjust the temperature in a range from 60°F (+16°C) to 84°F (+28°C). Outside of this range, **LO** or **HI** will appear in the display. In both settings, the climate control runs constantly at the maximum cooling or heating level.

### AUTO **Automatic mode**

Automatic mode regulates the amount of air and the air distribution automatically so that the set temperature is reached is quickly as possible.

To exit this mode, press AUTO.

### A/C **Cooling mode**

Cooling mode is automatically regulated if you activate this function.

The cooling mode only functions with the blower turned on. The air is not cooled and humidity is not reduced when cooling mode is turned off. This can cause fog on the windows. At low outside temperatures, the cooling system will turn off automatically. The button remains illuminated.

### A/C MAX **Maximum cooling mode**

If you activate this function, cooling mode will run at maximum cooling output and maximum blower speed. To reduce unnecessary energy usage, only use this function briefly. In unfavorable weather conditions, this function may increase the fogging on the windows.

### **Blower**

By pressing - / +, you can manually adjust the volume of air generated by the blower to your preferred level. The blower setting should not be set too low in order to prevent the windows from fogging and to ensure a continuous exchange of air inside the vehicle. To regulate the climate control system blower automatically, press AUTO.

When the blower is running, the interior air filter will reduce particulate matter, the pollen concentration, and odors in the vehicle interior.

### **Recirculation mode**

Press to turn recirculation mode on or off manually.

In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior ⇨ ⚠.

The manual recirculation mode will automatically turn off one time between turning the vehicle on and turning it off if the possibility of fogging on the windows is detected. ▶

### Air distribution

You can select the air vents for airflow by pressing / / . To have the air distribution controlled automatically, press the AUTO button or deactivate all three functions. Pressing will direct air toward the windshield.

The air distribution that was selected manually on the driver's side will be used for the rear.

To help prevent the front side windows from fogging over, open the side air vents and angle them toward the side windows.

### SYNC **Synchronization**

When synchronization is turned on, the temperature and air distribution on the driver's side is applied to all seat positions.

### OFF **Turning off**

Press OFF to turn off the front and rear climate control system. Air supply from the outside is blocked.

To turn the climate control system on again, press any button in the central display or in the rear.

### Defrosting

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. Open the side air vents and angle them toward the side windows. The maximum amount of air flows from the air vents below the windshield. Recirculation mode turns off. The A/C cooling mode will turn on. The cooling system will turn on automatically depending on the outside temperature. Depending on vehicle equipment, the windshield defogger turns on automatically when outside temperatures are low. Depending on the outside temperature, you can turn on the windshield defogger manually by pressing .

### Rear window/mirror defogger

Press to turn the rear window defogger and exterior mirror heating on or off.

If you turn the function off, the exterior mirror heating will remain on until you turn off the vehicle.

When the vehicle is turned off: if the function was on and the vehicle is stationary for less than 10 minutes, then the function will be activated again automatically the next time the vehicle is turned on.

The rear window defogger will turn off automatically after 5 to 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

### Seat heating

The seat heating temperature can be set to various levels. Press once to turn on the highest level. Press again to decrease the temperature one level at a time. The seat heating is turned off if the button is not illuminated.

The seat heating will turn off if the seat is not occupied. If the seat is occupied again within ten minutes, the seat heating will reactivate automatically.

### Seat ventilation

The seat ventilation intensity can be set to various levels. Press once to turn on the highest level. Press again to decrease the intensity one level at a time. The seat ventilation is turned off if the button is not illuminated.

The seat ventilation will turn off if the seat is not occupied. If the seat is occupied again within ten minutes, the seat ventilation will reactivate automatically.

### Steering wheel heating

The steering wheel will be heated when the function is turned on.

You can also operate the steering wheel heating using the multifunction steering wheel.

### Warm hands

If this convenience function is turned on, the climate control system will increase the amount of heat coming from the instrument panel air vents. You can warm your hands in front of the air vents. The steering wheel heating will be activated, depending on vehicle equipment. The function turns off automatically after some time. ▶

This function is not available if there is not enough heat supply.

### Heat feet

If this convenience function is turned on, the climate control system will increase the heat supply coming from the footwell vents. The function turns off automatically after some time.

This function is not available if there is not enough heat supply.

### Cool feet

If this convenience function is turned on, the climate control system will direct cooler air into the footwells. The function turns off automatically after some time.

This function is not available if there is not enough cold air supply.

### Fresh air

When the convenience function is turned on, the climate control system will increase the amount of air and the proportion of air from the outside to improve the air quality inside the vehicle. Manual recirculation mode turns off. The function turns off automatically after some time.

**WARNING**

- Do not leave recirculation mode on for an extended period of time. This can cause the windows to fog, which increases the risk of an accident.
- Using recirculation mode for an extended period of time can cause the $CO_2$ concentration inside the vehicle to increase. This can have a negative effect on the well-being of vehicle occupants, which can increase the risk of an accident. Turn off recirculation mode or automatic recirculation and ventilate the vehicle at the first sign of unwellness.
- The vehicle is equipped with functions to automatically activate the seat heating. To reduce the risk of burns, individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature must make sure that the seat heating is off when starting the drive.
- When the seat heating is on, an alternating magnetic field is created. Interactions such as irritation of sensory organs or malfunctions of active medical implants (such as pacemakers, infusion pumps, or neurostimulators) are very unlikely. If you have a medical implant, seek medical advice from a specialist if you have any questions.
- Make sure others in the vehicle know how to use the seat heating safely.

**Note**

- To reduce the risk of damage to the seat heating elements, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy pressure on one area of the seat.
- Only use the seat heating when the seat surface is dry.
- Only put dry items on the seat surfaces.
- Do not spill liquids on the seat surfaces.
- Covering the seat surfaces can impair the function of the seat heating. Do not use protective seat covers and do not put items (such as jackets, blankets, or bags) on the seat surfaces when the seat heating is on.
- Make sure others in the vehicle know how to use the seat heating safely.

## Adjusting the air vents

Move the lever to adjust the direction of the airflow. You can adjust the amount of air flowing through the vents using the knob.

## Opening the climate control settings menu

▸ Select: Menu > ⚙.

In the climate control settings menu, you can turn certain functions on or off and adjust their settings. The settings depend on the country and vehicle equipment.

## Using climate control functions

### Seat temperature balance

In the climate control settings menu ⇨ *page 86*, you can direct the selected the level of the seat ▸

heating and seat ventilation to the seat surface or the backrest.

### Auto recirculation

If the function is turned on in the climate control settings menu (depending on vehicle equipment) ⇨ *page 86* and air pollution has been detected, recirculation mode will be controlled automatically ⇨ ⚠.

**WARNING**

Using recirculation mode for an extended period of time can cause the $CO_2$ concentration inside the vehicle to increase. This can have a negative effect on the well-being of vehicle occupants, which can increase the risk of an accident. Turn off recirculation mode or automatic recirculation and ventilate the vehicle at the first sign of unwellness.

## Climate control system messages

Malfunctions may trigger a message that might indicate the cause and possible solution. To display the messages again, open the notification center in the central display. Try to turn the climate control system on again later or after the vehicle is started again.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Information about the fluids in the climate control system

### Refrigerant in the A/C system

The sticker in the engine compartment provides information about the type and amount of refrigerant used in the vehicle's A/C system. The sticker is located in the front section of the engine compartment or at the front or back of the hood.

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | Warning: the A/C system must only be serviced by qualified technicians. |
| | Refrigerant type |
| | Refrigerant oil type |
| | Refer to the service information (only available to authorized Audi dealers or authorized Audi Service Facilities) |
| | The A/C system must only be serviced by qualified technicians. |
| | Flammable refrigerant |
| | Make sure all components are disposed of correctly and never install components in the vehicle that have been removed from old vehicles or taken from recycling. |

### Refrigerant oil in the A/C system

The sticker in the engine compartment provides information about the type and amount of refrigerant oil used in the vehicle's A/C system. For information about the amount of refrigerant oil used, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

### Climate control system evaporator

Never repair the climate control system evaporator with components from old vehicles or from recycling.

New replacement evaporators for portable A/C systems must be certified and labeled as such, so that they comply with the SAE standard J2842 HFO-1234yf and R744.

**WARNING**

The climate control system may only be serviced by qualified and certified technicians who have been trained according to the country-specific standards, for example SAE standards J2845 and J2911.

– Refrigerant is flammable. Keep the vehicle away from open flames, sparks, and other ▶

ignition sources to reduce the risk of serious injuries or death.
– The refrigerant is under pressure and can explode if heated, which increases the risk of serious injuries or death.
– The refrigerant can create toxic vapors when it comes in contact with hot surfaces. To reduce the risk of serious injuries or death, do not inhale these vapors.

# Driving

## Starting systems

### Introduction

The vehicle (ignition) and the drive system can be turned on separately. If only the vehicle is turned on, electronic systems such as the MMI will available. The vehicle can only be moved once the drive system is turned on. Depending on the model, the drive system refers to either the internal combustion engine or the electric drive system.

Requirement: the key must be in the vehicle. With the digital key, the activated digital key card must be located in the phone compartment, and the mobile device can also be there.

Brief noises are normal when starting and parking the vehicle and are no cause for concern.

### Turning the vehicle on or off

**Fig. 58** Center console: turning on the drive system

If you would like to only turn the vehicle on or off without turning on the drive system, follow these steps:

▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button without pressing the brake pedal.

#### Turning off the vehicle automatically

To prevent the vehicle battery from draining, the vehicle and possibly the exterior lighting may turn off automatically.

Requirements:
– The Start/Stop system must have stopped the engine.
– You must have left the vehicle for longer than 30 seconds.
– The vehicle is turned on.

Among other indicators, the system detects that you have left the vehicle based on the following factors:

– The driver's door has been opened.
– The driver's safety belt has been unfastened.
– The brake pedal is not being pressed.

The vehicle will also be turned off after 30 minutes or if you lock the vehicle from the outside.

### Vehicle key messages

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

**Vehicle starting system: malfunction! Please contact Service soon**

There is a malfunction in the vehicle starting system. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

**Remote control key: key not detected. Is the key still in the vehicle?**

The vehicle key was removed from the vehicle while the drive system was active. If the vehicle key is no longer in the vehicle, you will not be able to turn on the vehicle or the drive system after turning off the drive system. You also cannot lock the vehicle from the outside.

**Vehicle key: key not detected. Is there still a valid key in the vehicle?**

The vehicle key and the digital key were removed from the vehicle while the drive system was ▸

active. If the vehicle key and digital key are no longer in the vehicle, you cannot turn on the vehicle or the drive system after turning off the drive system. You also cannot lock the vehicle from the outside while the drive system is active.

**Remote control key: hold key at designated area and press start/stop button. See owner's manual**

The battery in the vehicle key may be drained or there may be a malfunction. To start the vehicle, you must also hold the vehicle key against the location shown .

If the malfunction remains, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

**Hold remote control key at designated area, or place digital key in phone compartment. See owner's manual**

The battery in the vehicle key may be drained or there may be a malfunction. To start the vehicle, you must also hold the vehicle key against the location shown  or place the digital key in the phone compartment.

If the malfunction remains, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

# Drive system

## Turning the drive system on or off

Requirement: the key must be in the vehicle. With the digital key, the activated digital key card must be located in the phone compartment, and the mobile device can also be there.

Brief noises are normal when starting and parking the vehicle and are no cause for concern.

### Turning on the drive system

- Press and hold the brake pedal.
- Press the START ENGINE STOP button in the center console. The drive system will turn on.

It may not be possible to start the vehicle in extremely low temperatures.

Power will be fully available once the engine is at operating temperature.

Equipment that uses a lot of electricity is turned off temporarily when you start the engine. If the engine does not start immediately, the starting procedure stops automatically after a short time. If this is the case, repeat the starting procedure after approximately 30 seconds.

### Turning off the drive system

- Bring the vehicle to a full stop.
- Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The drive system will turn off.

For up to 10 minutes after stopping the engine, the radiator fan may turn on again automatically or it may continue to run, even if the ignition is turned off.

### Turning off the drive system in an emergency

If necessary in an emergency, the engine can also be stopped while driving using the emergency off function. Depending on vehicle equipment, it may only be possible to restart the engine once the vehicle is stationary.

- Press the START ENGINE STOP button twice in a row or press it once and hold it.

**WARNING**

– To reduce the risk of asphyxiation, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.
– Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop and the “P” position is engaged. The full functionality of the brake booster and power steering may not be available. You would then need to use more force to steer and brake the vehicle. The fact that you cannot steer and brake as usual may increase the risk of accidents and serious injuries.
– Secure the vehicle against rolling before leaving the vehicle.

**Note**

- Avoid high engine speed, full throttle, and heavy engine load if the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. You could damage the engine.
- If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period of time, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is turned off and there is a risk of damaging the engine. For this reason, let the engine run at idle for approximately two minutes before shutting it off.

## Information about the drive system

### Information about the conventional and mild hybrid drive system

Vehicles with a conventional or mild hybrid drive system are powered by an internal combustion engine. It uses fuel to recover energy.

Vehicles with a mild hybrid drive system have additional battery technology. The vehicle will then automatically select the electric or hybrid drive system.

**WARNING**

Other road users may not be able to clearly hear electric vehicles when they are driving. This increases the risk of an accident, particularly when driving in areas with little traffic, when maneuvering, or when driving in reverse.

## Information about energy management

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent energy management system for distributing electricity. This significantly improves the starting ability and increases the vehicle battery life.

If you drive short distances frequently, the vehicle battery may not charge enough while driving. As a result, convenience functions for electrical equipment may be temporarily unavailable.

The vehicle battery will gradually drain if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time, or if electrical equipment is used when the engine is not running. To ensure that the vehicle can still be started, the electrical equipment will be limited or turned off.

## Using recuperation

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the vehicle is able to recover energy using recuperation. This converts the majority of the movement energy into electric energy, which is stored in the hybrid drive system battery. In addition to the engine braking effect from the internal combustion engine, the vehicle is braked by recuperation. Recuperation may activate when you take your foot off the accelerator pedal or press the brake pedal, depending on the selector position that is selected.

When you press the brake pedal, recuperation is used to brake the vehicle. The brakes will only be activated if necessary. Driving with a moderate style makes it possible to brake almost to a stop using only recuperation.

**WARNING**

In certain situations, recuperation may brake proactively. However, the recuperation braking effect is limited. Always be ready to brake to reduce the risk of an accident.

## Turning automatic recuperation on or off

Depending on the selected Audi drive select mode, you can turn automatic recuperation on or off in the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25*.

When the function is turned on, the recuperation braking effect will be adjusted proactively, for example to vehicles traveling ahead, depending on vehicle equipment.

If the function is turned off, then the vehicle will not be controlled proactively while coasting. Instead, it will be regulated based on the transmission selector position that is selected.

If the ESC is limited or turned off, automatic recuperation is not available and it will not brake the vehicle. ▶

If AUTO is displayed when there is a malfunction, the automatic recuperation functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

## Drive system messages

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

**Drive system: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle**

There is a malfunction in the drive system. The vehicle must not be operated anymore. Continuing to operate the vehicle may result in damage to the drive system. Park the vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible. Secure the vehicle against rolling before leaving the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**Drive system: malfunction! Please contact Service**

There is a malfunction in the drive system. The driving power may be limited. Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

**Drive system: malfunction! Limited vehicle performance. Please contact Service**

There is a malfunction in the drive system. The driving power is limited. Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

**Drive system: malfunction! Limited vehicle performance. No reverse gear. Please contact Service**

There is a malfunction in the drive system. The driving power is limited. You cannot engage the reverse gear. Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

**Drive system: warning! Performance temporarily limited. Please adapt driving style. See owner's manual**

The driving power is temporarily limited due to the outside temperature or the temperature of the drive system components. Adapt your driving style.

**Vehicle sound: malfunction! Pedestrians cannot hear vehicle. Please contact Service**

There is a malfunction in the vehicle sound function. Drive extremely carefully, since other road users may not be able to hear your electric vehicle. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Transmission selector positions and driving programs

## Information about transmission selector positions and driving programs

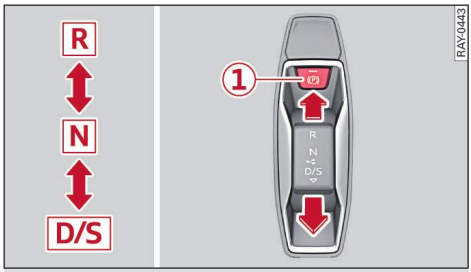



**Fig. 59** Center console: transmission selector

### Transmission selector positions

The positions are displayed on the selector in the center console.

– **P** (Park): parking
– **R** (Reverse): driving in reverse
– **N** (Neutral): idling
– **D** (Drive): driving forward

### Driving programs

Various driving programs can be selected when in the “D” position. These programs influence, for example, when the transmission shifts and how the accelerator pedal responds.

The selected driving program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

– **D** (Drive): normal driving mode
– **S** (Sport): sporty driving mode ▶

Audi recommends the “D” driving program for everyday driving.

**WARNING**

– Before you begin driving, check if the label for the desired position is illuminated on the selector.
– Secure the vehicle against rolling before leaving the vehicle.
– It is necessary to press the brake pedal to keep the vehicle stationary when the “D” or “R” position is selected, because drive power is still being transmitted, so the vehicle “creeps”.
– If the vehicle drives against an obstacle, such as a high curb, the creeping movement will be stopped and the vehicle might roll backward, which increases the risk of an accident. The creeping movement can be reactivated with the accelerator pedal or by changing the selector position or driving program.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, do not press the accelerator pedal when changing selector positions while the vehicle is stationary and the drive system is turned on.
– Never select the “R" position while driving. Doing so could cause an accident.
– The vehicle can roll even if it is turned off.

## Selecting a transmission selector position

### Selecting a transmission selector position

Requirement: the ignition must be turned on.

- Bring the vehicle to a full stop and press the brake pedal.
- To select the nearest position, move the selector forward or back until you feel the first pressure point.
- To skip a position (for example, to move from “D” directly to “R”), move the selector past the pressure point in the desired direction.
- If you shift back and forth between the “D” and “R” positions within one second, you do not need to press the brake pedal. This makes it possible to “rock free” the vehicle if it is stuck, for example.
- The position that is selected will illuminate on the selector.

### “P” (Park) selector position/parking brake

Requirement: the ignition must be turned on.

The parking lock secures the vehicle from rolling when the “P” position is selected. The parking lock is a mechanical locking mechanism in the transmission.

- Bring the vehicle to a full stop and press the brake pedal.
- Press the (P) button (1). The parking brake will be set. The “P” (Park) position will be engaged.
- The status of the parking brake is displayed in the transmission selector and the instrument cluster. The status of the parking lock is displayed in the instrument cluster.

“P” engages automatically if you turn off the drive system while the “D” or “R” position is selected. If you turn off the drive system while in “N”, the “P” position may engage automatically after approximately 30 minutes.

If you open the driver's door and unfasten the driver’s safety belt when the vehicle is stationary and in the “D” or “R” position, then “P” will be engaged automatically.

If you would like to switch from the “P” position to “D” or “R”, the vehicle must be ready to drive. Depending on the vehicle equipment, the vehicle must be ready to drive to switch to the “N” position.

### “N” (Neutral) position

In the “N” position, power is not transmitted to the driving wheels. Use the “N” position in a car wash (with conveyor belts), for example.

If you unintentionally select the “N” position while driving, you can select “D” again without pressing the brake pedal.

For safety reasons, the vehicle can only be locked with the central locking switch when the "N” position is selected.

## Selecting the driving program

To switch between the current driving program and “S”, push the selector toward the rear.

If you select the **dynamic** Audi drive select mode, the “S” driving program will be activated. When the ignition is turned off, the driving program may be reset to “D”.

# When driving

## Information about breaking in

A new vehicle must be broken in within the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) so that all moving parts work smoothly together, which helps to increase the service life of the engine and other drive components.

Do not drive higher than two-thirds of the maximum permissible engine RPM during the first 600 miles (1,000 km) and do not use full acceleration. The engine can be increased RPM gradually during the next 300 miles (500 km).

## Starting and ending vehicle operation

### Starting from a stop

- Press and hold the brake pedal.
- Turn on the drive system.
- Select the “D” or “R” position. The parking brake will be set automatically.
- Release the brake pedal. The vehicle may roll.
- Press the accelerator pedal to accelerate.

Always keep in mind that the vehicle “creeps” when starting to drive and maneuvering. If you take your foot off the brake pedal, the vehicle will be set into motion by the drive system.

### Securing the vehicle against rolling

Secure your vehicle to prevent it from rolling before exiting the vehicle.

- Set the parking brake.
- If parking on a steep road, turn the steering wheel so that your vehicle will roll against the curb in case it should start to move.

If one of these measures is not possible, for example because there is no vehicle power, you must secure your vehicle against rolling using additional measures.

- Only park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Use suitable objects to block the front and rear wheels.

**WARNING**

– Always set the parking brake when leaving your vehicle, even if only for a short period of time. If the parking brake is not set, the vehicle could roll, increasing the risk of an accident.
– Do not leave your vehicle unattended while the drive system is active, because this increases the risk of an accident.
– If the parking brake is set, it can release automatically when the accelerator pedal is pressed. To reduce the risk of an accident, do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal and always make sure the “P” position is selected when the vehicle is parked.
– When you leave the vehicle, turn off the vehicle and take the key with you. This is especially important when leaving persons or animals in the vehicle. Otherwise, the vehicle could start unintentionally, the parking brake could release, or electronic equipment could activate, which increases the risk of an accident.
– No persons or animals should be left in a locked vehicle. Locked doors make it more difficult for responders to enter the vehicle, which increases the risk of death.
– If you do not begin driving immediately after releasing the brake pedal, your vehicle may begin to roll backward. Press the brake pedal or set the parking brake immediately.

**Note**

If you have to stop on an incline, always press the brake pedal to hold the vehicle in place to reduce the risk of the vehicle rolling backward. Do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing and holding the accelerator pedal. The drive system can overheat, which increases the risk of damage.

8B1012721BF

## Operating the shift paddles

**Fig. 60** Steering wheel: shift paddles

You can shift the gears manually when in the "D" position. The transmission must be in tiptronic mode. You can switch to manual shifting while the vehicle is stationary or while driving, depending on the Audi drive select mode that is selected.

### Shifting with the shift paddles

The transmission only allows manual shifting when the engine speed is within the permitted range.

- Upshifting: press the ⊕ shift paddle.
- Downshifting: press the ⊖ shift paddle.
- To engage the lowest possible gear for maximum acceleration, press and hold the ⊖ shift paddle.
- To switch back to automatic mode, press and hold the ⊕ shift paddle.

The transmission automatically shifts up or down before critical engine speed is reached.

If you do not use the shift paddles for some time, the transmission will switch back to automatic mode, depending on the selected driving program and Audi drive select mode.

## Information about the accelerator pedal

You can accelerate the vehicle using the accelerator pedal.

### Maximum acceleration

If you press the accelerator pedal all the way down, the engine's full power will be used and you will reach maximum acceleration, also called "kick-down".

**WARNING**

The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve on slick or slippery road surfaces when using kick-down, which increases the risk of an accident.

## Using launch control

Launch control provides the best possible acceleration when starting from a stop.

### Availability

The availability of the function depends on the availability of the drive system components.

After accelerating using launch control, the temperature of some vehicle components may increase greatly. If that happens, the function will not be available for a few minutes to reduce the risk of damage. After a cool-down period, launch control will be available again.

### Requirements

– The parking brake is released.
– The engine must be at operating temperature.
– The steering wheel must not be turned.
– ESC is limited.
– The "S" driving program and the **dynamic** Audi drive select mode must be selected.

### Using launch control

– Press the brake pedal with your left foot and hold it all the way down for at least one second.
– While pressing the brake pedal, press the accelerator pedal all the way down quickly with your right foot at the same time (kick-down).
– The **LAUNCH CONTROL** symbol appears. Once the engine reaches a constant speed, remove your foot from the brake pedal.
– The red blinking shift indicator light signals the optimal time to release the brake pedal.

Once the vehicle has started moving or the acceleration process is finished, reactivate the ESC so that it is fully functional. ▶

**WARNING**

Only use launch control when road and traffic conditions allow it and other road users will not be endangered or impacted by your driving and the vehicle's acceleration. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick or slippery road surfaces, which increases the risk of an accident.

**Note**

When accelerating using launch control, all vehicle components are subject to heavy loads. This can result in increased wear.

## Information about efficient and environmentally-friendly driving

Your driving style greatly influences the amount of fuel and energy consumed, the environmental impact, and the wear on the engine, brakes, and tires. Note the following information for efficient and environmentally-conscious driving:

– Activate predictive efficiency information.
– Turn off electrical equipment that is not needed, such as seat heating.
– Anticipate upcoming traffic situations while driving to avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
– Avoid driving at high speeds.
– Avoid adding extra weight to the vehicle if possible, for example by not leaving roof racks or bike racks installed when they are not needed.
– Make sure the tire pressure is correct.
– Have maintenance performed regularly on the vehicle.
– Do not let the engine run while the vehicle is parked.
– Do not drive with winter tires during the summer.
– Brake early and evenly to use recuperation.
– Use the Start/Stop system.
– Utilize the engine braking effect.
– Avoid driving short distances when possible.

The amount of noise produced by the vehicle can increase significantly when driving with a sporty style. Show respect to others around you and the environment with the way you operate your vehicle, especially at night.

## Transmission selector messages

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

**Transmission: too hot. Please adapt driving style**

The transmission temperature has increased significantly. Drive very cautiously or take a break from driving until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light turns off.

**Selector lever: malfunction! You can continue driving in the current gear until drive system is off**

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. If you turn the drive system off, you will not be able to select any other selector positions after restarting the drive system. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Transmission: malfunction! Gear change only possible if using both shift paddles. Please contact Service**

There is a system malfunction in the selector. You can continue driving with limited functionality. The selector is not working. Selector positions can only be selected by tapping both shift paddles at the same time when the vehicle is stationary. The “P” position will engage automatically when you turn off the drive system. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Selector lever: malfunction! You can continue driving. Please contact Service soon**

There is a system malfunction in the selector. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected. ▶

**Parking lock: malfunction! Please contact Service**

There is a system malfunction in the parking lock. You may continue driving. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon to have the malfunction corrected. Secure the vehicle against rolling.

**P button: malfunction! Auto P when drive system off. Please contact Service**

There is a malfunction in the parking brake button on the transmission selector. The “P” position will engage automatically when you turn off the drive system. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**P not possible. Risk of rolling away! Please contact Service**

The parking lock can no longer be engaged. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. Secure the vehicle against rolling before leaving the vehicle.

# Start/Stop system

## Introduction

The Start/Stop system can help increase fuel economy and reduce $CO_2$ emissions. In Start/Stop mode, the engine shuts off automatically when stopped, for example at a traffic light.

The ignition and important assist systems such as the brake booster will remain available during the Stop phase. The engine will restart automatically when needed.

The Start/Stop system is automatically activated once the ignition is turned on.

Depending on the driving situation, the engine may already stop when **coasting** before the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

## Start/Stop system requirements

– The driver's door and hood must be closed.
– The "P", "N", or "D" position must be engaged.
– The steering wheel must not be turned far in either direction.
– The vehicle must have driven faster than 2 mph (3 km/h) since the last time it stopped.
– The vehicle is not in trailer mode.
– If you select the "D" position after shifting into reverse, the vehicle must be driven faster than 6 mph (10 km/h) in order for the Start/Stop system to become active again. This makes it possible to maneuver without stopping the engine.

## Turning the Start/Stop system off or on

The A OFF button is located in the center console. The button will be illuminated when the function is turned off. Depending on the engine, the Start/Stop system cannot be turned on or off.

▸ Press A OFF to turn on or off.

If you turn off the system during a Stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

**Note**

Always turn off the Start/Stop system when driving through water.

## Information about automatically starting and stopping the engine

The system checks if certain conditions are met before and during the Stop phase, and determines if the engine stops and how long it remains stopped. For example, if power usage is high, the engine will not be stopped. Along with other conditions, the following factors influence the automatic engine start or stop:

– Environmental conditions (slopes, inclines, elevation, temperature)
– Battery (charge status, temperature, power usage)
– Climate control system
– Engine temperature
– Assist systems
– Driving behavior

## Stopping and starting the engine

- Press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle has stopped. The Ⓐ indicator light appears in the instrument cluster once the engine stops automatically.
- The engine starts again when you remove your foot from the brake pedal. The indicator light turns off.

If the parking brake is set or the hold assist is turned on, the engine will only start again when you press the accelerator pedal.

### Information about starting or stopping the engine

– Press the brake pedal during a Stop phase to keep the vehicle from rolling.
– The ignition will turn off if you press the START ENGINE STOP button during a Stop phase.
– If you leave the vehicle briefly during a Stop phase and then enter again, the driver's door must be closed and the safety belt must be fastened in order for the engine to be able to restart.
– You can control if the engine will stop or not by reducing or increasing the amount of force you use to press the brake pedal. For example, if you only lightly press on the brake pedal in stop-and-go traffic or when turning, the engine will not turn off when the vehicle is stationary. If you press the brake pedal harder, the engine will turn off.

## Messages about the Start/Stop system

The following message may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

**Drive system: please start the vehicle manually**

This message appears when specific conditions are not met during a Stop phase. The Start/Stop system will not be able to restart the engine. The engine must be started with the START ENGINE STOP button.

# Brakes

## Safety information about the brakes

**WARNING**

– Only apply the brakes for the purpose of cleaning the brake system when road and traffic conditions permit. You must not endanger other road users because this increases the risk of an accident.
– Due to the risk of injury, only have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility work on the brake system. Incorrect repairs could impair the function.
– Never let the vehicle roll while the drive system is turned off because this increases the risk of an accident.
– If you retrofit your vehicle with a front spoiler, wheel covers, or similar items, make sure that the air flow to the brakes is not obstructed. Otherwise the brake system can overheat, which increases the risk of an accident.

**Note**

– Never let the brakes “rub” by pressing the pedal lightly when braking is not actually necessary. This can cause the brakes to overheat and increases braking distance and causes wear.
– Observe the important information for driving downhill.

## Introduction

You can apply the vehicle's brakes using the brake pedal. The braking effect of the brake pedal might be influenced by automatic recuperation.

## Information about the brakes

### Operating noise

Noises may occur when braking depending on the speed, braking force, and outside conditions such as temperature and humidity.

The brake system performs system tests at regular intervals when the vehicle is stationary and ▶

shortly after starting to drive. This can cause brief noise and haptic feedback effects on the brake pedal.

### Braking effect

To ensure an optimal braking effect, the brake pads will be applied to the brake rotors for a short period of time when driving at high speeds while the windshield wipers are turned on.

If the brake system becomes damp, for example after driving in heavy rain, the braking effect may be delayed. Other factors that could temporarily increase the response time of the brakes include:

– Wet conditions
– Low temperatures, ice, and snow
– Roads covered in salt
– Dirty brake pads

### Corrosion

Corrosion may form on the brake rotors if there is no heavy braking, if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time, or if the vehicle is not driven frequently or for long distances. In this case, braking heavily several times while driving at high speeds can clean the brake rotors ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety information about the brakes on page 97*.

### Brake pads

New brake pads do not achieve their full braking effect during the first 500 miles (800 km). They must be “broken in” first. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking during the break-in period.

Brake pad wear depends largely on the way the vehicle is driven and on operating conditions. Brake pad wear increases when driving frequently in the city or short distances or when using a very sporty driving style.

### Automatic post-collision braking system

The automatic post-collision braking system can help to reduce the risk of sliding and of additional collisions after an accident. If the airbag control module detects a collision, the vehicle is braked by the ESC.

The vehicle does not brake automatically if one of the following occurs:

– You are pressing the accelerator pedal.
– The braking force generated by the pressed brake pedal is greater than the braking force that would be initiated by the system.
– The ESC, the brake system, or the vehicle electrical system is not functioning.

## Brake system messages

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

**BRAKE / ⓘ Brakes: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle**

There is a malfunction in the brake system. If ABS / ⓘ and ⚠ also turn on, there is a malfunction in the ABS, ESC, and braking distribution. If the brake booster is not working, you have to use much more force when braking the vehicle.

Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance. Read and follow the additional safety information.

**Brakes: limited functionality. You can continue driving with caution. Please contact Service**

There is a malfunction in the brake system. There is a risk that the braking effect will be delayed. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**BRAKE / ⓘ Brake pads: wear limit reached. You can continue driving. Please contact Service**

The brake pads are worn. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible to have the malfunction corrected.

**Brake booster: limited functionality. You can continue driving. Please contact Service**

There is a brake booster malfunction. The brake booster is available, but its effectiveness is reduced. The braking performance may be different compared to the usual performance. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service ▶

Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Brake booster: deactivated. See owner's manual**

The brake booster remains active for a brief period of time after turning off the vehicle. Secure the vehicle against rolling.

**Brake cleaning function active**

Recuperation will be blocked due to environmental conditions or if components of the brake system were replaced. This will ensure the full braking effect.

**Brakes: hot. Please adapt driving style. See owner's manual**

The load on the brakes was too heavy, for example because of resting a foot on the brake pedal or because of a sporty driving style. You can continue driving. Adapt your driving style to relieve the brakes.

**Brakes: risk of overheating! Please select D position and use recuperation.**

A high load was placed on the brakes from driving downhill for a long period of time. Follow the instructions in the message to utilize recuperation and to relieve the brakes.

**Other indicator lights**

When you turn on the vehicle, the BRAKE / indicator light turns on briefly as a function check. If the indicator light does not turn on, there is a system malfunction.

If BRAKE / stays on, there is a malfunction in the brake system.

**WARNING**

If a malfunction occurs in the ABS, ESC, and braking distribution, interventions that stabilize the vehicle will no longer be available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk that the vehicle will slide. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

# Parking brake

## Introduction

The button is located in the center console.

The electromechanical parking brake is used to secure the vehicle from rolling unintentionally.

Noises when the parking brake is set and released are normal and are not a cause for concern. Test cycles that run automatically may create noises, even when the vehicle is stationary.

## Operating the parking brake

### Setting the parking brake using the button

Press the button. The parking brake will be set. The “P” (Park) position will be engaged.

If PARK / appears, the parking brake is holding the vehicle. You can remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If the red indicator light flashes, the braking force has not built up enough. When parking the vehicle, also secure it against rolling.

### Setting and releasing the parking brake in the MMI

You can also manually set and release the parking brake separately from the “P” (Park) position.

- Select: > **Vehicle** > **More** > **Brakes** > **Electromechanical parking brake**.

To prevent noise when starting to drive, do not manually release the parking brake when parking on an incline or with heavy loads.

### Enabling rolling ability (idle)

In situations where the parking brake should not activate automatically, for example in a car wash, follow these steps:

Requirement: the vehicle is stationary, the vehicle is turned on, the brake pedal is pressed, the “N” position is selected.

- Confirm the notification in the MMI, or
- Select: > **Vehicle** > **More** > **Brakes** > **Rolling ability** > **Enable rolling ability after exiting**.
- If you exit the vehicle, it will still be able to roll. ▶

- To secure the vehicle from rolling again, press the (P) button.
- To turn the message when selecting the "N" position on or off, select: ⊞ > **Vehicle** > **More** > **Brakes** > **Rolling ability** > **Show pop-up in the N position**.

**WARNING**

– To reduce the risk of an accident, always make sure the vehicle is situated safely while stationary.
– If the parking brake is set, it can release automatically when the accelerator pedal is pressed. To reduce the risk of an accident, do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal and always make sure the "P" position is selected when the vehicle is parked.
– If the power supply fails, you cannot set the parking brake once it is released, or release it if it is set. Secure the vehicle against rolling before leaving the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**Note**

The parking brake must not activate automatically when in a car wash with conveyor belts. Make sure the vehicle is able to roll. To reduce the risk of damage, do not turn off the vehicle.

## Using the hold function

This function can assist with transitioning comfortably when starting to drive from a stop, for example at a red light, on a hill, or in stop-and-go traffic.

The hold function will generally be activated automatically when the vehicle is stationary. The HOLD indicator light turns on.

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed and/or the driver's safety belt must be fastened. The drive system is turned on and the "D" or "R" position or the "S" driving program is selected.

Depending on the situation, you may need to activate the hold function manually.

- Press and hold the brake pedal while the vehicle is stationary.
- Then press the brake pedal more firmly.
- If HOLD appears, the vehicle will be held in place automatically. You can remove your foot from the brake pedal.
- Press the accelerator pedal to start to drive.

In certain driving situations, such as when parking on a hill, the hold function will be deactivated automatically to enable maneuvering. If you would like to reactivate the hold function, press firmly on the brake pedal again.

If you take your foot off the brake pedal when the hold function is active, the system will prevent the vehicle from "creeping".

**WARNING**

– The hold function cannot hold the vehicle on inclines under all conditions (for example, on slippery or icy ground). Always be ready to apply the brakes when using the hold function.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, always make sure the vehicle is situated safely while stationary.

**Note**

If the vehicle comes to a stop on large inclines without pressing the brake pedal, then the vehicle could roll back slightly before the hold function is able to hold the vehicle. In this case, press the brake pedal.

## Using the emergency braking function

Emergency braking should only be used in an emergency, if the standard brake pedal is malfunctioning or obstructed. When the emergency braking function is activated, the braking effect is similar to a heavy braking maneuver.

- Press and hold the (P) button while driving.
- An audio warning signal will sound and emergency braking will begin.
- If you release the button or press the accelerator pedal, emergency braking will stop. ▶

**WARNING**

Heavy braking while driving through curves or in poor road or weather conditions can cause the vehicle to slide or the rear of the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk of an accident.

## Parking brake messages

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

**BRAKE / Parking brake: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle. See owner's manual**

**BRAKE / Parking brake: malfunction! Please release parking brake**

If one of these messages appears, there is a malfunction in the parking brake. If the message appears while stationary, check if the parking brake is released and can be reset. If this is the case, turn the vehicle off and on again.

If the message stays on, if the parking brake cannot be released, or if the message appears while driving, do not continue driving. Secure the vehicle against rolling before leaving the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**Parking brake: malfunction! Please contact Service**

**HOLD Hold assist: currently unavailable. See owner's manual**

There is a malfunction in the parking brake or the hold function. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. Do not park on inclines. Secure the vehicle against rolling.

**Parking brake: warning! Vehicle position too steep**

**Hold assist: warning! Vehicle position too steep**

If one of these messages appears, the braking force might not be sufficient to secure the vehicle against rolling. Park the vehicle in a place with less of an incline.

**Parking brake: applied**

The parking brake is set. Press and hold the brake pedal to release the parking brake.

**Take over!**

The vehicle cannot be held in place automatically. Press the brake pedal to secure the vehicle from rolling unintentionally.

# Special driving situations

## Information about driving uphill and downhill

When driving uphill, downhill, or at high altitudes, note the following information:

- Drive slowly and carefully.
- Do not try to turn around if you cannot safely drive on an incline or hill. Instead, drive in reverse.
- When driving down hills, you can activate the hill descent control if you press the brake pedal while driving in the “D” position. The automatic transmission will select a gear suitable for driving down the hill and will attempt to maintain the speed at which the vehicle was traveling at the time the brake pedal was pressed. Press the brake pedal if necessary. The hill descent control will turn off once the hill levels out or you press the accelerator pedal.
- Utilize the engine braking effect when driving downhill by selecting the “S” driving program. This especially applies when towing a trailer. This reduces the load on the brakes.
- If necessary, use the hold function.

**WARNING**

- Only drive on inclines that your vehicle is designed to handle. Do not exceed the hill climbing ability of your vehicle. Your vehicle could tip or slide.
- Do not drive at an angle on steep inclines and hills. If your vehicle is about to tip, you must immediately start steering in the direction of the downward slope to reduce the risk of an accident.
- Always be ready to brake when using the hill descent control function.

8B1012721BF

### Information about driving through water

If you must drive through water, follow these instructions:

– Check the stability of the ground, the current, and the water depth. If the ground is unstable, there is a strong current, or there are waves, the water must only reach **up to the lower edge of the body at the most**.
– Deactivate the Start/Stop system.
– Drive carefully and no faster than at a walking pace to prevent the front of the vehicle from creating waves, because they could splash above the lower edge of the body. Oncoming vehicles could also create waves.
– Do not stop the vehicle while in the water.
– Do not drive in reverse.
– Do not turn off the drive system.

**WARNING**

After driving through water, press the brake pedal carefully to dry the brakes and restore the full braking effect.

**Note**

– Vehicle components such as the drive system, suspension, or electrical system can be severely damaged by driving through water.
– If possible, avoid driving through salt water because it increases the risk of corrosion. To reduce the risk of damage to vehicle components, use fresh water to clean any components that come into contact with salt water.

# Driving dynamics

## Audi drive select

### Introduction

Drive select makes it possible to experience different types of vehicle characteristics in one vehicle. With different driving modes, the driver can change the setting, for example from sporty to comfortable. This allows you to adjust individual systems collectively as a group to your personal preferences.

### Selecting an Audi drive select mode

The drive select button is located in the center console.

▸ Press the drive select button repeatedly until the desired mode appears in the instrument cluster or the MMI, or
▸ Press the drive select button and then press the desired mode in the MMI, or
▸ Select: ⊞ > **Vehicle** > **Audi drive select**.
▸ To activate a + mode, select the base mode first if necessary, and then select the + mode in the MMI.

You can specify a Audi drive select mode as a favorite. If you have configured the steering wheel button assignment, press the ✻ button on the multifunction steering wheel. You can choose between the last selected Audi drive select mode and your favorite.

You can change the driving mode when the vehicle is stationary or while driving. If traffic permits, briefly remove your foot from the accelerator pedal after changing modes so that the mode you have selected will be activated for the drive system.

The following modes may be available depending on vehicle equipment:

**balanced** – provides a balanced driving feel combining comfort and sportiness for everyday driving.

**individual** – allows customization of select vehicle systems to your personal preferences. Press ✎ to configure the **individual** mode to your preferred customized vehicle setup ⇨ *page 103, Information about customized settings*. The vehicle will exit this mode after turning off.

**dynamic** – provides a sporty driving feel. The “S” driving program is selected. The vehicle will exit this mode after turning off.

**dynamic+** – Provides a very sporty driving feel suited for driving off public roads. The ESC is being restricted to enable oversteering. The “D” driving program is not available in this mode. The vehicle will exit this mode after turning off. ▸

**comfort** – Provides a comfort-oriented vehicle setup and is suited for long drives on highways. The vehicle will exit this mode after turning off.

## Using the Audi drive select assistant

The Audi drive select assistant analyzes the road type and the driving style and selects a suitable Audi drive select mode.

### Availability

The assistant can only select specific Audi drive select modes. If you select an incompatible mode, the assistant will be canceled.

Turning off the vehicle will exit the assistant.

### Activating the Audi drive select assistant

▸ Press the drive select button, or
▸ Select: ⊞ > **Vehicle** > **Audi drive select**.
▸ Press drive select A to activate the assistant.

A will appear after the mode that was selected automatically.

### Adjusting the Audi drive select assistant

You can override the mode that is selected automatically by selecting certain other Audi drive select modes. If you do this, the assistant will learn about your driving style.

The system is not able to learn your driving style in certain driving situations, such as dynamic driving or driving on the freeway.

▸ Press Ⓐ to reset the learned behavior.

## Information about customized settings

The equipment in your vehicle will determine which settings you can adjust.

### Drive system

The drive system will respond to accelerator pedal movement more quickly or in a more balanced manner.

### Steering

The steering power assistance adjusts the steering from comfortable to dynamic.

### Suspension control

The suspension adjusts to be tighter or more comfort-oriented when it comes to compensating for uneven spots on the road.

### Sound

The sound of the drive system adapts and can range from subtle to sporty.

### quattro

The all wheel drive will be adjusted from a balanced setup to power distribution that is more focused on the rear wheels.

### Speed adjustment

During assisted driving, the driving behavior of the adaptive cruise control and the predictive speed adjustment adjusts between comfortable and dynamic, depending on vehicle equipment.

### Audi virtual cockpit plus layout

The layout of the instrument cluster is adjusted.

# Suspension

## Information about the damper control

Damper control is an electronically-controlled damping system. The firmness of the suspension will adapt to the driving conditions and the driving situation. The settings depend on the selected Audi drive select mode.

## Information about ground clearance

The vehicle height and clearance can be influenced by the following factors:

– Change in load

**Note**

Always make sure there is enough clearance above and below the vehicle. This is especially important for entrances with height restrictions, for example, before driving into underground garages. You could also scrape the ground when driving over the edges of curbs or on steep ramps, which could damage your vehicle.

### Suspension messages

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

**Suspension: malfunction! You can continue driving**

There is a malfunction. The driving characteristics may be limited. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

## Steering

### Introduction

Electromechanical steering supports steering movements by electronically adapting the power steering depending on the vehicle speed. The settings depend on the selected Audi drive select mode.

### Information about progressive steering

The driving dynamic and driving stability are increased by the steering ratio based on the steering wheel angle. The steering is very direct when the steering wheel angle is sharp, and indirect when the angle is low. This enables comfortable maneuvering and a precise steering response at higher driving speeds.

### Steering messages

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

**Steering: malfunction! Please stop vehicle**

The power steering may have failed. Adapt your driving style immediately to compensate for the fact that it may be more difficult to turn the steering wheel, and stop your vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

If the indicator light only stays on for a short time, you may continue driving.

**Steering: malfunction! You can continue driving**

There is a malfunction in the steering system. Steering may be more difficult or more sensitive. Adapt your driving style. Have the steering system checked immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Please note that the red indicator light may turn on after restarting the drive system. Do not continue driving if it does.

If the indicator light only stays on for a short time, you may continue driving.

## All wheel drive (quattro)

### Safety information about all wheel drive

Your vehicle has excellent driving characteristics both under normal driving conditions and on snow and ice. Always read and follow the safety information.

**WARNING**

- Even in vehicles with all wheel drive, you should adapt your driving style to the current road and traffic conditions to reduce the risk of an accident.
- The braking ability of your vehicle is limited by the grip of the tires. In this way, it is not different from a two wheel drive vehicle. Do not drive too fast because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Note that on wet streets, the wheels can “hydroplane” if driving at speeds that are too high. Adapt your speed to the road conditions to reduce the risk of an accident.

### Introduction

The all-wheel drive system distributes the driving power variably to the front and rear axle to improve the driving characteristics.

### Information about quattro ultra

If the driving situation does not require all wheel drive, then the rear section of the drivetrain will decouple and thus save fuel. The system continuously evaluates if all wheel drive is needed. This ▶

allows the rear drivetrain to recouple shortly before it is needed.

### Information about the sport differential

The sport differential distributes the drive power to the rear axle based on the situation. The goal is a high level of agility and ability to accelerate on curves. The vehicle is very responsive to steering. The settings depend on the selected Audi drive select mode.

### All wheel drive messages

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

**Driving dynamics system: malfunction! Limited functionality. Please contact Service**

The function is limited. Continue driving with caution. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**Driving dynamics system: temperature is too high. Please adapt driving style**

The temperature of the drive system has increased significantly. Drive in a less sporty manner until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light turns off.

**All-wheel drive: please check the vehicle tires! See owner's manual**

A different rolling circumference was detected between the front and rear axle. Use tires of the same construction, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on all four wheels. Check the installed tires and correct the tire pressure if necessary. If the indicator light does not turn off, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

# Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)

### Safety information about the electronic stabilization control (ESC)

**WARNING**

- The ESC and its integrated systems cannot overcome the limitations imposed by natural physical laws. This is especially important on slippery or wet roads. If the systems begin acting to stabilize your vehicle, you should immediately alter your speed to match the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided cause you to take risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
- Please note the risk of a collision increases when driving fast, especially through curves and on slippery or wet roads, and when driving too close to objects ahead. There is still a risk of accidents because the ESC and its integrated systems cannot always prevent collisions.
- Accelerate carefully when driving on smooth, slippery surfaces such as ice and snow. The drive wheels can spin even when these control systems are installed and this can affect driving stability and increase the risk of a collision.
- As the vehicle load increases, especially the roof load, the vehicle's center of gravity also increases along with the risk of the vehicle tipping. To reduce the risk of an accident, always adapt your driving style to the current conditions and avoid sudden driving maneuvers.

### Introduction

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) supports driver safety. It reduces the risk of slipping and improves driving stability. ESC detects critical situations, such oversteering and understeering of the vehicle, the drive wheels spinning, or the risk of the vehicle tipping.

The brakes are applied or the engine/motor torque is reduced in order to stabilize the vehicle. ▶

The ABS and ASR only function correctly when all four wheels have a similar wear condition. Different tire sizes can result in a reduction in engine/motor power.

You may hear noises when the systems described are working.

## Overview of the electronic stabilization control functions

The following stabilization functions are integrated into the ESC, among others:

### Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when braking. The vehicle can still be steered even during hard braking. Apply steady pressure to the brake pedal. Do not pump the pedal.

Noises will indicate when the system is working.

### Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)

ASR reduces drive power when the wheels begin spinning and adapts the power to the road conditions. This will increase the driving stability.

### Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

The EDL applies the brakes to wheels that are slipping and transfers the drive power to the other wheels. This function is not available at higher speeds.

Under unusually heavy load, EDL will automatically turn off to keep the brake on the braked wheel from overheating. The vehicle is still functioning correctly. EDL will turn on again automatically when conditions have returned to normal.

### Selective wheel torque control

Selective wheel torque control is used when driving on curves. Braking is targeted toward the wheels on the inside of the curve as needed. This allows more precise driving in curves.

### Power steering

The ESC can also support vehicle stability through steering.

## Operating the electronic stabilization control

The OFF button (or OFF, depending on the model) for controlling the ESC is located in the center console. The ESC turns on automatically when the vehicle is turned on.

If the ESC is limited, turned off, or malfunctioning, systems with an automatic braking intervention function may not be fully available.

If malfunctions occur in other systems or certain driver assistance systems are active, the ESC must be turned on by the system. The ESC may turn on automatically and cannot be operated with the button.

### Limit ESC

In some situations, it may make sense to limit the stabilizing function of the ESC so that the wheels can spin, for example to rock the vehicle to free it when it is stuck or to drive with snow chains. The ESC can also be limited to provide more sporty driving characteristics with fewer stabilizing corrective actions.

– To limit the ESC, press the OFF button briefly. The OFF indicator light will turn on.
– To completely reactivate the ESC stabilization function, press the button again. The indicator light turns off.

### Turning off ESC

For a more active control of the vehicle where the stabilizing functions of the ESC cannot intervene, the ESC can be turned off.

– To turn off the ESC, press and hold the OFF button for more than three seconds. The OFF and ESC OFF indicator lights turn on.
– To completely reactivate the ESC stabilization function, press the button again. The indicator lights turn off.

**WARNING**

– When the ESC is turned off or limited, there will be no vehicle stabilization or it will be limited. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick ▶

or slippery road surfaces, which increases the risk of an accident.
– Because of the increased risk of an accident, only drive with the ESC turned off or limited when it is necessary. Reactivate the ESC as soon as possible.

### Electronic stabilization control (ESC) messages

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

**ABS / Stabilization control (ESC/ ABS): malfunction! See owner's manual**

There is a malfunction in the ABS or EDL. This also causes the ESC to malfunction. The brakes still function with their normal power, but ABS is not active.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Other indicator lights**

If blinks while driving, the ESC is actively regulating. Operating noises may occur. If the indicator light stays on, the ESC has been turned off due to system needs. The indicator light turns off when the system is fully functional.

# Trailer towing

## Driving with a trailer

### Introduction

Your vehicle is primarily intended for transporting people and luggage. However, if you drive with a trailer, follow the technical requirements, the operation and driving tips, and the legal regulations.

Driving with a trailer affects the vehicle's energy usage, performance, and wear. It also requires greater concentration.

A retrofitted trailer hitch must be installed according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer.

**WARNING**

– To reduce the risk of death, do not transport any people in a trailer.
– Only use a ball hitch that is approved for your vehicle. Using a ball hitch that is not approved for your vehicle can result in issues such as unstable driving behavior or uncoupling of the trailer and increase the risk of an accident. If you have questions, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

### Operating instructions when towing a trailer

**Towing capacity**

Your vehicle can only be operated with class 1 or class 2 trailers.

**Load distribution**

Poor cargo load and distribution can negatively impact vehicle handling. Load the vehicle and trailer based on the following criteria as much as possible:

– Store objects in the vehicle luggage compartment, if possible. The vehicle should always carry the heaviest possible load and the trailer should have the lightest possible load.
– Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heavy objects are as close to the axle as possible.
– Secure objects so that they do not slide.
– Utilize the maximum weight according to the tongue weight rating if possible.

**Stabilizer attachment**

Swaying movements can be reduced by an additional stabilizer attachment that is mounted on the trailer. Remove grease and clean the ball head before using a stabilizer attachment. You can purchase and have the stabilizer attachment installed at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. ▶

If the trailer has no stabilizer attachment, clean the ball head before towing and coat it with multi-function oil. If towing often, apply the coating regularly.

### Speed

Adhere to the legal speed limits. Follow the legal regulations that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle.

As the speed increases, the driving stability of the vehicle and trailer decreases. Adjust the speed when unfavorable road, weather, and wind conditions exist. This especially applies when driving downhill.

### Hills

When you start driving uphill or downhill, the vehicle and trailer may tilt or sway sooner than when driving on a level surface. Reduce the speed even for only minor swaying movements. Never attempt to straighten out the vehicle and trailer by accelerating.

Downshift before driving on hills to utilize the engine braking effect ⇨ ⚠.

### Exterior lighting

Follow the legal regulations for lighting on your trailer that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle. If necessary, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Before you start driving, check all lighting equipment on the trailer while it is hitched to the vehicle.

The headlight range control automatically adjusts the light range of the headlights.

### Exterior mirrors

Make sure that you can also observe the traffic area behind the vehicle using the exterior mirrors, and use additional exterior mirrors if necessary. Adjust the additional exterior mirrors so that you have a sufficient visibility behind the vehicle. Follow the local legal regulations for installing additional exterior mirrors.

### Engine cooling system

Driving with a trailer means a higher load on the engine and the cooling system. Make sure the cooling system contains enough coolant.

### Engine coolant temperature

Pay special attention to the coolant temperature messages when the outside temperature is high and when driving on long inclines. Shift to a higher gear in a timely manner.

### Tires

Adjust the tire pressure on your vehicle for a “full load” as specified on the tire pressure label. If necessary, also adjust the tire pressure on the trailer according to the manufacturer's specifications.

Install winter tires on the vehicle and trailer when driving in winter temperatures.

### Overrun brake

If your trailer is equipped with an overrun brake, it must be correctly adjusted and function correctly. When using a trailer with an overrun brake, first brake gently then quickly. This reduces the risk of jerking while braking if the trailer wheels lock up.

### Parking the vehicle and trailer on inclines

Block the wheels with chocks when parking on inclines if the trailer is loaded. Follow the legal regulations that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle.

### Breaking in the vehicle

Avoid driving with a trailer during the vehicle break-in period.

### Inspection intervals

Audi recommends having the vehicle inspected between the inspection intervals if you tow a trailer frequently. ▶

**WARNING**

Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and can substantially reduce braking performance, increase braking distance, or cause complete failure of the brake system.

**Note**

Attachments retrofitted on the vehicle may cause damage, especially on the trailer hitch ball head. In cases of damage, have the function checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

# Trailer hitch

## Introduction

Only use a trailer hitch with a removable ball hitch mount and ball hitch. The trailer hitch must be permitted for the vehicle, the trailer, and the permitted total weight of the trailer being pulled. Above all, it must be securely and safely attached to the vehicle trailer.

Never mount a trailer hitch on the bumper. The trailer hitch must be mounted in a way that does not impair the function of the bumper. Do not make any changes to the exhaust system and the brake system.

Check regularly if the trailer hitch is securely mounted. Always follow the instructions given by the trailer hitch manufacturer.

## Information about trailer stabilization

Trailer stabilization is a feature of the Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC), and it helps reduce the risk of the trailer swerving and weaving when driving at speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h). Therefore, always leave the ESC turned on. Read the ESC description to learn how to operate it ⇨ *page 105*. For trailer stabilization to function correctly, please also note the information found in ⇨ *page 107* and ⇨ *page 110*.

System functions may not be available if the ESC is limited or turned off, or if there is a malfunction.

**WARNING**

- ESC and trailer stabilization cannot overcome the laws of physics. To reduce the risk of an accident, keep this in mind, especially when driving with a light trailer attached.
- Always adapt your speed to the weather, road and traffic conditions. Do not let the trailer stabilization tempt you into taking risks, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Trailer stabilization may not always detect if a trailer is swaying and stabilize it. This could increase the risk of an accident. Brake your vehicle and avoid unnecessary steering movements.
- When driving on slick roads with poor traction, the trailer can still “jackknife” even with trailer stabilization. This could increase the risk of an accident. Always adapt the speed to the road conditions
- Trailers with a high center of gravity can tip before you notice any weaving back and forth, which increases the risk of an accident. Adjust the speed accordingly.
- When the vehicle is empty but the trailer is loaded, the trailer can start swaying even at low speeds, which increases the risk of an accident. However if you must drive under these circumstances, then drive especially slowly.
- If the trailer socket is being used but not with a trailer (such as a bicycle rack with lighting), a trailer stabilization braking intervention can automatically occur under extreme driving situations.
- When driving with two trailers, the vehicle and trailer can start swaying under certain conditions, which increases the risk of an accident. This vehicle is only permitted to tow a maximum of one trailer.
- When driving with a trailer that is secured off-center, the vehicle and trailer can start swaying under certain conditions, which increases the risk of an accident. Accessories that require the trailer to be attached off-center are not permitted.

8B1012721BF

## Information about driving with a trailer

### Trailer brakes

If the trailer is equipped with a brake system, follow the manufacturer's specifications. However, the brake system on the trailer must never be connected to the vehicle brake system.

### Safety chains

Make sure the safety chains are attached correctly when pulling a trailer. The chains should hang down enough so that the trailer can drive around curves. However, they must not touch the ground.

**WARNING**

If the trailer is equipped with electronic brakes, these brakes cannot be activated by a factory-installed control system, which increases the risk of an accident.

## Information about retrofitting a trailer hitch

You can find out if your vehicle is equipped with a retrofitted trailer hitch at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility knows the specifications for retrofitting a trailer hitch and any necessary technical requirements.

**WARNING**

- Only have the additional trailer hitch installed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- There is a risk of an accident if the trailer hitch is installed incorrectly.
- For your own safety, read the assembly instructions provided by the trailer hitch manufacturer.

**Note**

- Connecting the trailer socket incorrectly could cause damage to the vehicle electrical system.
- Longer inclines cannot be driven without a suitable cooling system, especially if the outside temperatures are high. Otherwise, this increases the risk of engine damage.

# General information about assist systems

## Overview of the assist systems

### Overview of the warning systems

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the following assist systems can be installed in your vehicle:

– The **manual speed warning** issues a warning when the set speed is exceeded ⇨ *page 118*.
– The **traffic sign-based speed warning** gives a warning when a detected speed limit is exceeded ⇨ *page 150*.
– The **distance warning** gives a warning when there is not enough distance to the vehicle traveling ahead ⇨ *page 118*.
– **Side assist** uses a display in the exterior mirror to give warnings during lane changes about traffic approaching from behind and about vehicles in the blind spot ⇨ *page 119*.
– The **exit warning** can detect traffic approaching from behind such as vehicles, and provide assistance based on this information when you are exiting the vehicle ⇨ *page 121*.
– The **fatigue warning** indicates if a break is needed ⇨ *page 122*.
– The **distraction warning** gives a warning if it detects the driver is distracted from traffic ⇨ *page 123*.

### Overview of the lane assist systems

Your vehicle may have various lane assist systems depending on the country/vehicle equipment.

Unlike lane center guidance, which continuously assists the driver to remain in the center of the lane using brief corrective steering movements, the lane departure warning warns and intervenes just before an unwanted departure from the lane.

– The **lane departure warning** can give warnings about unintentionally leaving the lane and, if necessary, give warnings using corrective steering and steering wheel vibrations ⇨ *page 124*.
– **Lane center guidance** assists through corrective steering and helps to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane as much as possible ⇨ *page 126*.
– **Lane change assist** can have the vehicle switch to an adjacent lane ⇨ *page 129*.
– During **assisted hands-free driving** with lane center guidance, you can remove your hands from the steering wheel ⇨ *page 130*.

### Overview of the cruise control systems

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the following assist systems can be installed in your vehicle:

– Within the limitations of the system, **adaptive cruise control** assists you while driving by controlling the speed and the set distance to the vehicle traveling ahead. If a vehicle is detected traveling ahead, the system can brake or accelerate your vehicle. Even in stop-and-go traffic and in traffic jams, the system brakes the vehicle until it comes to a stop and can start driving again automatically, depending on how long the vehicle is stopped ⇨ *page 133*.
– **Adaptive cruise assist** enhances the functionality of adaptive cruise control by including predictive speed adjustment and lane center guidance ⇨ *page 141*.
– The **predictive speed adjustment** can adjust the set speed to traffic conditions (for example, adjustment to speed limits or the route) ⇨ *page 139*.

### Overview of the braking and evasive action systems

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the following assist systems can be installed in your vehicle:

– In certain driving situations, **active front assist** can initiate measures to protect the people in the vehicle and other road users ⇨ *page 144*.
– **Rear turn assist** warns you of traffic approaching from the rear when you are turning ⇨ *page 147*. ▶

– **Rear cross-traffic assist** can warn you of approaching cross traffic when driving in reverse or exiting a parking space ⇨ *page 164*.
– **Emergency assist** detects driver inactivity. In these instances, the system will give a warning, assume control of the vehicle if necessary, and is able bring the vehicle to a stop ⇨ *page 142*.

## Overview of the other assist systems

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the following assist systems can be installed in your vehicle:

– **Predictive efficiency messages (efficiency assist)** assists with predictive information in order to reduce fuel consumption ⇨ *page 149*.
– **Traffic light information** shows speed recommendations to catch a series of green lights, or the waiting time at the next traffic light ⇨ *page 154*.
– **Camera-based traffic sign recognition** shows detected traffic signs ⇨ *page 150*.

## Overview of the parking systems

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the following assist systems can be installed in your vehicle:

– The **parking system with distance display** assists you while parking by providing audio and visual warnings about detected obstacles ⇨ *page 157*.
– **Rear emergency brake assist** will brake when driving in reverse if a pedestrian is detected behind the vehicle ⇨ *page 163*.
– The **rearview camera** shows the area behind the vehicle. The lines in the image help you to park and maneuver ⇨ *page 159*.
– The **surround view cameras** are an addition to the rearview camera and use other cameras and views to help you to see various areas around the vehicle while parking and maneuvering ⇨ *page 159*.
– To reduce the risk of damage to wheels or rims, the **curb warning** visually warns you in multiple stages if a wheel is within a critical distance from a curb or other low object ⇨ *page 165*.
– To reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle and surrounding area, the **maneuver assist** will assist you in narrow and complex maneuvering situations ⇨ *page 166*.

Audi recommends practicing parking in a traffic-free location or parking lot to become familiar with the systems. Practice parking in good lighting and weather conditions.

## Overview of the assisted parking systems

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the following assist systems can be installed in your vehicle:

– The **parking space search** helps you to find suitable parking spaces for the assisted parking systems ⇨ *page 170*.
– **Park assist** makes assisted parking in the vehicle possible and helps when parking in available parking spaces and exiting them ⇨ *page 172*.
– The **remote-controlled parking** function enhances park assist with the ability to control the vehicle remotely from outside using a mobile device ⇨ *page 175*.
– **Trained parking** enhances the usefulness of assisted parking systems by learning and saving frequently-used parking maneuvers. After saving them, the vehicle can perform these maneuvers by itself ⇨ *page 182*.
– **Reversing assist** helps when driving in reverse to exit tight parking spaces, garages, or paths. It continuously saves a section of the path used when driving forward, which enables it to reverse on the same path if desired ⇨ *page 180*.

Audi recommends practicing parking in a traffic-free location or parking lot to become familiar with the systems. Practice parking in good lighting and weather conditions.

# Safety information about the assist systems and system limitations

## Safety information about the assist systems

**WARNING**

- As the driver, you have complete responsibility for all driving operations at all times. The assist systems cannot replace the driver's attention. Give your full attention to driving the vehicle, and be ready to intervene in the traffic situation at all times.
- Activate the assist systems only if the surrounding conditions permit it. Always adapt your driving style to the current visual, weather, road, and traffic conditions.
- Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.
- For the assist systems to be able to respond correctly, the function of the sensors and cameras must not be restricted. Note the information on sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

## Additional information about assist systems

- Pay attention to applicable local regulations relating to driving tasks, leaving space for emergency vehicles, vehicle distance, speed, parking location, wheel placement, etc. The driver is always responsible for following the laws that are applicable in the location where the vehicle is being operated.
- You can cancel a steering or braking intervention by the system by braking or accelerating noticeably, steering, or deactivating the respective assist system.
- Always check the assist systems settings before driving. The settings may have been changed, for example by turning off the vehicle or by other persons.

## System limitations of the assist systems

**WARNING**

- The use of an assist system cannot overcome the natural laws of physics. A collision cannot be prevented in certain circumstances.
- Warnings, messages, or indicator lights may not be displayed or initiated on time or correctly, for example, if vehicles are approaching very fast.
- Corrective interventions by the assist systems, such as steering or braking interventions, may not be sufficient or they may not occur. Always be ready to intervene.

## Additional information about the system limitations of the assistance systems

- Due to the system limitations when detecting the surrounding area, the systems may warn or intervene unexpectedly or too late in certain situations. The assist systems may also interpret a driving maneuver incorrectly and then warn or intervene unexpectedly.
- The systems may not function as expected when weather creates poor road conditions or in unusual driving conditions, such as driving offroad, on unpaved roads, on loose ground, on inclines, or on ruts in the road.
- The systems may not function correctly in unclear traffic situations, such as rises or dips that obstruct visibility, traffic circles, toll booths, or when changing between right and left-hand drive traffic.
- The systems may not function correctly in unclear traffic situations, such as turn lanes, entry and exit ramps, construction zones, intersections, or city traffic.
- The function of the sensors and cameras may be limited when light and visibility conditions are poor, for example when it is dark, when driving into a tunnel, when there is glare, or when there are reflective objects.
- The detection of the surrounding area can be limited, for example by vehicles traveling ahead or by rain, snow, heavy spray, or light shining into the camera. ▶

– The sensors, the camera behind the windshield, and the surround view cameras must have a clear view. Keep them clean and free of dirt, snow, ice, fogging, and other debris. Otherwise system functions may be impaired. The windshield can also be cleaned with the windshield wipers.
– The sensors, the camera behind the windshield, and the surround view cameras must not be obstructed, for example by attachments, stickers, foils, or paint. There must not be any obstructions in the field of view for the sensors and cameras. Otherwise system functions may be impaired.
– External ultrasonic sensors, such as those in other vehicles, can interfere with the sensors.
– The steering wheel touch recognition may be limited when you wear gloves. Steering take-over prompts from the steering assist systems may occur more frequently.
– Responses by steering assist systems may be limited if accessories are mounted on the steering wheel. The frequency of steering take-over prompts from the steering assist systems may vary as well.

# Surrounding area detection

## Sensor and camera coverage areas

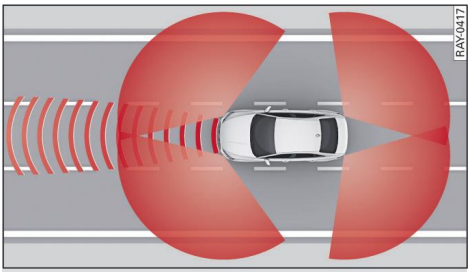



**Fig. 61** Sensor detection ranges

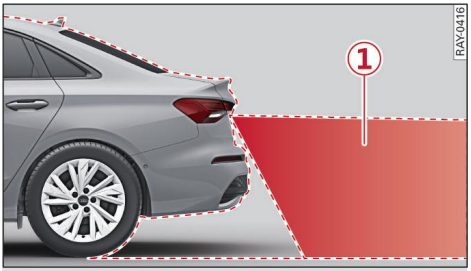



**Fig. 62** Rearview camera coverage area

The assist systems analyze the data from various sensors and cameras installed in the vehicle. Do not use any assist systems if there is damage in the area of the sensors and cameras or on the vehicle underbody. Damage can impair the function of the sensors and cameras or cause malfunctions. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

### Radar sensors

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area around the entire vehicle may be detected ⇨ *fig. 61*.

The wheel sensors on the rear corners of the vehicle are positioned so that the adjacent lanes to the left and right are detected on roads with a normal lane width.

### Ultrasonic sensors

Ultrasonic sensors can be used to detect the area around the vehicle. Depending on the vehicle equipment, sensors can be installed at the rear, front, and sides. The ranges depend on the locations of the ultrasonic sensors. The side area is detected and evaluated when passing. There may have been changes in the surrounding area after turning the vehicle off and on again, after opening the doors, or if the vehicle is left stationary for a period of time. In this case, the side area is not shown.

### Rearview camera/surround view cameras

Use the camera image in the display to assist you only if it shows a good, clear picture. Keep in mind that the image in the display is enlarged ▶

and distorted. Under certain circumstances, objects may appear different and unclear in the display.

The rearview camera can only detect the area marked in red ① ⇨ *fig. 62*. Only this area is shown on the central display ⇨ ⚠.

### Additional information

- Applies to: vehicles with surround view cameras: System limitations may occur if the exterior mirrors are not folded out completely. Make sure the exterior mirrors are folded out completely when driving.
- Applies to: vehicles with power folding outside mirrors: System limitations may occur if the exterior mirrors are adjusted manually. The exterior mirrors must only be folded in or out using the power controls.
- On vehicles that have factory-installed license plate brackets on the front of the vehicle, the brackets may only be replaced with ones that are the same size and made of the same material. Do not install any license plate brackets on the front of vehicles that do not have factory-installed brackets. Otherwise, the function of the system could be impaired.

### Additional information about the coverage areas of the sensors

The coverage areas of the sensors ⇨ *fig. 61* and cameras ⇨ *fig. 62* are schematic representations and do not represent a true-to-scale image of the sensor ranges.

### Information about declarations of conformity

The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 293*.

**WARNING**

- Sensors and cameras have spots in which the surrounding area cannot be detected. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations or may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic situation and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.
- Sensors may be subject to physical system limitations. External sources of interference, for example from other vehicles, can impair sensor functionality. The assist systems may be limited or may not function as expected.

**Note**

- Obstacles may disappear from the measurement range when approaching them, even if they were already detected.
- In some situations, the ability of the sensors and cameras to detect and display certain objects may be limited:
  - Objects located above the coverage area, such as bumpers on parked cars, garage doors that are partially open, or objects that are hanging
  - Low obstacles
  - Narrow objects, such as barrier chains, foliage, poles, or fences
  - Projecting objects, such as trailer tow bars
  - Objects with certain surfaces and structures, such as fabric

## Sensor and camera locations

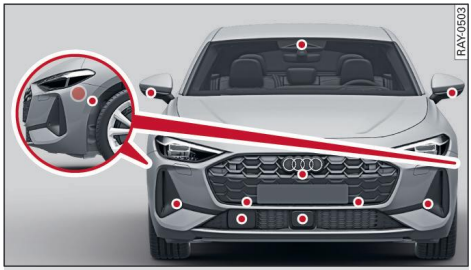



**Fig. 63** Front area: sensors and cameras

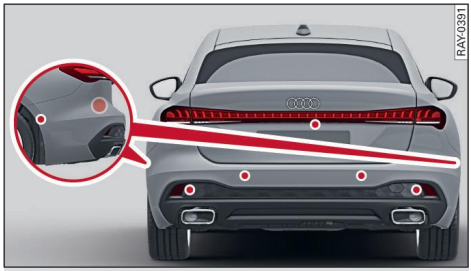



**Fig. 64** Rear area: sensors and cameras

### Front area

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following sensors and cameras may be installed:

– Camera behind the windshield
– Surround view cameras on the exterior mirrors
– Front surround view camera in the radiator grille
– Front and side ultrasonic sensors
– Radar sensors at the front corners of the vehicle
– Lower front radar sensors in the radiator grille

### Rear area

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following sensors and cameras may be installed:

– Rearview camera in the luggage compartment lid
– Radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle
– Rear and side ultrasonic sensors

### Additional information

– The locations of the sensors may differ slightly depending on vehicle equipment.
– Some sensors are installed under vehicle components and cannot be seen from the outside.

### Information about declarations of conformity

The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 293*.

# Driver assistance menu

## Opening the driver assistance menu

In the **Driver assistance** menu, you can turn certain assist systems on or off and adjust their settings. The available settings depend on the country and vehicle equipment.

▸ Press the button in the center console, or
▸ Open the quick access area in the central display and press , or
▸ Select: > **Driver assistance**.

You can turn certain systems on or off by pressing / or adjust them individually by pressing .

The symbol indicates if a system will automatically turn on again the next time the vehicle starts or if it will be reset to the mandated default settings.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## General driver assistance systems settings

### Info about automatically reset driver assistance systems settings

When starting the vehicle, information will be displayed about all systems that have been automatically reset to the prescribed default values since the last trip. In the display, you can select to have the last settings restored.

You can turn display of information immediately after starting the vehicle on or off under in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

### Resetting driver assistance system settings

You can reset all driver assistance system settings to the factory settings at once in the **Driver assistance** menu under ⇨ *page 116*.

**WARNING**

The demands of traffic require full attention of all road users. Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 20*.

# Driver assistance systems general messages

**Driver assistance systems: currently limited. Systems are continuously updated in the warning memory**

**Driver assistance systems: limited in this country. See warning memory**

**Driver assistance systems: limited availability due to trailer towing mode. See warning memory**

If this message appears, one or more driver assistance systems is limited or unavailable. To display the additional information, open the notification center in the central display. Take note of the information and adapt your driving style accordingly.

# Driver monitoring camera

## Introduction

Depending on vehicle equipment, your vehicle may be equipped with a technical function for driver monitoring. An infrared camera located near the steering column is used for driver monitoring. The camera checks the driver's seating position, among other things.

If the driver monitoring camera detects driver inactivity, warnings or interventions from other systems can be triggered, depending on the country/vehicle equipment. If the driver monitoring camera is turned off, it cannot trigger warnings or interventions from other systems.

You can turn the driver monitoring camera on or off under ⚙ in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

## System limitations of the driver monitoring camera

In some cases, the driver monitoring camera functions may be limited or temporarily unavailable. Functions may occur unexpectedly, with a delay, or not at all if:

– You are obstructing the camera view, for example when turning the steering wheel.
– The driver monitoring camera is fogged over, dirty, or damaged.
– There is glare in the driver monitoring camera, for example from sunlight.
– You need to move your head or change the direction of your eyes frequently because of the driving situation (such as when driving on a freeway or at intersections).
– You are wearing a baseball cap, scarf, or glasses (especially dark-tinted sunglasses or IR-blocking glasses).
– You are sitting in an unsuitable seating position. Follow the information about correct seating positions.
– You are tilting your head or directing your eyes downward. The system may interpret this as you closing your eyes.
– You have physical restrictions (such as eye movement disorders).
– You have particular facial characteristics.

## Driver monitoring camera messages

**Driver assistance systems: limited. Driver state cannot be assessed by camera. See warning memory.**

If the message is displayed when there is a malfunction, the driver monitoring camera and one or more other driver assistance systems are limited or unavailable. To display the messages again, open the notification center in the central display.

The systems limitations of the driver monitoring camera system may not have been observed. Check the system limitations. Try to turn the systems on again later or after the vehicle is started again.

Once the cause is corrected, some driver assistance systems may still be unavailable initially. Drive a short distance until the malfunction messages are no longer displayed and the driver assistance systems are ready to function again.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Opening the parking system menu

In the **Parking aid** menu, you can turn certain parking systems on or off and adjust their settings. The available settings depend on the country and vehicle equipment.

▸ Press the P button in the center console or select "R" (reverse). ▶

▸ Press ⚙ in the central display with the parking system activated.

You can turn certain systems on or off by pressing ⊂⊃/⊂⊃ or adjust their settings by pressing [>].

Depending on the country, it may not be possible to open the parking system menu when in reverse.

**⚠ WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

# Warning systems

## Speed warning

### Introduction

The speed warning system helps to stay below a specified maximum speed. A warning threshold can be set in the central display for this purpose.

Setting a threshold is recommended if you would like to be reminded when you reach a certain maximum speed. Situations where you may want to do so include driving in a country with a general speed limit or if there is a specified maximum speed for winter tires.

Regardless of the speed warning system, you should always monitor your speed using the speedometer and make sure you are following the legal speed limit.

### Setting the speed warning

You can turn the manual speed warning on or off and adjust the sensitivity settings in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

### Speed warning system messages

If MPH/ KMH appears with a message and an audio signal sounds, the stored maximum speed was exceeded. Once the speed drops below the stored maximum speed, the display will turn off.

## Distance warning

### Using the distance warning

**Fig. 65** Instrument cluster: distance warning in the area view

At speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h), this function measures the distance to the vehicle traveling ahead as a time interval, as long as the adaptive cruise assist is not actively regulating. If the distance falls below the warning threshold and remains there, the system will warn you of the hazard by displaying ▬. If the area view has been selected in the instrument cluster, the display ① will also appear. The warnings may be accompanied by additional visual signals, depending on the situation.

#### Adjusting the distance warning

You can turn the distance warning on or off or set the time gap to the vehicle driving ahead in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

#### System limitations

You may fall below the warning threshold briefly when passing or when quickly approaching a vehicle traveling ahead. There is no warning in this scenario. A warning is given only if you fall below the warning threshold for an extended period of time.

#### Additional information

The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

**⚠ WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Distance warning messages

If is displayed when there is a malfunction, the distance warning functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

If and a message regarding the active front assist is displayed when there is a malfunction, the distance warning functions are also unavailable or limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the messages again, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115*. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Side assist

## Using side assist

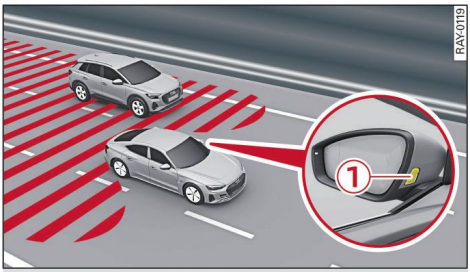



**Fig. 66** Driving situations and displays in the exterior mirror

**Fig. 67** Instrument cluster: display overview in the area view

### Introduction

Side assist monitors the “blind spot” as well as the traffic behind your vehicle in the adjacent lanes and provides assistance when you are changing lanes. If the system detects an object approaching and classifies it as critical, the display in the exterior mirror (1) on that side of the vehicle will turn on.

### Driving situations

– Your vehicle is being passed. The faster another vehicle approaches from behind, the sooner the display in the exterior mirror will turn on.
– There are vehicles traveling in the same direction as you in a lane adjacent to yours. The display in the exterior mirror will turn on when the detected object is in the “blind spot”, at the latest.
– You are slowly passing another vehicle. If the difference in speed between the two vehicles is approximately 9 mph (15 km/h) or less, the display in the exterior mirror will turn on.

### Information stage

If you still have not activated a turn signal, the system will inform you about objects classified as critical at speeds above approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

The system informs you about objects classified as critical by turning on the display in the exterior mirror on that side of the vehicle (1).

The display remains dim in the information stage so that you are not distracted while looking forward.

### Warning stage

Once you activate a turn signal, the system will inform you about objects classified as critical by turning on the display in the respective exterior mirror.

If other driver assistance systems (depending on vehicle equipment) detect that your vehicle is about to leave the lane, the display will blink even if the turn signal lever is not activated and a warning tone will sound to warn you about objects that are classified as critical. You can also be ▶

warned with corrective steering ⇨ *page 124, Lane departure warning*.

You can turn the side assist warning tone on or off in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

### Display in the instrument cluster

Side assist (information and warning level) will be displayed in the instrument cluster ⇨ *fig. 67*, in addition to the display in the exterior mirror. The symbol ② is shown in gray in the information stage and red in the warning stage.

The area view only appears if it was selected in the instrument cluster.

### System limitations

The side assist is active at speeds similar to a walking pace and higher.

The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 115, fig. 64*. They are designed to detect the left and right adjacent lanes when the road lanes are the normal width. In some situations, the system may respond to vehicles in your own lane or lanes that are not directly adjacent to yours, or to objects on the side of the road. In this case, the display will turn on even though there is no vehicle in the critical area. These situations may include:

– Driving on the edge of your own lane
– Narrow lanes
– Curves
– High barriers on the side of the road
– Construction zones

### Information about side assist

– If the window glass in the driver's door or front passenger's door has been tinted, the display in the exterior mirror may be incorrect.
– The coverage areas of the sensors ⇨ *fig. 66* are schematic representations and do not represent a true-to-scale image of the sensor ranges.

### Information about declarations of conformity

The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 293*.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– The display may not appear at all or it may not appear on time when vehicles are approaching or being passed very quickly.

## Adjusting side assist

You can turn side assist on or off and adjust its settings **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

If the system is activated, the displays will turn on briefly each time side assist is turned on.

You can adjust the brightness to your preferences in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*. While adjusting the brightness, the selected setting will be shown in the exterior mirror displays. Adjust the brightness to a level where the display in the information stage will not disrupt your view ahead. Because the display brightness automatically adapts to the ambient light, it may have already been adjusted to the highest or lowest setting during the automatic adaptation.

## Side assist messages

If or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the side assist functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the additional information, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. If necessary, clean the area where the sensors are located in the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 115, fig. 64*. Try turning on the system again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Exit warning

## Using the exit warning

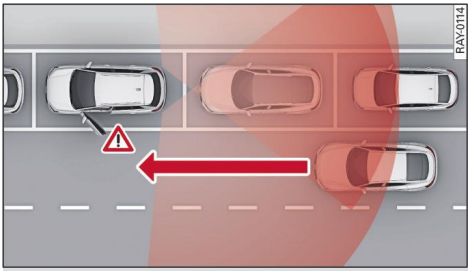



**Fig. 68** Approaching traffic detected

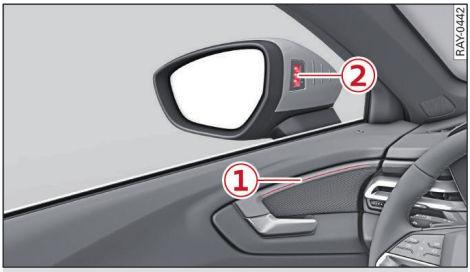



**Fig. 69** Front door: warning strip

### Introduction

Within system limitations, the exit warning system can detect traffic approaching from behind such as vehicles or road users, and provide assistance based on this information when you are exiting the vehicle ⇨ *fig. 68*. The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle.

### Displays and warnings

If the "P" position is selected and an object classified as critical is approaching, the warning strip ① and the display on the exterior mirror ② will light up on the corresponding side of the vehicle. The opening of the door may also be slowed briefly.

If the door is opened, the displays on that side will flash and a warning tone will sound. If other road users that are classified as critical are approaching while a door is already open, the displays will flash and a warning tone will sound. After that, the displays will remain on until the critical situation has ended.

### Turning the exit warning on or off

– You can turn the exit warning on or off in the **Driver assistance** menu or in the **Parking system** menu, depending on vehicle equipment ⇨ *page 116*.
– You can turn the exit warning tone on or off in the **Driver assistance** menu or in the **Parking system** menu, depending on vehicle equipment ⇨ *page 116*.

### Information about the exit warning

– The exit warning system may be available for up to approximately three minutes after unlocking the vehicle and opening the door or after turning off the vehicle. Then the displays flash briefly and the system turns off.
– If the system is activated, the displays will turn on briefly when the exit warning is turned on.
– The coverage areas of the sensors ⇨ *fig. 68* are schematic representations and do not represent a true-to-scale image of the sensor ranges.

### Information about declarations of conformity

The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 293*.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Always pay attention to traffic and to the area around your vehicle. The exit warning system does not replace the attention of the vehicle occupants. The vehicle occupants are always responsible for opening the doors and exiting the vehicle.
– The display may not appear in time when vehicles are approaching very quickly.
– The exit warning system does not respond to stationary objects.
– The exit warning system will not provide alerts if your vehicle is pulled too far into the parking space so that it is hidden by adjacent vehicles.

8B1012721BF

### Exit warning messages

If or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the exit warning functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the additional information, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. If necessary, clean the area where the sensors are located in the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 115, fig. 64*. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

## Fatigue warning

### Introduction

Within the limitations of the system, the fatigue warning informs the driver if a break is needed.

After starting to drive, the fatigue warning continuously analyzes the driving behavior and uses this data to assess drowsiness. This assessment is continuously compared with the current driving behavior.

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, a driver monitoring camera may also be used to detect the direction of the driver's eyes while driving.

If the system detects slight drowsiness at speeds of 40 mph (65 km/h) or above, then it will recommend a break. This suggestion will be provided by means of a display in the instrument cluster. If high levels of drowsiness are detected, there will also be an audio signal.

If the vehicle is equipped with emergency assist and it is ready to function, it will be activated if the potential for driver fatigue is detected based on closed eyes ⇨ *page 142*.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Never drive when you are tired, as this could increase the risk of an accident. On long drives, regularly take breaks that are long enough to provide sufficient rest. The driver is always responsible for their own driving capability.

### Overview of fatigue warning displays

The following displays appear in the instrument cluster:

| Display | Description |
|---|---|
| | The system has detected a low level of drowsiness. |
| | The system has detected a high level of drowsiness. An audio signal will sound as well. |

### Fatigue warning system limitations

In the some situations, the system may not be able to interpret the driver's behavior correctly:

– Pay attention to the system limitations of the driver monitoring camera (depending on the country and vehicle equipment) ⇨ *page 117*.
– You are driving at a speed below approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).
– You are driving on stretches of road with curves.
– You are driving on a road that is in a poor condition.
– You cross lane markers in special situations, for example when driving in construction zones, or the lane markers are not visible, for example due to weather conditions.
– Your driving style is very sporty.
– You are driving with a heavy or long trailer.
– Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the driver monitoring camera may be limited or unavailable.

After activating the system, it may take some time before it can correctly interpret drowsiness based on your behavior.

In some situations, the system may interpret driving maneuvers incorrectly and then recommend a break.

### Resetting the system

Depending on the country, the system will be reset automatically in the following situations:

– You turn the vehicle off and leave it off for some time.
– You unfasten the driver's safety belt and open the driver's door.
– The vehicle is stationary for a certain period of time.

## Adjusting the fatigue warning

You can turn the fatigue warning and driver monitoring camera on or off in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

## Fatigue warning messages

If or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the fatigue warning functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the messages again, open the notification center in the central display. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Distraction warning

## Introduction

Within the limitations of the system, the distraction warning will provide an alert if it detects that the driver is distracted from the traffic situation.

The system detects if you are performing operations while driving that could distract you from the traffic situation, such as adjusting the exterior mirrors. Availability of the function depends on the country and software version.

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, a driver monitoring camera may also be used to detect the direction of the driver's eyes and the position of the head while driving.

If the system detects slight distraction, it will prompt you starting at low speeds with a display in the instrument cluster to concentrate on the traffic situation. If you are very distracted, there will be an audio signal as well.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Do not become distracted from traffic while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident. Always focus on driving. The driver is always responsible for their own attentiveness.

## Overview of distraction warning displays

The following displays appear in the instrument cluster:

| Display | Description |
|---|---|
| | The system has detected a low level of distraction. |
| | The system has detected a high level of distraction. An audio signal will sound as well. |

## Distraction warning system limitations

In some cases, the system may be limited or may not operate at all:

– Pay attention to the system limitations of the driver monitoring camera (depending on the country and vehicle equipment) ⇨ *page 117*.
– You are driving at a speed below approximately 12 mph (20 km/h).

– Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the driver monitoring camera may be limited or unavailable.

## Adjusting the distraction warning

You can turn the distraction warning and, depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the driver monitoring camera on or off in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

## Distraction warning messages

If or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the distraction warning functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the messages again, open the notification center in the central display. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Lane assist systems

# Lane departure warning

## Introduction

Your vehicle may have various lane assist systems depending on the country/vehicle equipment. Unlike lane center guidance, which continuously assists the driver to remain in the center of the lane using corrective steering movements, the lane departure warning warns and intervenes just before an unwanted departure from the lane.

The **lane departure warning** can detect lane marker lines within the limitations of the system. The system can react if you are approaching a detected lane marker and it appears likely that you will leave the lane. Depending on vehicle equipment, it will warn you with corrective steering, steering wheel vibration, and a visual display.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Using the lane departure warning

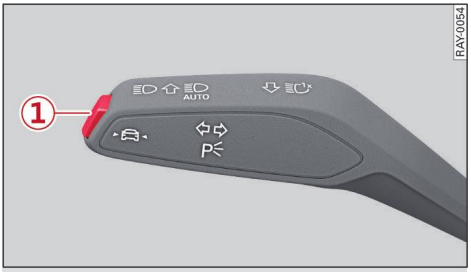



**Fig. 70** Lever: button for lane departure warning and lane center guidance

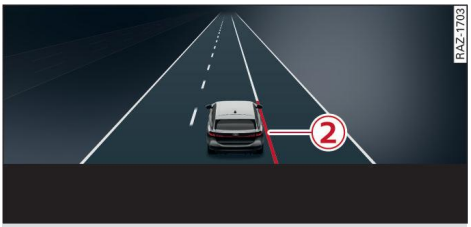



**Fig. 71** Instrument cluster: lane departure warning in the area view

### Turning the lane departure warning on or off

- You can turn the lane departure warning on or off in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*, or
- Press and hold the button (1) on the lever until the applicable display in the instrument cluster turns on.

Pressing the button (1) on the lever briefly will operate lane center guidance ⇨ *page 126*.

Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so you can be ready to steer at any time. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated. ▶

### Overview of displays and warnings

The driving situation and the settings are displayed in the instrument cluster and in the head-up display, if applicable. The displays depend on the country / vehicle equipment. The appearance of the symbols may vary.

| Display | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | The lane departure warning is active on the side that is indicated, but not ready to provide warnings or intervene. |
| | The lane departure warning is active on the side that is indicated and is ready to provide warnings and intervene. |
| | The lane departure warning system will warn you on the corresponding side before you exit the lane, or intervene with corrective steering. |

Corrective steering can also be indicated in the area view in the instrument cluster with a red line (2) on the corresponding side. The area view only appears if it was selected in the instrument cluster.

### Steering wheel vibration

The steering wheel can vibrate to warn you if lane markings are detected during a passing maneuver.

Depending on vehicle equipment, you can turn the steering wheel vibration on or off in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

### Corrective steering

A corrective steering intervention can warn you about driving over detected lane markings.

### Behavior when a turn signal is activated (depending on the country/vehicle equipment)

Applies to: vehicles without side assist: The system will not warn you if you activate a turn signal before crossing the lane marker line. In this case, it assumes that you are changing lanes intentionally.

Applies to: vehicles with side assist: If the turn signal is activated, the lane departure warning is ready, and a lane change has been classified as critical by the lane departure warning due to vehicles traveling beside you or due to approaching vehicles, then a noticeable corrective steering movement will occur shortly before exiting the lane. This will attempt to keep your vehicle in the lane.

**WARNING**

- Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- The system uses corrective steering to warn that the vehicle is leaving the lane. The driver is always responsible for keeping the vehicle in the lane. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so you can be ready to steer at any time.
- The lane departure warning is not designed to avoid collisions with structural road boundaries, such as concrete barriers.
- Corrective steering may not occur at all in certain situations, such as during heavy braking. Always be ready to intervene.

## Lane departure warning system limitations and restrictions

The system does not provide any corrective steering or steering wheel vibrations if it detects that you are passing another vehicle.

If turns on, the lane departure warning is on, but is not ready to provide warnings or intervene. The following system limitations or situations are examples of when this could occur:

- This system activates at speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h) and is not available at very high speeds.
- The necessary lane marker lines cannot be detected (for example, in a construction zone or because the lines are obstructed by snow, dirt, water, or lighting).
- The lane is too narrow or too wide.
- A curve is too tight.
- Visibility is obstructed by a rise or dip.

– The turn signal was activated.
– The ESC is limited or turned off.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Steering take-over prompts from the lane departure warning

### No steering activity detected

If no steering activity is detected, the steering take-over prompt will provide a warning using audio and visual signals. Actively take over steering immediately and keep your hands on the steering wheel so that you will be ready to steer at any time.

If the vehicle is equipped with emergency assist that is ready to function, it will be activated if you do not take over steering ⇨ *page 142*.

### Drive in the center of the lane

If the lane departure warning must intervene for a long period of time, a message will request you to drive in the center of the lane.

### Additional information

– The take-over prompts may be accompanied by additional audio or visual signals, depending on the situation.
– Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so you can be ready to steer at any time. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Lane departure warning messages

If or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the lane departure warning functions may be unavailable or may be limited. The appearance of the symbol may vary.

The display may also appear if the lane departure warning is turned on, but is not ready to provide warnings.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the messages again, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115*. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If is displayed and malfunctions persist, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Lane center guidance

## Introduction

Your vehicle may have various lane assist systems depending on the country/vehicle equipment. Unlike the lane departure warning, which warns and intervenes just before an unwanted departure from the lane, lane center guidance continuously assists the driver to remain in the center of the lane using corrective steering movements. The name of the system may differ depending on vehicle equipment.

Within the limitations of the system, **lane center guidance** provides corrective steering to assist you with keeping the vehicle in the center of the lane as much as possible.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Using lane center guidance

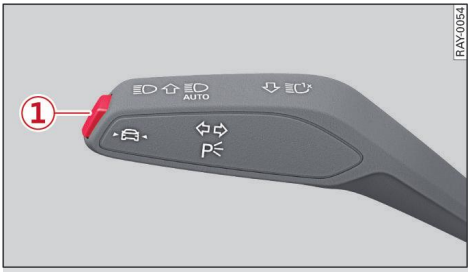



**Fig. 72** Lever: button for lane center guidance and lane departure warning

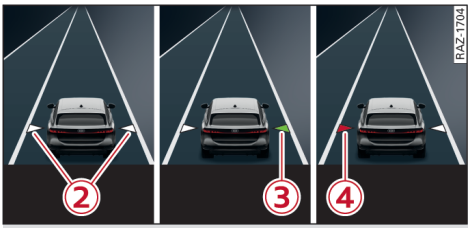



**Fig. 73** Instrument cluster: lane center guidance in the area view

### Turning lane center guidance on or off

Requirement: adaptive cruise control is turned on ⇨ *page 135*.

▸ To turn lane center guidance on or off, briefly press the button ① on the lever.

### Pairing lane center guidance with adaptive cruise assist

Depending on vehicle equipment, you may be able to pair the activation/deactivation of lane center guidance with the activation/deactivation of the distance/speed control in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

Pairing on: lane center guidance will turn on or off when distance/speed control is activated or deactivated.

Pairing off: lane center guidance can be turned on or independently from the activated distance/speed control.

### Adjusting the lane center guidance behavior

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can adjust the steering intervention level from **Light** to **Strong** in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

### Adjusting the lane center guidance

The function or equipment that is described was in development at the time this manual was published and may not be available in your vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can adjust the alignment of the lane center guidance within the lane if desired. This makes it possible to control the vehicle path more precisely.

▸ To temporarily adjust the alignment within a lane, lightly steer in the direction of the desired alignment for a few seconds.

The trained alignment can be reset in certain situations, for example if you steer back into the center of the lane or if you drive through narrow curves.

### Overview of the displays

| Area view display | Indicator lights | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| ② White triangles | | Lane center guidance is turned on for the side that is indicated, but it is not active. |
| ③ Green triangles | | Lane center guidance is active on the side that is indicated. |
| ④ Red triangles | | Actively take over steering immediately. A system limit has been reached ⇨ *page 128*. |
| - | | Actively take over steering immediately. No steering activity was detected ⇨ *page 128*. |
| - | | |

The area view only appears if it was selected in the instrument cluster.

### Additional information

– Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so you can be ready to steer at any time. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the ▸

regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
– Audi recommends turning on lane center guidance only on well-constructed roads.
– The system does not respond to a stationary vehicle in the same lane if it expects that you can easily drive around the stationary vehicle by turning the steering wheel.
– The system does not respond to people, animals, or objects that are crossing or approaching from the opposite direction.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Lane center guidance is only an assist system, and the driver is still responsible for operating the vehicle. This applies to steering in particular. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so you can be ready to steer at any time.

## Lane center guidance limitations and restrictions

If turns white, lane center guidance is on but not active on the side that is indicated. The following system limitations or situations are examples of when this could occur:
– The necessary lane marker lines cannot be detected (for example, in a construction zone or because the lines are obstructed by snow, dirt, water, or lighting).
– The lane is too narrow or too wide.
– A curve is too tight.
– Visibility is obstructed by a rise or dip.
– The turn signal was activated.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Steering take-over prompts from lane center guidance

### System limit reached

If is red, an audio signal sounds, and an animated warning message is displayed, then you must take over steering. A system limit has been reached, for example because the system's steering power is not sufficient in curves that are too tight. The system will become inactive after a short time and will only become available again later.

### No steering activity detected

If or turn on and a corresponding message appears, actively take over steering immediately. The take-over prompt may be accompanied by an animated warning message and by additional audio or visual signals, depending on the situation. Sufficient steering activity was not detected. Keep your hands on the steering wheel so you can be ready to steer at any time. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated. If you do not take over steering, lane center guidance will be canceled. If the vehicle is equipped with emergency assist and it is ready to function, it will be activated ⇨ *page 142*.

### Additional information

The take-over prompts may be accompanied by additional audio or visual signals, depending on the situation.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Lane center guidance messages

If or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the lane center guidance function may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the messages again, open the notification center in the central display. The weather ▶

conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115*. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Lane change assist

## Introduction

The function or equipment that is described was in development at the time this manual was published and may not be available in your vehicle.

Within system limitations, lane change assist can have the vehicle switch to an adjacent lane.

In addition to the adaptive cruise assist sensors, the system also uses the rear sensors on the corners of the vehicle, the parking sensors, and the cameras ⇨ *page 114, fig. 61*.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Using lane change assist

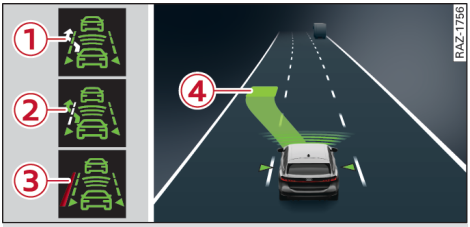



**Fig. 74** Instrument cluster: lane change assist display

### Display overview

The driving situation and the availability on the respective side are indicated in the instrument cluster and in the head-up display. The displays depend on the country / vehicle equipment.

① White arrow – the display for finding a gap appears if the turn signal is activated but no gap has been detected.

② Green arrow – the assisted lane change is being performed.

③ Red line – lane change assist was canceled. Actively take over steering immediately.

④ Estimated driving path with lane change assist active.

– The assisted lane change is being performed.

/ – Actively take over steering immediately. Lane change assist was canceled.

### Requirements

- Lane change assist is turned on in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.
- Certain assist systems must be turned on.
- Adaptive cruise assist must be actively regulating and lane center guidance must be on.
- You are driving on a highway or a road similar to a highway and the navigation system has recognized it. The map data in the navigation system must be updated regularly.
- The vehicle surroundings must be sufficiently detected by the surrounding area detection systems.

### Starting lane change assist

- To start lane change assist, activate the turn signal in the desired direction ⇨ ⚠.

When the assisted lane change is performed, the ②/④ display appears. During the lane change, the vehicle will automatically turn on the turn signal on the respective side of the vehicle.

If the turn signal lever was only been tapped and the lane change is now complete, the turn signal will automatically turn off.

If the turn signal lever was fully engaged, the turn signal must be turned off again after completing the lane change.

### Canceling manually

Lane change assist can be canceled at any time: ▶

- Press the brake pedal, or
- Take over steering, or
- Activate the turn signal on the opposite side, or
- Turn on the emergency flashers.

### Canceling automatically

Lane change assist is canceled automatically in the following situations:

- If system limitations were exceeded, or
- If an object was detected, or
- If changing to an adjacent lane is no longer possible, for example because it is no longer available, or
- If the adaptive cruise assist and lane center guidance are no longer actively regulating, or
- If the requirements for the system are no longer met, for example the surrounding area detection is insufficient.

### System limitations

– This system activates at speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h) and is not available at very high speeds.
– The system is not available when towing a trailer. There is no guarantee the systems will turn off when using a retrofitted trailer hitch. Do not use these functions when towing a trailer.

### Additional information

Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so you can be ready to steer at any time. During hands-free driving, an assisted lane change can be performed without holding the steering wheel. (The function or equipment that is described was in development at the time this manual was published and may not be available in your vehicle) The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Focus on the traffic situation and the vehicle's surroundings when using lane change assist. To reduce the risk of an accident, the driver must always be responsible for assessing the traffic situation.
– Lane change assist is only an assist function, and the driver still has responsibility for lane changes and steering.

### Lane change assist steering take-over prompt

If the or display and a corresponding message appears, actively take over steering immediately. Lane change assist was automatically or manually canceled.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

### Lane change assist messages

If or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the messages again, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115*. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

## Assisted hands-free driving

### Introduction

The function or equipment that is described was in development at the time this manual was published and may not be available in your vehicle.

Assisted hands-free driving is an enhancement to the steering support provided by lane center ▶

guidance. As soon as the system is available, the driver may temporarily remove their hands from the steering wheel. Driving assistance is provided within the limitations of the system. The driver must monitor the vehicle and its surroundings at all times and be ready to intervene in the driving process at any time. The system uses the driver monitoring camera to help prevent misuse of the hands-free driving system and provide alerts if misuse is detected.

Only use hands-free driving if the applicable legal regulations allow it. Usage of the system may be prohibited or restricted depending on the country or location. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Activating and deactivating assisted hands-free driving

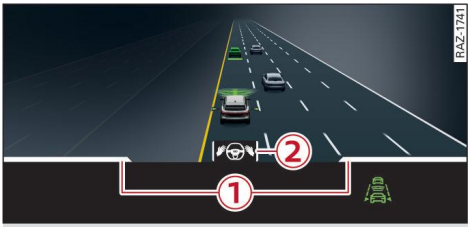



**Fig. 75** Instrument cluster: hands-free driving available/on

The driving situation and the availability of hands-free driving are indicated in the instrument cluster and in the head-up display. The displays depend on the vehicle equipment.

① White display: hands-free driving is available.
Green display: hands-free driving is active.
Flashing green display: distraction detected.
Flashing yellow or red display: you must intervene. The steering take-over prompt is providing an alert.

② Hands-free driving is available.
Hands-free driving is active.

### Requirements

The following requirements, among others, must be met to use hands-free driving:

- Hands-free driving is turned on in the **Driver assistance** ⇨ *page 116* menu.
- Certain assist systems must be turned on.
- Adaptive cruise assist must be actively regulating and lane center guidance must be on.
- The navigation system has detected a highway or similar road. The map data in the navigation system must be updated regularly.
- There are no traffic signs that are unusual for highways and no pedestrians within the relevant field of view for surrounding area detection.
- The vehicle surroundings must be sufficiently detected by the surrounding area detection systems.

### Activating and deactivating

If the requirements are met, the display will indicate that hands-free driving is available ①.

- To activate hands-free driving, take your hands off the steering wheel and do not press the accelerator or brake pedal again. The displays ① and ② in green and an audio signal will indicate that the function is activated.
- To deactivate hands-free driving and resume driving, hold the steering wheel and press the accelerator pedal or brake pedal as needed.

### Distraction detection

The driver is still responsible for monitoring the surroundings and safe operation of the vehicle. The driver monitoring camera evaluates driver availability based on certain criteria and enables activation of hands-free driving. If the driver monitoring camera detects distraction, the display ① will flash green, and the display and a message will appear. Always focus on the driving situation. Otherwise, the system will request you to take over the vehicle or the system may deactivate.

### System limitations

– The system is not available at very low or very high speeds.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Hands-free driving assists you with steering the vehicle on supported multi-lane roads so that you can temporarily remove your hands from the steering wheel. For safety reasons, you must focus on the road and traffic situation at all times and actively take over steering again if necessary by placing your hands on the steering wheel. The driver is still responsible for resuming control of steering.
– When using hands-free driving, focus on the traffic situation and the vehicle's surroundings. To reduce the risk of an accident, the driver must always be responsible for assessing the traffic situation.

## Assisted hands-free driving take-over prompt

### Take-over prompt

Visual, audio, and haptic warnings will be given in stages to request the driver to take over the vehicle.

– The displays ① ⇨ *page 131, fig. 75* will flash yellow or red
– or will appear or flash
– A corresponding message will appear
– Tugs on the safety belt
– Activation of the brakes
– Other audio and visual signals

If the take-over prompt appears, then you must take control of the steering wheel and immediately take over active driving. To signal that you are taking over control of the vehicle, hold the steering wheel with both hands.

Assisted hands-free driving uses the driver monitoring camera to alert about misuse of the system and prevent it in the future, if possible.

Some safety measures may not be initiated, depending on the severity of the detected situation and the vehicle equipment. Certain measures may be modified or omitted if possible.

### Situations that may result in a take-over prompt

– The conditions for turning on the system are no longer met.
– The driver monitoring camera detects distraction.
– An unclear traffic situation is detected, such as border crossings or turn lanes.
– A curve is too tight.
– The necessary lane marker lines cannot be detected (for example, in a construction zone or because the lines are obstructed by snow, dirt, water, or lighting).
– The lane is too narrow or too wide.
– When lanes are merging or ending.
– A pedestrian or traffic sign that is unusual for highways was detected.
– The ESC is actively engaging.
– A door was opened or a safety belt was unfastened.

### Situations without a take-over prompt

In some situations, you must immediately take over active steering, even if the system is ready and no take-over prompt is given:

– If space for emergency vehicles must be created.
– If there are emergency signals, such as police or fire sirens, or if emergency vehicles are nearby.
– If there are unusual road conditions, such as sloping road surfaces or ruts.
– If you are approaching a toll station.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, always pay attention to all displays and warnings included in the take-over prompt and react to them.

## Assisted hands-free driving messages

If or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the adaptive cruise assist functions may be unavailable or limited. ▶

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the messages again, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115*. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Cruise control systems

## Adaptive cruise control

### Introduction

**Adaptive cruise control** assists you when driving by regulating the set speed within the limitations of the system. If a vehicle traveling ahead is detected, adaptive cruise control can brake and accelerate your vehicle, and maintain the set distance to the vehicle ahead as much as possible, within the limitations of the system.

In **stop-and-go traffic and in traffic jams**, the system can brake the vehicle to a full stop and then, under certain conditions, automatically start driving again.

Depending on vehicle equipment, **predictive speed adjustment** can adjust the speed to various situations.

Depending on vehicle equipment, **lane center guidance** can assist.

#### Information about declarations of conformity

The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 293*.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

### System limitations of the adaptive cruise control

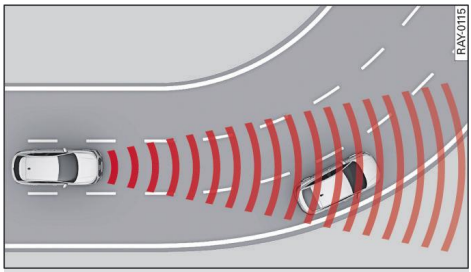



**Fig. 76** Example: driving into a curve

In some situations, the adaptive cruise control function is limited and you must assume control of the vehicle when necessary, for example by applying the brakes:

- When driving into a curve ⇨ *fig. 76* and out of a curve, the system may respond to a vehicle in the adjacent lane and apply the brakes. You can override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal briefly.
- The system works with the various sensors and cameras in the vehicle. Vehicles can only be detected once they are within the detection area and range covered by the sensors.
- When driving through tight curves, a vehicle traveling ahead that was previously detected may no longer be detected, and the adaptive cruise control may accelerate unexpectedly.
- The system does not respond to a stationary vehicle in the same lane if it expects that you can easily drive around the stationary vehicle by turning the steering wheel.
- The system does not respond to people, animals, or objects that are crossing or approaching from the opposite direction.
- The system cannot respond to stationary obstacles, such as vehicles at the end of a traffic jam, especially when traveling at high speeds.
- The system has a limited ability to detect vehicles that are traveling a short distance ahead, off to the side of your vehicle, or moving into your lane.
- Objects traveling ahead that are difficult to detect, such as motorcycles, vehicles with high ground clearance, or vehicles with an ▶

overhanging load, may be detected late or not detected at all.
– The system cannot be turned off or it may be interrupted if the road exceeds the maximum possible grade for safe operation.
– Regulation by the adaptive cruise control is only available when the ESC and ASR are turned on and ready to function. Turn the systems on beforehand, if necessary.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Overview of adaptive cruise control displays

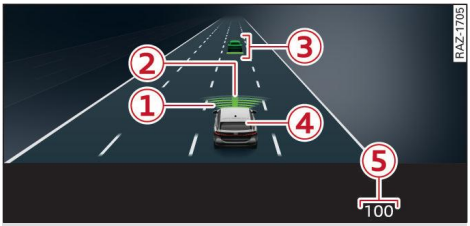



**Fig. 77** Instrument cluster: display overview in the area view

The driving situation and the settings are displayed in the instrument cluster and in the head-up display. The displays depend on the country / vehicle equipment.

### Display overview in the area view

The area view only appears if it was selected in the instrument cluster.

① Display for active distance control
② A vehicle traveling ahead was detected. The green highlight faces toward the vehicle for which the system is currently adjusting.
③ Highlight on the vehicle for which the system is adjusting
④ Your vehicle
⑤ Set speed

### Indicator lights

– The speed/distance control is active. No vehicles traveling ahead were detected. The stored speed is maintained.

– The speed/distance control is active. A vehicle traveling ahead was detected. The system controls the speed and distance from the vehicle traveling ahead, and accelerates and brakes automatically.

– The speed/distance control is active, but the vehicle is **not ready to drive**. A vehicle traveling ahead was detected. Your vehicle is stationary and will not start driving automatically.

– The speed/distance control is active, but the vehicle is **not ready to drive**. No vehicles traveling ahead were detected. Your vehicle is stationary and will not start driving automatically.

– The vehicle has been stationary for too long and is not ready to drive. The display and a message indicate that the ready to drive status can be activated again.

– Take over. The brake take-over prompt or the safe start monitor is providing a warning.

– The speed/distance control is temporarily overridden or interrupted.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Operating adaptive cruise control

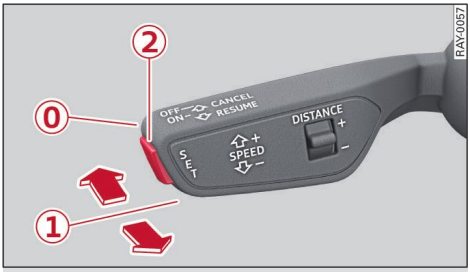



**Fig. 78** Lever: operating adaptive cruise control

**Fig. 79** Lever: changing the speed

⓪ The system is turned off when the lever is engaged in this position.

① The system is turned on when the lever is engaged in this position.

② SET Set the current speed as the cruise control speed and activate regulation.

### Turning on

- To turn on adaptive cruise control, pull the lever up to position ① until it engages.

### Storing the speed and activating regulation

If you have turned the system on, you can set the current speed as the cruise control speed and activate regulation.

- Press the SET button ②. The set speed is displayed ⑤ ⇨ *page 134, fig. 77*.
- To store the speed while the vehicle is stationary, also hold the brake pedal down.

If a vehicle traveling ahead is detected, the system regulates the vehicle's speed and distance according to the vehicle traveling ahead and accelerates or brakes automatically within the limitations of the system.

If no vehicle is detected traveling ahead, the set speed is maintained as far as possible.

You can set any speed between 15 mph (20 km/h) and the maximum possible speed range (depending on the country and drive system). If you try to store the current speed and it is below the minimum speed that can be set, the minimum speed will be set as the cruise control speed. If no vehicle is detected ahead of you, the vehicle will accelerate up to that speed.

### Pausing cruise control

The control can be stopped at any time:

- While driving or when the vehicle is stationary: press the lever away from you in the direction of the arrow **CAN**, or
- While driving: Press the brake pedal.

### Resuming cruise control

The previously set speed can be resumed at any time after a pause.

- To resume cruise control, pull the lever toward you in the direction of the arrow **RES**.
- To resume cruise control while the vehicle is stationary, hold the brake pedal down as well.

### Temporarily overriding control

- To override the cruise control for a short time and to accelerate, press the accelerator pedal.

Distance control is not active.

### Changing the set speed

- To change the set speed in small increments, briefly tap the lever toward ⊕ or ⊖ to the first level.
- To change the set speed in large increments, briefly tap the lever toward ⊕ or ⊖ to the second level.
- To continuously change the speed, hold the lever toward ⊕/⊖ to the first or second level until the desired speed is set.

Applies to: vehicles with predictive speed adjustment: The cruise control speed is adjusted proactively to various situations ⇨ *page 140*. ▶

### Preselecting a speed

You can also preselect the speed when adaptive cruise control is not active by tapping the lever in the desired direction ⊕/⊖. Activate the previously selected speed by pulling the lever toward you in the direction of the arrow **RES**.

### Turning off

If you do not want to use the adaptive cruise control for a longer period of time, you can turn it off.

▸ Push the lever away from you into position ⓪ until it clicks into place.

### Additional information

– If you turn the vehicle or the adaptive cruise control off, the stored speed is erased for safety reasons.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Adaptive cruise control is only an assist system, and the driver is still responsible for vehicle operation. The driver is especially responsible for braking, steering, starting to drive, and controlling the speed and the distance from other vehicles.
– You should only activate adaptive cruise control if the visibility, weather, road, and traffic conditions permit.
– Resting your foot on the accelerator pedal could override the cruise control. Braking interventions and corrective actions by the system may not occur.
– Turn off adaptive cruise control temporarily when driving in turn lanes or highway exits. This prevents the vehicle from accelerating to the stored speed when in these situations.

## Brake take-over prompt from the adaptive cruise control

If the braking performance by the system is not sufficient, a display will indicate that you need to take over. The ⚠ or ⚠ also turn on. Apply the brakes to maintain a sufficient distance to the vehicle traveling ahead ⇨ ⚠!

The take-over prompt may be accompanied by additional audio or visual warnings, depending on the situation.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Adaptive cruise control is only an assist system, and the driver is still responsible for vehicle operation. The driver is especially responsible for braking and maintaining the distance to other vehicles.

## Setting the distance control

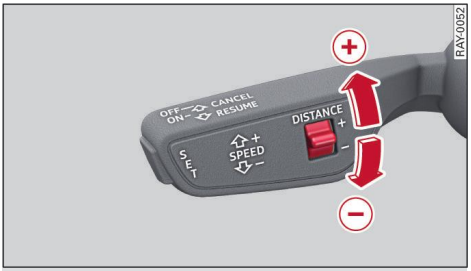



**Fig. 80** Lever: setting the distance

When approaching a vehicle traveling ahead, adaptive cruise control brakes to the set speed within the limitations of the system and then maintains the set distance. If the vehicle traveling ahead accelerates, adaptive cruise control will also accelerate up to the speed that you have set.

▸ Tap the rocker switch to display the distance that is currently set.
▸ To change the set distance by one increment, tap the switch again toward ⊕ or ⊖.

When setting the distance, the driver is responsible for adhering to any applicable legal regulations.

If you adjust the speed, you must also change the time gap to the vehicle traveling ahead. The new distance that is set will be displayed briefly. The ▸

higher the speed, the greater the distance that is needed. The following distances can be set:

| Symbol | Time distance | Distance at 62 mph (100 km/h) |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Approximately 1 second | Approximately 92 feet (28 m) |
| 2 | Approximately 1.3 seconds | Approximately 118 feet (36 m) |
| 3 | Approximately 1.8 seconds (the setting corresponds to a distance that is "half of the vehicle speed") | Approximately 164 feet (50 m) |
| 4 | Approximately 2.4 seconds | Approximately 219 feet (67 m) |
| 5 | Approximately 3.6 seconds | Approximately 328 feet (100 m) |

The distances provided are specified values. Depending on the driving situation and the driving style of the vehicle traveling ahead, the actual distance may be more or less than these target distances.

If the hazard information function (depending on vehicle equipment) detects a hazardous area, the system can increase the distance automatically.

### Driving performance during assisted driving

Depending on vehicle equipment, the adaptive cruise control performance and the haptic feedback from lane center guidance may change based on the following circumstances:

– The set distance, or
– The selected Audi drive select mode, or
– The individual driving performance settings in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

### Save last distance setting

In the **Driver assistance** menu, you can select ⇨ *page 116* if the last set distance is stored. If the distance is not stored, distance 3 is automatically preselected every time the vehicle is turned on.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Driving in stop-and-go traffic

### Stopping with adaptive cruise control

Adaptive cruise control also assists you in stop-and-go traffic. If a vehicle traveling ahead stops, the system brakes the vehicle and it keeps it at a stop, within the limitations of the system.

### Starting to drive with adaptive cruise control

As long as the ready to drive message is displayed, your vehicle will begin driving automatically when the vehicle traveling ahead starts to move ⇨ ⚠. The time remaining can be shown with the display.

If you have turned on the driver monitoring camera in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116* and it detects that you are focused, then the ready to drive status can be prolonged.

If your vehicle is stopped for too long, it will not begin driving again automatically for safety reasons. A message indicates that the vehicle is no longer ready to drive and the display in front of the vehicle 1 turns off ⇨ *page 134, fig. 77*.

- To extend ready to drive status for a brief time or to reactivate it, pull the lever toward you briefly in the direction of the arrow **RES** ⇨ *page 135, fig. 78*.
- To resume control of the vehicle immediately, tap the accelerator pedal.

The RES display and a message indicate that the ready to drive status can be activated again.

### Safe start monitor

The vehicle can still start to drive even if certain obstacles are detected when starting to drive ⇨ ⚠. If the surrounding area detection detects an obstacle, you will be alerted to the danger.

The or indicator light flashes and the message **Warning - obstacle!** appears. An audio signal will sound as well. Your vehicle will drive ▶

more slowly when starting. This may also occur in some situations when there is no apparent obstacle.

- Press the brake pedal to slow your vehicle if necessary.

This function is not available in some market-specific versions.

### Additional information

For safety reasons, adaptive cruise control only starts driving actively if:

– The driver's safety belt is fastened.
– All doors and the hood are closed
– The vehicle has not been stationary for a long period of time.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– If the ready to drive message is displayed, your vehicle will start driving even if there is an obstacle between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. To reduce the risk of an accident, always make sure there are no obstacles between your vehicle and the vehicle traveling ahead.

## Additional adaptive cruise control functions

Requirement: all additional, equipment-dependent functions require adaptive cruise control to be actively regulating.

### Overriding speed/distance control

- To override the speed/distance control for a short time, pull the lever ⇨ *page 135, fig. 78* in the direction of the arrow **RES** and hold it there.

If a vehicle traveling ahead is detected: Within the limitations of the system, the distance is temporarily reduced more than what was set. This makes it easier to merge into another lane, for example because of lane closures.

If no vehicle traveling ahead is detected: The vehicle accelerates faster and the cruise control speed is overridden. The set speed can also be exceeded, if necessary. Distance control remains active.

### Behavior when a turn signal is active (for merging)

Depending on the country/vehicle equipment: when you use the turn signal, for example when merging, then the system extends its area of control into the adjacent lane. When the function is active, adaptive cruise control will reduce the speed so that you can merge behind the next vehicle more easily ⇨ ⚠.

Requirements: the system is activated and has detected that you are driving on a highway, the difference in speed compared to other vehicles is sufficiently small, and the distance between the vehicles is great enough. The vehicles are driving in traffic that is flowing consistently.

- To activate the function, activate the turn signal in the direction of the lane in which you would like to merge.
- To cancel the function after a short period of time, turn off the turn signal. System control will be canceled immediately if you press the accelerator pedal.

The system will continue to maintain distance to the vehicle traveling ahead in your own lane, within the limitations of the system.

### Behavior when a turn signal is activated (for passing another vehicle)

If you activate the turn signal and adaptive cruise control anticipates a passing maneuver, it can accelerate before changing lanes and reduce the distance to the vehicle traveling ahead. This happens automatically if you are driving behind a vehicle and you activate the turn signal to pass.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– The additional functions are only intended to provide assistance. If you use the ▶

functions, the driver is still responsible for vehicle operation. The driver is especially responsible for changing lanes, applying the brakes, controlling the speed, and maintaining the distance to other vehicles.

### Adaptive cruise control messages

If or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the adaptive cruise control functions may be unavailable or limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the messages again, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115*. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

## Predictive speed adjustment

### Introduction

The predictive speed adjustment adapts the speed maintained by the adaptive cruise assist to the speed limits that are detected and the layout of the road ahead.

After adjustment to such an event has ended, adaptive cruise assist will once again accelerate to the applicable speed limit or to the recommended speed for the respective road.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the system may access data from the navigation system, the camera behind the windshield, and the radar sensors.

#### Information about declarations of conformity

The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 293*.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

### Predictive speed adjustment display overview

Depending on the country/vehicle equipment, symbols indicate the situation to which predictive speed adjustment is reacting:

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| 50 | Speed limit.<br>The appearance of the symbol may vary. |
| | Speed limit removed |
| | Curve |
| | Entrance ramp |
| | Exit |
| | Intersection |
| | Traffic circle |
| | Speed bump or unevenness in the road |
| | Right-of-way |
| STOP | Stop sign with detected stop line.<br>The appearance of the symbol may vary. |
| STOP! | If the display is green and white, a stop sign was detected, but not a stop line. Apply the brakes to brake the vehicle yourself ⇨ ⚠ *in Using predictive speed adjustment on page 141*. |

The area between the vehicle and the upcoming situation can also be shown in green in the instrument cluster. ▶

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Using predictive speed adjustment

### Requirements

– Adaptive cruise assist must be actively regulating.
– The map content of the navigation system must be updated regularly in order for the system to work without restrictions ⇨ *page 202*.
– The MMI must be connected to the Internet for some adjustments.

### Temporarily overriding control

You can override predictive control at any time by pressing the accelerator pedal. The adjustment to speed limits can also be adjusted using the lever ⇨ *page 135, fig. 78*.

### Adjustment to speed limits

The adjustment to speed limits can be turned on or off in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*. If desired, an **Adjustment with tolerance** is possible. In this scenario, you may drop below or exceed the cruise control speed in favor of increased efficiency. This means that there may be a delay before reaching the speed limit ahead.

### Manually or automatically adjusting based on speed limits

Depending on the vehicle equipment, in the **Driver assistance** menu, you can select ⇨ *page 116* if the adjustment based speed limits should happen automatically, or if the driver should manually confirm it each time.

– To confirm and manually apply the adjustment based on a detected speed limit, pull the lever ⇨ *page 135, fig. 78* toward you briefly in the direction of the arrow **RES**.

### Adjustment to curves along route

The adjustment to curves along the route can be turned on or off in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*. The setting has an influence on the predictive control driving performance. You can also set the speed when driving through curves.

### Adjustment to right-of-way

The adjustment to right-of-way, for example for detected stop signs and yield signs, can be turned on or off in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

### Adjustment to uneven road conditions

The speed adjustment can be turned on or off in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116* if speed bumps or uneven road conditions are detected.

### System limitations

– Based on the limitations of the system, the system may not respond to individual speed limits.
– Some adjustments are not available in certain driving situations or when driving too fast.
– The system does not react to traffic lights, which increases the risk of an accident.

### Additional information

– Predictive control can exceed or drop below the maximum permitted speed. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the permitted speed limits.
– The traffic signs and traffic lights on the road always take precedence over the display. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
– If a speed limit is detected, the set speed is adjusted, even if adaptive cruise assist is not actively regulating.
– Depending on vehicle equipment, the vehicle may temporarily drop below or exceed the set speed due to recuperation.
– Control by the system depends on the adaptive cruise assist driving performance that was set or on the selected Audi drive select mode, if the vehicle is equipped with this feature.
– Depending on the country: after turning on the vehicle, a speed of 80 mph (130 km/h) is automatically set when first driving onto a freeway ▶

or similar road, as long as no speed limits are detected and a different speed is not set.
– Depending on the country: if the driver has set a speed above 80 mph (130 km/h) when traveling on highways or similar roads, then the vehicle will accelerate back up to that speed again once adjustment based on an event has ended.
– There is no adaptation to speed limits when driving through highway interchanges and when driving on or off the expressway.
– The system can fail to provide control or the control may be faulty if the values from the camera-based traffic sign recognition are incorrect or the navigation system map data is incorrect or outdated.
– When route guidance is turned on, the system adapts to the route provided by the navigation system. Driving without route guidance or leaving a route can result in faulty control.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Predictive control is only an assist system, and the driver is still responsible for operating the vehicle. This is especially true when braking and when observing the rules about the right-of-way.
– Pay attention to traffic and the area around your vehicle when predictive control is turned on. To reduce the risk of an accident, the driver must always be responsible for assessing the traffic situation.
– The speed when driving through curves may be different from what you as a driver would do or may not be suitable for the weather and road conditions. If necessary, apply the brakes and reduce the selected speed to be maintained in the **Adjustment to curves along route** setting to reduce the risk of an accident.

# Combined assist systems

## Adaptive cruise assist

### Introduction

Depending on the vehicle equipment, adaptive cruise assist enhances the functionality of adaptive cruise control by including predictive speed adjustment and lane center guidance. The name of the system may differ depending on vehicle equipment.

The displays about availability and status correspond to the respective systems. Please note the respective descriptions and system limitations.

#### Information about declarations of conformity

The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 293*.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Adaptive cruise assist is only an assist system, and the driver is still responsible for vehicle operation. The driver is especially responsible for braking, steering, starting to drive, and controlling the speed and the distance from other vehicles.
– Turn on adaptive cruise assist only if the surrounding conditions permit it. Always adapt your driving style to the current visual, weather, road, and traffic conditions.
– Turn off adaptive cruise assist temporarily when driving in turning lanes or highway exits. This prevents the vehicle from accelerating to the stored speed when in these situations.

### Pairing lane center guidance with adaptive cruise assist

You can pair the activation of the lane center guidance with the activation/deactivation of the distance/speed control in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 141*. ▶

Pairing on: lane center guidance will turn on or off when distance/speed control is activated or deactivated.

Pairing off: lane center guidance can be turned on or independently from the activated distance/speed control.

Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so you can be ready to steer at any time. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

### Adaptive cruise assist messages

If or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the adaptive cruise assist functions may be unavailable or limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the messages again, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115*. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Braking and evasive action systems

## Emergency assist

### Introduction

Within the limitations of the system, emergency assist can detect inactivity from the driver. The system automatically activates in this case. The driver is given visual, audio, and haptic prompts to take over the vehicle. If the driver does not take over, the system assumes control of the vehicle within the limitations of the system and is able to bring the vehicle to a stop.

**WARNING**

- Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- The emergency assist is an assist system that should only be used in cases of emergency to take over control of the vehicle and bring it to a stop. If the system activates when you do not want it to, stop the emergency assist.
- Emergency assist is not designed to avoid collisions with structural road boundaries, such as concrete barriers.

### Emergency assist measures and availability

#### Emergency assist measures

The vehicle can intervene within the limitations of the system. Some safety measures may not be initiated, depending on the severity of the detected situation and the vehicle equipment. Certain measures may be modified or omitted if possible. The following measures can be initiated in stages:

- Visual and audio warnings
- Assistance with vehicle control by means of distance control and lane center guidance
- Reduction of vehicle speed in stages
- Lowering of the Infotainment system volume
- Tugs on the safety belt
- Activation of the brakes
- Activation of the emergency flashers
- Triggering of protective measures from the proactive occupant protection
- Repeated honking of the vehicle horn
- Application of the brakes until the vehicle is stationary

Once the vehicle has come to a stop, the parking brake will be set, the “P” position will be engaged, the doors will be unlocked, and the interior lights will be turned on. After the vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, an emergency call ▶

will be started (this function not available in all markets and on all vehicle equipment levels).

### Emergency assist availability

If the emergency assist is turned on, then it is

– Automatically available regardless of speed when lane center guidance is active
– Available at speeds of approximately 40 mph (65 km/h) and higher when lane center guidance is not active
– Available starting at low speeds when the fatigue warning (depending on the country) and the driver monitoring camera (depending on the country) are turned on.

### System limitations

The emergency assist may be restricted or unavailable in situations such as the following:

– If one of the requirements needed for adaptive cruise control, lane center guidance, or the lane departure warning is no longer met.
– If the emergency assist was triggered, the system will be available again after a brief time.

### Display overview

If inactivity is detected, the system provides a warning using the display and a related message.

The display from the emergency assist indicates that the distance control and a braking intervention are active.

The display from the emergency assist indicates that distance control, a braking intervention, and lane center guidance are active.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Operating emergency assist

### Activating automatically

Emergency assist is automatically activated if driver inactivity is detected within the limitations of the system.

When driving manually without steering assist systems, the time until driver inactivity is detected can be set by adjusting the sensitivity. The sensitivity can be set in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*. Low sensitivity means that the emergency assist is activated later when driving manually without steering assist systems.

### Canceling emergency assist

The following are examples of situations where emergency assist can be canceled:

– If you move the steering wheel
– If you press the brake pedal
– If you clearly press the accelerator pedal

When stationary, you can end emergency assist by shifting out of the "P" position or releasing the parking brake ⇨ *page 99*.

If you have canceled the system, the symbol and a corresponding message will appear.

### Turning the emergency assist on or off

You can turn emergency assist on or off in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

If you turn off the system, the symbol and a corresponding message will appear.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Emergency assist messages

If or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the emergency assist functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the additional information, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115*. Check if the malfunction is still occurring the next time you turn on the vehicle.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service ▶

Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Active front assist

## Introduction

Active front assist can detect impending collisions and initiate collision avoidance measures, within the limitations of the system. A display in the instrument cluster will inform you when there is an intervention from the active front assist.

In certain driving situations, additional measures may be triggered by the proactive occupant protection to protect passengers.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Active front assist functions

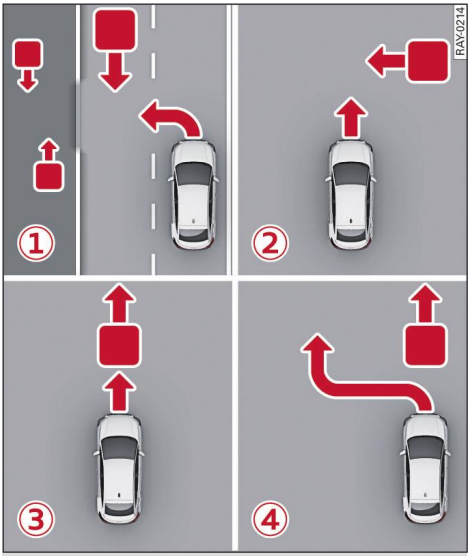



**Fig. 81** Active front assist functions (examples)

The active front assist can initiate collision avoidance measures in the following driving situations, within the limitations of the system.

① **When turning, an object is coming toward you or crossing the road onto which you are turning**

A system intervention when turning is possible as soon as the vehicle is driving.

If you are driving at approximately 20 mph (30 km/h), the system can detect and respond to the following objects:

– Oncoming vehicles in the opposite lane
– Road users crossing the road (such as pedestrians or cyclists)

② **An object is crossing the vehicle's path**

A system intervention in response to objects that are crossing is possible as soon as the vehicle is driving.

Depending on your vehicle's speed as listed below, the system can detect and respond to the following objects:

– Up to approximately 40 mph (65 km/h): vehicles crossing
– Up to approximately 50 mph (85 km/h): road users crossing (such as pedestrians or cyclists)

③ **You encounter an object in your lane**

A system intervention in response to objects in your lane is possible from a speed of approximately 3 mph (5 km/h).

Depending on your vehicle's speed as listed below, the system can detect and respond to the following objects:

– Up to approximately 65 mph (105 km/h): approaching cyclists and vehicles.
– Up to approximately 70 mph (120 km/h): stationary or moving cyclists and pedestrians.
– Up to approximately 155 mph (250 km/h): vehicles braking slowly or quickly, or stationary vehicles

④ **You must swerve to avoid an object in your lane**

Assistance when swerving is possible at speeds of approximately 20 mph (30 km/h) and higher. ▶

Depending on your vehicle's speed as listed below, the system can detect the following objects and assist when swerving:

– Up to approximately 50 mph (85 km/h): stationary or slow-moving pedestrians or cyclists
– Up to approximately 90 mph (150 km/h): vehicles braking slowly or quickly, or stationary vehicles

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Active front assist system limitations

The following are examples of cases where active front assist may be restricted or unavailable:

– When driving around tight curves or during dynamic maneuvers
– When towing a trailer
– When driving in reverse
– If the brake lights are faulty
– If there is an airbag control module malfunction
– If there is a malfunction in the sensors or the front camera
– If there is a malfunction in the ESC, or if the ESC is limited or turned off
– When towing
– In the "P" position.
– If there is a steering system malfunction.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Active front assist cannot overcome the laws of physics. It is a system designed to assist and it cannot prevent a collision in every situation. The driver must always intervene. The driver is always responsible for braking in a timely manner. Do not let the increased safety provided cause you to take risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
– Among other things, active front assist does not respond to animals and certain objects such as walls, posts, guardrails, rail vehicles, and trash cans.
– Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.
– When a system intervenes, there is a risk of injury, especially if an individual is not sitting correctly in the seat or if the safety belt is not fastened. Make sure that each person in the vehicle has their safety belt fastened correctly and follows the instructions for proper seating ⇨ *page 59*.
– When towing a trailer, the braking behavior of the vehicle and trailer may be different than usual during automatic braking. If there is a high trailer tongue weight, the reaction from the active front assist may be limited or the system may be unavailable.

## Overview of collision avoidance measures

Depending on the severity of the detected situation, not all safety measures will be initiated. Certain functions may be modified or skipped if necessary.

The active front assist functions are not available if ⊘⚠ is shown in the central display, for example if braking interventions are temporarily deactivated.

### Visual warnings

A display and associated message appear in the instrument cluster, depending on the measure that is initiated and the risk situation.

The display appears if one of the following measures is triggered:

– Collision warning
– A brief application of the brakes
– Automatic braking force increase
– Automatic braking

The display appears if swerve assist or automatic emergency steering is active. ▶

### Cross-traffic information

If road users crossing the vehicle's path are detected, the display appears in the instrument cluster and, if necessary, in the head-up display. If the parking system is activated, the display also appears in the central display.

### Collision warning

If a possible collision risk is detected, you will be informed of the danger with a visual and audio warning.

### A brief application of the brakes

If a collision is imminent, there may be an acute warning using a brief application of the brakes. You may only be able to avoid a collision by swerving or braking strongly.

### Automatic braking force increase

If there is an impending collision and you are not applying the brakes enough, the braking force may be increased, depending on the situation.

### Automatic braking

To avoid a collision or to reduce the impact speed in the event of a possible collision, the system may strongly apply the vehicle brakes within the limitations of the system. If the brakes were applied until the vehicle was brought to a stop, the vehicle will be kept stationary. If the vehicle cannot be kept stationary, a message will appear and you must take over control of the vehicle.

### Automatic emergency steering

If the system detects that a frontal collision is imminent, the vehicle can initiate a swerving maneuver within its own driving lane if there are no obstacles in area where it will swerve. During the swerving maneuver, there is an automatic steering intervention and the vehicle may also brake, depending on the situation. There will also be a warning tone and a display in the instrument cluster. The driver remains responsible for maintaining control of the vehicle during the entire swerving maneuver.

### Swerve assist

If you actively swerve to avoid an obstacle after the acute warning, swerve assist provides assistance with your steering movements. As long as you are actively steering, the brakes are applied to individual wheels and a slight steering adjustment is made to stabilize and, if necessary, correct the swerving maneuver. The driver remains responsible for maintaining control of the vehicle during the entire swerving maneuver.

## Operating active front assist

### Overriding active front assist

You can cancel collision avoidance measures that have been started by clearly pressing the accelerator pedal or by steering.

### Adjusting active front assist

You can turn the active front assist and certain collision avoidance measures on or off and adjust their settings in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

If the system is turned off, it will turn on again automatically the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the system is turned off, the indicator light will turn on and a message will appear.

The active front assist can intervene during assisted parking or when exiting a parking space, even if the active front assist has been turned off beforehand. If active front assist had been turned off, it will remain off after assisted parking or exiting a parking space ends.

## Handling unwanted system interventions

In certain situations, the system may intervene when you do not want it to.

Audi recommends turning off active front assist in the following situations:

– If you are using the vehicle off public roads.
– If the vehicle is being towed or loaded.
– After a forceful impact to components near the radar sensors, for example after a rear-end collision.

– If the radar sensors or the camera are faulty, or the windshield is damaged in the area of the camera's field of view.
– If the system is triggered multiple times when you do not want it to be.

**WARNING**

Unwanted system interventions could result in an accident. Do not use the system in driving situations that can lead to unwanted system interventions.

## Active front assist messages

When starting the vehicle, the indicator light appears and signals that availability of the system is limited. The indicator light turns off once the system is available without restrictions.

If is displayed when there is a malfunction, active front assist and the distance warning are not available, or their functionality may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the additional information, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115*.

If the message still appears after turning the vehicle on again, have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized repair facility correct the malfunction as soon as possible.

# Rear turn assist

## Using rear turn assist

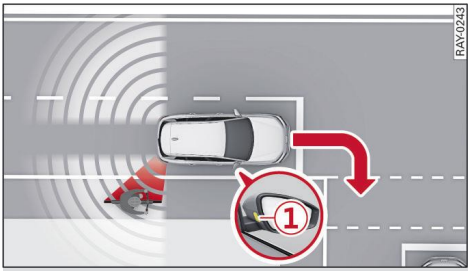



**Fig. 82** Driving situations and displays in the exterior mirror

### Introduction

Rear turn assist monitors the “blind spot” as well as the traffic behind your vehicle in the adjacent lanes and provides assistance when you are turning. If the system detects an object approaching and classifies it as critical, the display in the exterior mirror ① on that side of the vehicle will turn on.

### Driving situations

– Your vehicle is being passed. The faster another vehicle approaches from behind, the sooner the display in the exterior mirror will turn on.
– There are vehicles traveling in the same direction as you in a lane adjacent to yours. The display in the exterior mirror will turn on when the detected object is in the “blind spot”, at the latest.
– You are slowly passing another vehicle. If the difference in speed between the two vehicles is approximately 9 mph (15 km/h) or less, the display in the exterior mirror will turn on.
– Traffic on the adjacent driving lane will be monitored when exiting a parallel parking space with the turn signal activated. If an object moves closer, the display in the outside mirror will illuminate. The vehicle may perform emergency braking if the danger of a collision increases.

### Information stage

Once you activate the turn signal, the system will inform you about objects classified as critical by ▶

turning on the display in the respective exterior mirror (1).

The display remains dim in the information stage so that you are not distracted while looking forward.

### Warning stage

Once you activate a turn signal, the system will warn you about objects classified as critical with an increasing risk of collision by turning on the display in the respective exterior mirror. A warning tone sounds if the situation becomes more critical. You can also be warned with a brief application of the brakes or with emergency braking.

### Display in the instrument cluster

Rear turn assist (information and warning level) will be displayed in the instrument cluster, in addition to the display in the exterior mirror. The symbol is gray in the information stage and red in the warning stage.

### Turning rear turn assist off or on

You can turn rear turn assist off or on in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

### System limitations

Rear turn assist is active up to approximately 35 mph (60 km/h) when the turn signal is activated.

The system is not available at very low speeds.

The system uses data from the radar sensors at the corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 115*. They are designed to detect the left and right adjacent lanes when the road lanes are the normal width. In some situations, the system may respond to vehicles in your own lane or lanes that are not directly adjacent to yours, or to objects on the side of the road. In this case, the display will turn on even though there is no vehicle in the critical area. These situations may include:

– Driving on the edge of your own lane
– Narrow lanes
– Curves
– High barriers on the side of the road
– Construction zones

### Information about rear turn assist

– If the window glass in the driver's door or front passenger's door has been tinted, the display in the exterior mirror may be distorted.
– The coverage areas of the sensors ⇨ *page 119, fig. 66* are schematic representations and do not represent a true-to-scale image of the sensor ranges.

### Information about declarations of conformity

The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 293*.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– The display may not appear at all or it may not appear on time when vehicles are approaching or being passed very quickly.
– Rear turn assist does not respond to people. Always monitor the traffic situation as well as the vehicle's surroundings with direct eye contact.

## Rear turn assist messages

If or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the rear turn assist functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the additional information, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115*. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Other assist systems

## Predictive efficiency messages

### Introduction

Predictive efficiency messages can assist with proactive driving that reduces fuel consumption. Depending on vehicle equipment, the system may access data from the navigation system, the camera behind the windshield, and the radar sensors.

If you have turned on automatic recuperation and you remove your foot from the accelerator pedal, efficiency assist will regulate the recuperation and coasting phases based on the situation and depending on vehicle equipment.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

### Using predictive efficiency messages

#### Requirements

– The adaptive cruise control or adaptive cruise assist are not actively regulating.
– The remaining distance until the situation is reached must be large enough to allow the system to respond to the situation.

#### Display

The symbol appears in the instrument cluster display and in the head-up display when the efficiency assist recommends removing your foot from the accelerator pedal.

In the “S” driving program and on vehicles with Audi drive select, the wording of the messages may vary depending on the mode and the selector position that is selected.

Depending on vehicle equipment, symbols indicate the situation to which the system is responding:

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| 50 | Speed limit.<br>The appearance of the symbol may vary. |
| | Curve |
| | Exit.<br>The appearance of the symbol may vary. |
| | Intersection |
| | Traffic circle |
| % | Hills |
| | Vehicle traveling ahead |

#### Turning predictive efficiency messages on or off

You can turn predictive efficiency messages on or off in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

#### System limitations

– The functions depend on the navigation data being up-to-date and on the detection by the camera behind the windshield.
– The vehicle speed must be at least 20 mph (30 km/h).
– Aside from the road network, which is recorded in the navigation system’s map information, certain functions may not be available.

#### Additional information

– The display in the instrument cluster is based on the units of measurement used for speed in the country where the vehicle is being operated. As a result, a display of 50 in the instrument cluster can mean either mph or km/h, depending on the country.
– If a route is planned in vehicles with a navigation system, the system will display messages based on this planned route. Without route guidance, the system displays messages based on an assumed route.

– The traffic signs on the road always take priority over the display. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Pay attention to traffic and the area around your vehicle when efficiency assist is turned on. The driver is always responsible for assessing the traffic situation.
– In certain situations, recuperation may brake proactively. However, the recuperation braking effect is limited. Always be ready to brake to reduce the risk of an accident.

# Camera-based traffic sign recognition

## Introduction

Traffic sign recognition detects traffic signs using a camera behind the windshield and displays them in the instrument cluster and in the head-up display. Data from the navigation system is also included in the display.

Traffic sign recognition only informs and warns about speed limits. Depending on the vehicle equipment, additional driver assistance systems can set the vehicle speed.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Traffic sign recognition display

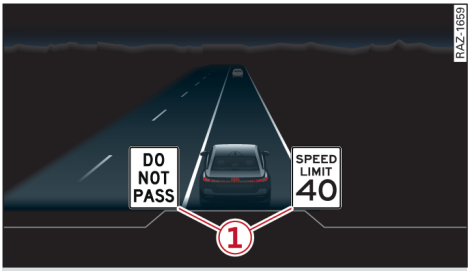



**Fig. 83** Instrument cluster: traffic sign recognition

The traffic signs that currently apply (1) are shown in the instrument cluster.

Within the limitations of the system and depending on the market, speed limit restrictions (1) in school zones, highways, construction zones, or at night may be displayed. The ••• appears if a limitation has not been detected clearly.

The display in the instrument cluster is based on the units of measurement used for speed in the country where the vehicle is being operated. The display can refer to either mph or km/h, depending on the country.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Traffic sign recognition system limitations

The traffic sign recognition is subject to certain system limitations and may be unavailable or only partially available in situations such as the following:

– The display/availability of certain traffic signs may be limited due to country-based restrictions.
– The vehicle speed is too high.
– The traffic signs are completely or partially obstructed, for example by trees, snow, dirt, or other vehicles.
– The traffic signs do not conform to design standards.
– The traffic signs are damaged or bent. ▶

– The traffic signs are displayed on sign holders with electronic signs.
– The traffic signs or the configuration of the road have changed and the navigation data is no longer up-to-date.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Under some circumstances, traffic sign recognition may not detect traffic signs correctly or detect them at all. As a result, the system may not display the correct speed limit or any speed limit, which increases the risk of an accident. Always adapt your speed to the current weather, road and traffic conditions.

## Adjusting traffic sign recognition settings

### Traffic sign-based speed warning

Depending on the country, there may still be a warning when the visual speed warning is turned off if hands-free driving is active.

You can turn the visual and audio speed warnings on or off in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*. If you have configured the steering wheel button assignment, press the ✱ button on the multifunction steering wheel to turn off the audio speed warnings.

The setting that was last used will be used again after restarting the vehicle.

**Warning threshold for exceeding the speed limit XXX** – You can set a warning threshold in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*. If you exceed this, then the current detected speed limit will be shown in the display with an exclamation point and it will blink continuously the entire time that the limit is exceeded. A warning tone may also sound for a short time, depending on the settings. The setting will be saved when restarting.

**Warning tone when exceeding the speed limit** – You can turn the audio warning tone for exceeding the speed limit on or off in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*. The setting that was last used will be used again after restarting the vehicle.

**Speed limit change tone** – You can turn the audio notification tone for speed limit changes on or off in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*. The setting that was last used will be used again after restarting the vehicle.

## Traffic sign recognition messages

If or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the camera-based traffic sign recognition functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution or that indicates that adjustments have been made to the speed warning may appear with some displays. To display the additional information, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or the camera behind the windshield may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the camera and try to turn the system on again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Hazard information

## Introduction

Your vehicle can receive, send, and display hazard information, depending on the country and vehicle equipment. The hazard information function can indicate the location of hazards, such as accidents and vehicle breakdowns on your route or near your vehicle. If vehicles traveling ahead detect a hazardous area and transmit the information online, then it can be received and displayed in your vehicle.

**WARNING**

Pay attention to traffic and the area around your vehicle when hazard information is displayed. The driver is always responsible for assessing the traffic situation. ▶

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

## Overview of hazard information displays

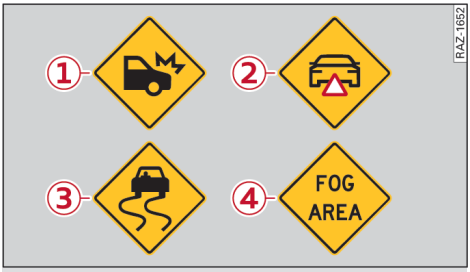



**Fig. 84** Hazard information warning symbols

The hazard information will be displayed for a few seconds in the instrument cluster, the central display, and the head-up display (if applicable) in the form of a warning symbol or a message.

The hazard information warning symbols may indicate various hazards near the vehicle.

| | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ① | Accident: the hazard information warns you about a vehicle accident. |
| ② | Vehicle breakdown: the hazard information warns you about a vehicle that has broken down. |
| ③ | Slippery conditions: the hazard information warns you about slippery or slick road conditions, for example. |
| ④ | Reduced visibility: the hazard information warns you of reduced visibility, for example due to fog or heavy rain. |

Depending on your speed, the type of road, and the hazardous area, the system may only show the most important hazard information.

Hazardous areas due to accidents, vehicle breakdowns, and slippery conditions are displayed on the map.

If route guidance is active, hazardous areas on your route are indicated with colored warning symbols on the map. Hazardous areas that are not on your route are indicated with grayed out warning symbols. If route guidance is not active, all hazardous areas are displayed in color on the map.

## Hazard information system limitations

The hazard information function is subject to the limitations of the system. Unrestricted use cannot be guaranteed in all traffic situations and driving operations. The availability depends on the following factors, among others:

– The vehicles traveling ahead have the technical capability to send hazard information.
– The vehicles traveling ahead have detected a hazardous area.
– The hazard information is sent correctly by the third party provider to your vehicle.

### Possible causes for hazardous areas that are not detected

– Accident: the vehicle involved in the accident did not make an emergency call.
– Vehicle breakdown: the emergency flashers were not activated in the vehicle that broke down.
– Risk of sliding: no reduced friction was detected between the tires and road surface of the vehicles traveling ahead.
– Limited visibility: the rear fog lights or windshield wipers in the vehicles traveling ahead were not turned on.

## Using hazard information

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet.

### Opening hazard information in the central display

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Navigation**.
▸ Press a warning symbol on the map to show the detailed view of the hazard information. ▶

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

# Proactive occupant protection

## Introduction

Proactive occupant protection can detect critical driving situations and initiate occupant protection measures, within the limitations of the system.

If the system initiates passenger protective measures, the display will appear in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the head-up display.

**WARNING**

- Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- Proactive occupant protection cannot overcome the laws of physics. It is a system designed to assist and it cannot prevent a collision. The driver must always intervene. The driver is always responsible for braking in a timely manner. Do not let the increased safety provided cause you to take risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.

## Proactive occupant protection functions

The proactive occupant protection function includes several sub-functions that can respond to various situations with occupant protection measures, within the limitations of the system.

### Proactive occupant protection

The basic proactive occupant protection function responds in critical driving situations, such as when understeering or oversteering, during emergency braking or braking using the electromechanical parking brake, or in the case of minor collisions. The system can respond at speeds above approximately 20 mph (30 km/h).

### Front proactive occupant protection

The front proactive occupant protection sub-function responds in the event that a collision in the front area of the vehicle is likely. The system can respond at speeds above approximately 9 mph (15 km/h).

### Rear proactive occupant protection

The rear proactive occupant protection sub-function responds in the event that a rear-end collision caused by the vehicle behind is likely. The system can respond at speeds up to approximately 155 mph (250 km/h).

### Side proactive occupant protection

The side proactive occupant protection sub-function responds in the event that a collision with a vehicle that is crossing or approaching from the side is likely. The system can respond when driving forward at speeds up to approximately 155 mph (250 km/h) or when driving in reverse at speeds up to approximately 12 mph (20 km/h).

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Proactive occupant protection system limitations

Proactive occupant protection and its sub-functions may be limited or unavailable in the following situations:

- If there are persons in the vehicle who are not using a safety belt
- When driving in reverse
- If there is an airbag control module malfunction
- If there is an active front assist malfunction
- If there is a side assist malfunction
- If there is a malfunction in the ESC, or if the ESC is limited or turned off
- When towing a trailer ▶

**WARNING**

- Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- The sub-functions of the rear proactive occupant protection and side proactive occupant protection do not respond to people, animals, and objects that are not detected as vehicles.

## Overview of proactive occupant protection

Depending on the hazardous situation that is detected and the selected Audi drive select mode, some occupant protection measures may not be initiated in certain situations. Certain functions may be modified or skipped if necessary.

Depending on the vehicle speed and the vehicle equipment, the following measures may be initiated in certain situations:

- Visual and audio warnings
- Reversible tensioning of safety belts
- Closing the windows.
- Adjusting the seats

## Proactive occupant protection messages

If or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the proactive occupant protection functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the additional information, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115*.

An Audi drive select mode that limits the function of the proactive occupant protection may be selected. If necessary, select a different Audi drive select mode.

If the message still appears after turning the vehicle on again, have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized repair facility correct the malfunction as soon as possible.

# Traffic light information

## Introduction

Within the limitations of the system, traffic light information may help to reduce stop-and-go traffic and contribute to a better flow of traffic. To help with this, you will be shown the optimal speed for reaching the next traffic light when it is green.

**WARNING**

- Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, never allow the traffic light information that is displayed to distract you from traffic. Always pay attention to the distance to other vehicles and your vehicle's surroundings. The driver is always responsible for assessing the traffic situation.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, do not disregard traffic laws and create a safety risk because of the traffic light information that is displayed. Always adapt your speed to the current weather, road and traffic conditions.

## Overview of traffic light information displays

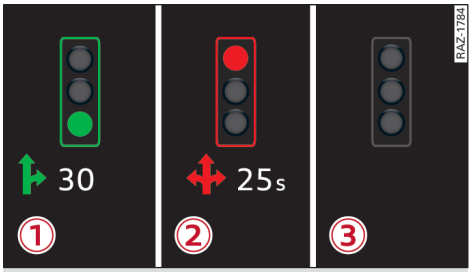



**Fig. 85** Instrument cluster: traffic light information display

Traffic light information gives you a recommended speed for reaching the next traffic light when it is green ①. You are also informed of the wait time at the next red traffic light ②. Once traffic light data is available, the traffic light information will be displayed in the instrument cluster ▶

and in the head-up display. When certain system limitations are reached, a gray traffic light symbol ③ will appear because a speed recommendation or the waiting time at the red traffic light cannot be displayed. This is the case, for example, when the distance to the traffic light is less than 100 feet (30m).

## Traffic light information system limitations

Traffic light information is subject to system limitations and may be unavailable or only partially available in the following situations:

– The maximum permitted speed was exceeded.
– You dropped below a certain speed.
– The next traffic light is less than approximately 100 feet (30 m) away.
– The wait time at a red traffic light is less than 4 seconds.
– No traffic light data is available.
– Outdated navigation system map content or navigation data is being used.
– Emergency response vehicles or public transit vehicles are given priority.
– The traffic lights are being serviced.
– The data connection was interrupted.
– The privacy settings in your vehicle are incompatible.
– The traffic light information license has expired.

### Information about traffic light information

The traffic light information is not available nationwide, but rather only in a few selected cities.

Certain traffic lights can automatically adjust to the current traffic situation. If this occurs, the display of traffic light information can change suddenly.

Outdated navigation system map content can result in missing, implausible, or incorrect information in the display.

The traffic signs on the road always take priority over the display. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

Regardless of the traffic light information, you should always monitor your speed using the speedometer and make sure you are adhering to the legal speed limit.

Units of measurement and language settings are displayed with the same settings that are selected in the MMI system settings.

## Turning traffic light information on or off

You can turn off **Traffic light information** in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

# Lap timer

## Information about the lap timer

You can record and evaluate lap times with the lap timer. Up to 99 laps can be recorded.

The laps driven are listed in the lap statistics. The fastest and slowest laps as well as the average lap time of all laps driven are also displayed.

You can retrieve information from the trip computer while the lap timer stopwatch is running.

**WARNING**

Your focus should always be on driving your vehicle safely. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. To reduce the risk of an accident, only use the lap timer functions in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.

## Using the lap timer

### Opening the lap timer

The lap timer is displayed in one of the left tabs in the instrument cluster.

▸ Press the / button on the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until S content is displayed.
▸ Turn the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel until **Lap times** is displayed.
▸ To confirm the selection, press the left thumbwheel. An additional indicator will appear in the head-up display. ▶

### Timing laps

- To start timing manually, select **Start lap 1**.
- To start timing automatically as soon as you begin to drive, select **Start lap 1 by driving off** or **Start by driving off**.
- To start timing a new lap after driving a lap, select **New lap**. This starts timing the next lap at the same time.

After completing a lap, the difference between the last lap and the previous best lap time will be indicated with a – or +. There may be discrepancies in the time differences calculated by the system due to rounding.

### Pausing timing and displaying a split time

- To insert a pause, select **Pause**.
- To resume timing, select **Resume**.
- To display a split time, select **Split time**. The current lap timing will continue running.
- To return to lap timing in progress, select **Press OK to go back**.

### Canceling lap timing

- Select **Cancel lap**. The lap time will be erased and will not be included in the statistics.

### Resetting the time

- Select **Reset lap times**.

### Exiting the lap timer

- Select **Back** to exit the lap timer.

### Opening the lap statistics

Requirement: two laps were already recorded.

- To open lap statistics, select **Lap statistics**.

The number of laps driven, the fastest lap +, the slowest lap –, and the average time ∅ are displayed.

- Select **Show all laps** to scroll through the list of individual lap times.
- To reset the lap statistics, select **Reset statistics**.

# Integrated Toll Module

## Introduction

Depending on the region, you can pay toll fees in certain countries using the Integrated Toll Module (ITM). It replaces a separate transponder for detecting toll fees. The ITM is located in the rearview mirror housing.

### Information about declarations of conformity

The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 293*.

## Setting up the Integrated Toll Module

To use the ITM in toll zones, you must register and activate it.

### Registration

- Select: > **Vehicle** > **More** > **Integrated Toll Module**.
- Note the Integrated Toll Module ID.
- To register the ITM, go to the displayed web address and follow the instructions.

If the rearview mirror is replaced, you must register the new ITM and remove the old ITM from the account.

### Activation and deactivation

The driver is responsible for activating or deactivating the ITM before starting each drive.

- To activate the ITM, press in the central display.
- To deactivate the ITM, press in the central display.

## Entering the number of passengers

A lower toll fee may be charged depending on the number of passengers and the region. You must either enter the number of passengers or deactivate the ITM based on the laws applicable in the area where you are driving. The driver is responsible for entering the correct number of passengers before starting each drive. ▶

- Select: ⊞ > **Vehicle** > **More** > **Integrated Toll Module**.
- To enter the number of passengers, select the applicable button.

## Integrated Toll Module display

The selected number of passengers is shown with the ITM symbol in the central display status bar.

The ITM symbol in the status bar will indicate if the connection between the ITM and the central display has been interrupted or if the ITM is faulty. If the connection remains interrupted or the ITM is faulty, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

## Integrated Toll Module troubleshooting

Toll collection can be disrupted if the ITM and another transponder are active at the same time. Deactivate or remove one of the systems.

# Parking systems

## Parking systems with distance display

### Introduction

Parking systems assist you when parking and maneuvering. If the ultrasonic sensors on the vehicle ⇨ *page 114, fig. 61* detect an obstacle, the system will indicate this with displays and audio warnings.

– **Parking system plus** warns the driver of obstacles in the front, rear, and side areas of the vehicle.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

### Parking system displays and warnings

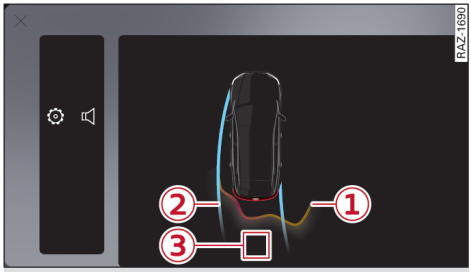



**Fig. 86** Central display: parking system with distance display

#### Displays

① The colored distance display shows you the distance to detected obstacles. The colored distance display moves closer to the vehicle when the distance to the obstacle decreases. If the distance to the obstacle becomes too small, the colored section changes to red. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⓘ.

② The light blue lines mark the expected direction of travel based on the steering angle.

③ The numerical distance display shows the distance to the obstacle as a numerical value. **Stop** is displayed if the distance to the obstacle in the vehicle's path is less than approximately 10 inches (30 cm). Do not continue driving forward or in reverse.

#### Audio warnings

The frequency of the audio signals will become faster as your vehicle moves closer to a detected obstacle. In the front and rear area, a continuous tone sounds when a critical distance to obstacles of less than approximately 12 in (30 cm) is reached. In the area next to the vehicle, a continuous tone will sound when the distance to obstacles becomes critical (less than approximately 8.4 inches (20 cm)). Do not continue driving forward or in reverse.

If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually lowers after a few seconds until it is muted (this does not apply to the continuous tone). The tone sounds again as soon as the distance to the ▶

obstacle changes. Pay attention to the vehicle's surroundings when you start to drive.

– To deactivate audio warnings when parking or exiting a parking space, press in the central display. Depending on the country, the audio warnings will be reactivated after changing the selector position or when activating the parking system again.

You can adjust the volume of the audio warnings as well as the entertainment fader while parking in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 117*.

### Additional information

– The side area is detected and evaluated when passing. There may have been changes in the surrounding area after turning the vehicle off and on again, after opening the doors, or if the vehicle is left stationary for a period of time. In this case, the side area is not shown.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– There are areas around the vehicle that the sensors cannot detect. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations or may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic situation and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.

**Note**

– Keep enough distance from the curb to avoid damage to the rims.
– Applies to: vehicles with assisted parking systems: If you park in short parking spaces using the assisted parking functions, a continuous tone will sound from the parking system when the distance to an object is less than approximately 8.4 in (20 cm). Do not continue driving forward or in reverse.

## Using the parking system with distance display

**Fig. 87** Center console: parking system button

### Activating and deactivating manually

Requirement: the vehicle speed must be less than approximately 6 mph (10 km/h). Depending on vehicle equipment, the system can also be activated at higher vehicle speeds.

▸ Press the (1) button in the center console. It may not be possible to deactivate, depending on the country and the transmission selector position.

### Automatic activation when driving in reverse

▸ Select the "R" position when the vehicle is on. The system will activate automatically.

### Automatic activation in the front

The parking system will activate automatically if automatic activation in the front is turned on ⇨ *page 117* in the **Parking aid** menu and the vehicle approaches an obstacle while driving forward at speeds below approximately 6 mph (10 km/h). Audio signals will sound once the obstacle is within the sensor detection area.

### Automatic deactivation

The system deactivates automatically when driving forward faster than approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

### Conditions for automatic reactivation

If the parking system is deactivated, it can only be reactivated automatically when one of the following conditions is met:

– The vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h)
– The vehicle is turned off and back on again ▶

– The parking brake is set and then released
– The selector is moved into the “P” position and out of it again

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– There are areas around the vehicle that the sensors cannot detect. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations or may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic situation and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.

## Parking system malfunction messages

If appears, the sensor in the respective area or the speaker is faulty. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

If is displayed, the parking system is not available because the vehicle speed is too high.

If is displayed in the central display, the ultrasonic sensor indicated is icy or dirty. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115*.

If pink or black shading is displayed when there is a malfunction instead of the parking system, the system is temporarily unavailable.

If or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the parking system functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the additional information, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115*. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Rearview camera and surround view cameras

## Introduction

Views of the immediate vehicle surroundings can be used for more comfortable parking and maneuvering operations. Assistance when parking or maneuvering can also be provided with orientation lines.

Depending on vehicle equipment, a rearview camera or multiple surround view cameras may be available:

– The **rearview camera** helps you to park or maneuver using orientation lines.
– The **surround view cameras** expand the vehicle overview to include various views around the vehicle that can be selected.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Sensors and cameras have spots in which the surrounding area cannot be detected. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations or may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic situation and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.

## Overview of rearview and surround view camera displays

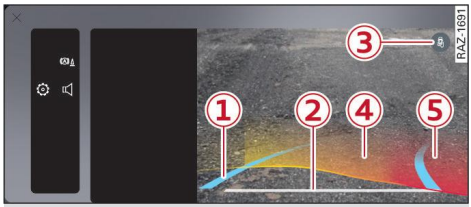



**Fig. 88** Central display: camera display overview

The displays depend on the vehicle equipment and the selected camera view.

① The light blue lines mark the expected direction of travel based on the steering angle ▶

⇨ ⓘ. The lines help with estimating the required space for parking and maneuvering.

(2) You should stop driving closer when the white line touches the edge of an obstacle, at the latest.

(3) Vehicles with surround view cameras: To show or hide the colored distance display, press (3) (availability depends on the country and the transmission selector position).

(4/5) Vehicles with surround view cameras: The colored distance display indicates the distance to detected obstacles. The colored distance display moves closer to the vehicle when the distance to the obstacle decreases. The light blue lines are shortened accordingly. If the distance to the obstacle becomes too small, the colored section changes to red. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse.

In addition to the rearview camera/surround view cameras, the parking system displays and warnings offer assistance when parking and maneuvering.

### Additional information

– Applies to: vehicles with surround view cameras: When the colored distance display is shown, the light blue lines are shortened based on detected obstacles. This can result in the lines being temporarily hidden in the corner areas when passing an obstacle. The lines can be shown in their original length by hiding the colored distance display.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

**Note**

– When driving in reverse, the light blue orientation lines (1) show the path in which the rear of the vehicle will be traveling, based on the steering wheel angle. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that the exterior mirrors or the corners of the vehicle do not collide with any obstacles.
– When driving forward, the light blue orientation lines show the path in which the front of the vehicle will be traveling, based on the steering wheel angle. When steering into a curve, the rear of the vehicle will travel closer to the curve than the front of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that the side of the vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.
– Keep enough distance from the curb to avoid damage to the rims.
– Only use the images provided by the camera on the rear of the vehicle when the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the luggage compartment lid do not block the rearview camera.

## Camera views from the surround view cameras

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following camera views can be selected:

| Camera view | Description |
|---|---|
| Rear | This view helps you to use all of the space for maneuvering behind the vehicle. This is the rearview camera image. |
| Rear corner | This view can assist when driving out of tight parking spaces or areas with poor visibility. It shows an almost 180° panoramic view behind the vehicle. Press ⟷ to switch between panoramic view and regular view. |
| Front | The view helps you to use all of the space for maneuvering in front of the vehicle. |
| Front corner | This view makes it easier to drive out of tight parking spaces or areas and intersections with poor visibility. It shows an almost 180° panoramic view in front of the vehicle. |

▶

| Camera view | Description |
|---|---|
| Surroundings | This view helps you to maneuver and position the vehicle more precisely. The area around the vehicle is shown using the camera images. The vehicle image is shown by the system ⇨ ⚠. |
| 3D surroundings | In this view, you can view the area around the vehicle when parking or maneuvering. The vehicle surrounding views are created from the camera images and sensor data. The vehicle image is shown by the system ⇨ ⚠. |
| Front tires | This view helps you to see the distance between the front tires and the curb and the steering wheel angle when parking and maneuvering. |
| Rear tires | This view helps you to see the distance between the rear tires and the curb when parking and maneuvering. |

**⚠ WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– The surroundings and 3D surroundings camera views are created using the individual camera images. The vehicle image is shown by the system. Objects and obstacles above the camera are not displayed.

## Activating and deactivating cameras

**Fig. 89** Center console: parking system button

### Activating and deactivating manually

▸ Press the P ① button in the center console. It may not be possible to deactivate, depending on the country and the transmission selector position.

The system can be activated at low speeds, such when maneuvering.

### Automatic activation

The system activates automatically when the "R" position is selected while the vehicle is on.

### Automatic deactivation

The system will deactivate automatically once the vehicle exceeds a certain speed while driving forward.

**⚠ WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Using surround view cameras

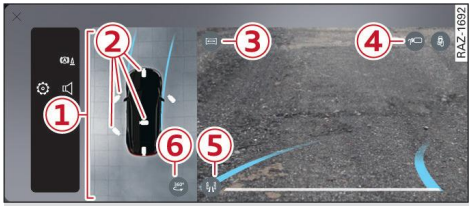



**Fig. 90** Central display: using surround view cameras

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following functions can be selected:

① Pressing any location in area ① will temporarily display the selection points for the various camera views ②.

② You can select a camera view by pressing the selection points or pressing on the area around the vehicle (availability depends on the country and the transmission selector position). The views can also be selected when the selection points are hidden again.

③ – Switch between the panoramic view and regular view.

④ – Manually start camera cleaning. ▶

⑤ – The car wash function is activated to provide a better view of the tracks in a car wash. The function can only be selected in **Camera view: front** and **Camera view: front corner**.

⑥ 360° – **Camera view: 3D surroundings** is selected.

– The transparency function is activated. The vehicle image is displayed transparently so that you can identify obstacles behind or next to the vehicle. The function can only be selected in **Camera view: 3D surroundings**.

### Controlling camera views

The camera views can be controlled with the touch display. In certain views, you can zoom in and out or move the area that is displayed.

The **Camera view: 3D surroundings** view can also be tilted and rotated.

### Automatic camera mode

The automatic camera mode can automatically switch the view and enlarge specific areas if an obstacle has been detected close to the vehicle.

The automatic camera mode can be turned on or off in the **Parking system** menu ⇨ *page 117*.

### Short commands

– To center the display, tap the 3D surroundings image twice.
– To quickly switch between the regular view and the panoramic view (for example from *front* to *front corner*), double tap on the image for the front or rear camera view, or place two fingers on the camera image and push your fingers apart or pinch them together.

### Additional information

– Applies to: vehicles with surround view cameras: System limitations may occur if the exterior mirrors are not folded out completely. Make sure the exterior mirrors are folded out completely when driving.
– Applies to: vehicles with power folding outside mirrors: System limitations may occur if the exterior mirrors are adjusted manually. The exterior mirrors must only be folded in or out using the power controls.
– The system may automatically switch between certain views depending on the gear that is selected. If you switch the view manually, the automatic front/rear camera change will be temporarily deactivated.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

**Note**

Only use the images provided by the camera on the rear of the vehicle when the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the luggage compartment lid do not block the rearview camera.

## Starting rearview camera cleaning

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the rear view camera can be cleaned automatically or manually.

Automatic camera cleaning if dirty conditions are detected can be turned on or off in the **Parking system** menu ⇨ *page 117*.

Depending on vehicle equipment, it may also be possible to manually clean the rearview camera.

▸ Press in the central display while the parking system is active and rear view is selected. You can press multiple times if necessary until enough washer fluid is on the camera.

The function may not be available if the washer fluid is empty, the luggage compartment lid is open, the temperature is low, or if the vehicle is traveling at a high speed.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Camera malfunction messages

If /// is displayed and the corresponding display area is not available, then the camera on the that side is not available. The power exterior mirrors may have been folded in, they may not be folded out fully, or a door or the luggage compartment lid may have been opened.

If is displayed, there is a system malfunction and the corresponding display area is not available. The camera is not working in this area.

If one of the symbols continues to be displayed, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

# Rear emergency brake assist

## Introduction

Within the limitations of the system, the rear emergency brake assist will brake when driving in reverse if a pedestrian is detected behind the vehicle. The system uses cameras and ultrasonic sensors, depending on vehicle equipment.

### Information about declarations of conformity

The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 293*.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Using rear emergency brake assist

### Activating

▸ Select the "R" position when the vehicle is on. The system will activate automatically.

### Automatic braking

– If a pedestrian is detected, the vehicle can automatically brake to avoid a possible collision or to reduce the impact speed. The intervention will be indicated in the instrument cluster and in the central display. The indicator appears. Actively take over braking immediately!
– You can override the automatic braking by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal briefly. The system will not be available for a few seconds after overriding it.

### Deactivating temporarily

– To temporarily deactivate all interventions/warnings, press ② ⇨ *page 164, fig. 92* in the central display and confirm the deactivation.

The symbol will be displayed.

If automatic braking is temporarily deactivated, it will activate again automatically once the vehicle reaches a certain speed or the next time you drive in reverse.

### Turning rear emergency brake assist on or off

You can turn rear emergency brake assist on or off in the **Parking system** menu ⇨ *page 117*.

### System limitations

– The system is available when driving in reverse at speeds up to approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).
– The system can only react to pedestrians.
– The system is not available at very low speeds.
– The system can only intervene after it has driven in reverse for a short distance.
– In some cases after automatic braking, the system will only be able to intervene again after driving in reverse for a few feet.
– System functions may not be available if the ESC is limited or turned off, or if there is a malfunction.
– The system is not available when the rear luggage compartment lid is open.
– The system is not available when the camera is being cleaned.

**WARNING**

- Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- Sensors and cameras have spots in which the surrounding area cannot be detected. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations or may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic situation and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.

## Rear emergency brake assist messages

If is displayed when there is a malfunction, the rear emergency brake assist functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the additional information, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 115*. Try folding the exterior mirrors in and then out again. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Rear cross-traffic assist

## Introduction

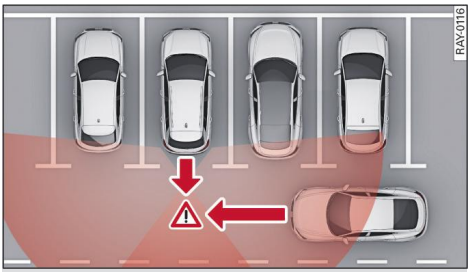



**Fig. 91** Sensor detection range for rear cross-traffic assist

Rear cross-traffic assist monitors the area behind and next to the vehicle using radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle. The system can detect moving objects that are approaching, such as vehicles ⇨ *fig. 91*. A display in the central display and various warnings provide assistance when exiting a parking space.

### Information about declarations of conformity

The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 293*.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Using rear cross-traffic assist

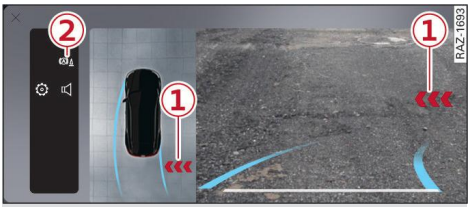



**Fig. 92** Central display: rear cross-traffic assist display

### Activating

▸ Select the "R" position when the vehicle is on. The system will activate automatically.

### Displays, warnings, and braking

- **Display**: the display (1) appears only when the parking system is active. In vehicles with surround view cameras, the display only appears in the **Camera view: rear** and **Camera view: rear corner** views. Arrows show the direction from which the cross traffic is approaching. The display is highlighted differently depending on the level of danger.
- **Audio warnings**: an audio signal may sound as an additional warning when driving in reverse.
- **Active brake intervention**: if you do not react when there is a warning, a brake intervention may prevent a possible collision or reduce the speed of impact. Active brake intervention can ▶

be turned on or off in the **Driver assistance** menu or in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

The audio warning signals and the active brake intervention occur only when driving in reverse.

The coverage areas of the sensors ⇨ *page 164, fig. 91* are schematic representations and do not represent a true-to-scale image of the sensor ranges.

### Temporarily deactivating the active brake intervention

– To temporarily deactivate all interventions/ warnings, press ② in the central display and confirm the deactivation.

The symbol will be displayed.

When the brake intervention is deactivated temporarily, it will be activated again automatically once the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

### Turning rear cross-traffic assist off or on

The rear cross-traffic assist can be turned on or off in the **Driver assistance** menu or in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

### System limitations

– The system is available when driving in reverse at speeds up to approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).
– System functions may not be available if the ESC is limited or turned off, or if there is a malfunction.
– If there is an audio warning signal from rear cross-traffic assist, then the parking system may not be able to provide audio warnings about detected obstacles under certain circumstances.
– The system may not respond at all or it may not respond at the right time when objects are approaching very quickly.
– Rear cross-traffic assist cannot provide a warning about all approaching objects or about very slow objects.
– Rear cross-traffic assist will not provide alerts if the vehicle is in a parallel parking space.
– Rear cross-traffic assist will not provide alerts if your vehicle is pulled too far into the parking space so that it is hidden by adjacent vehicles.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Sensors and cameras have spots in which the surrounding area cannot be detected. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations or may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic situation and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.
– Rear cross-traffic assist is an assist system. The driver is still responsible for monitoring the surroundings and for braking when using the system. Always monitor the traffic situation as well as the vehicle's surroundings with direct eye contact.

### Rear cross-traffic assist messages

If , or is displayed when there is a malfunction, rear cross-traffic assist functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the additional information, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. If necessary, clean the area where the sensors are located in the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 115*. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

## Curb warning

### Introduction

The curb warning assists you when parking and helps to reduce the risk of damage to wheels and rims. The system can provide warnings about the wheels striking low objects, such as curbs. If the vehicle sensors detect a critical distance between ▶

the wheel and low objects, you will be notified with visual and audio warnings.

The surround view cameras and ultrasonic sensors all around the vehicle are used for surrounding area detection.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Using the curb warning

### Display overview

– A wheel shown in red indicates a critical distance between the wheel and a low object.
– A wheel that is crossed out in the display indicates that the curb warning is not active on that entire side of the vehicle.

### System limitations

– The system is available at speeds up to approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).
– In dark conditions, the system may be limited or may not function as expected.
– The system will not be available when certain assist systems are on or when using assisted parking systems.
– System functions may not be available if the ESC is limited or turned off, or if there is a malfunction.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

**Note**

To reduce the risk of damage to the rims, make sure there is enough distance between the wheels and the curb.

## Activating and deactivating the curb warning

### Activating and deactivating automatically

The curb warning is activated or deactivated automatically when the parking system is activated or deactivated.

### Activating and deactivating manually

▸ Press the button in the center console.

After deactivating the curb warning manually, it will activate again automatically the next time you activate the parking system.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Curb warning messages

If P or P and a curb warning message are displayed when there is a malfunction, the curb warning functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the additional information, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 115*. Try folding the exterior mirrors in and then out again. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Maneuver assist

## Introduction

Maneuver assist assists you when maneuvering and parking. If there is an impending collision with an object, the system will intervene within ▸

its limitations and attempt to prevent the collision by applying the brakes.

Maneuver assist activates automatically when the parking system has been activated using the button or when the “R” position has been selected.

The surround view cameras and ultrasonic sensors all around the vehicle are used for surrounding area detection.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Using maneuver assist

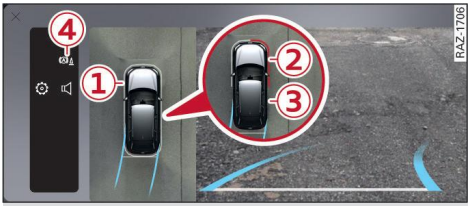



**Fig. 93** Central display: maneuver assist

### Display overview

The displays ① - ③ indicate the status and availability of maneuver assist.

① The white border indicates the availability in this area.

② The red border indicates a braking intervention.

③ If there is no border, this indicates an inactive area (partial availability).

If no border is shown around the vehicle, maneuver assist is not available.

### Braking intervention

Braking intervention can be initiated if there is an impending possible collision with a detected stationary object. If the brakes were applied until the vehicle stopped, the message **Maneuver assist: vehicle has been braked. Obstacle detected** will appear and you must take over control of the vehicle.

If you continue driving toward the obstacle after the vehicle is braked to a stop, maneuver assist will automatically be temporarily deactivated. The system will be activated again once you have driven a few feet.

For smoother and less sudden braking, you can select a moderate braking intervention in the **Parking system** menu ⇨ *page 117*. With this setting, the system will initiate the braking intervention while farther away from the obstacle, making the braking process smoother.

### System limitations

– Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so you can be ready to steer at any time. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
– System functions may not be available if the ESC is actively regulating, if it is limited or turned off, or if there is a malfunction.
– The systems may not be able to detect objects that are too low, such as curbs.
– The system is available at speeds up to approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).
– The systems will not be available when certain assist systems are on or when using the assisted parking systems.
– The system is not available if the driver’s safety belt is not fastened.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Maneuver assist is an assist system. The driver is still responsible for steering and braking and preventing collisions when using the system.
– Sensors and cameras have spots in which the surrounding area cannot be detected. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations or may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic situation and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.

**Note**

Keep enough distance from the curb to avoid damage to the rims.

## Activating or deactivating maneuver assist

### Activating automatically when driving in reverse

- Select the "R" position when the vehicle is on. Maneuver assist will activate automatically and remain active when driving in reverse or forward.

### Activating manually when driving forward

While driving forward, you must activate maneuver assist manually.

Requirement: the vehicle speed must be less than approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

- Press the button in the center console. If the parking system is already active, press the button in the center console twice.

Maneuver assist is active when the central display shows a border around the vehicle.

### Deactivating temporarily

You can temporarily deactivate maneuver assist for the current parking operation. If maneuver assist is deactivated temporarily, it will be activated again automatically the next time the parking system is activated.

- To temporarily deactivate all interventions/warnings, press 4 ⇨ *page 167, fig. 93* in the central display and confirm the deactivation. The symbol will be displayed.
- To reactivate maneuver assist after it has been deactivated temporarily, press in the central display. The symbol will be displayed.

### Turning maneuver assist on or off

You can turn maneuver assist off or on in the **Parking system** menu ⇨ *page 117*.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Maneuver assist messages

If or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the maneuver assist functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the additional information, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115*. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Assisted parking systems

## Assisted parking options

### Overview of the assisted parking options

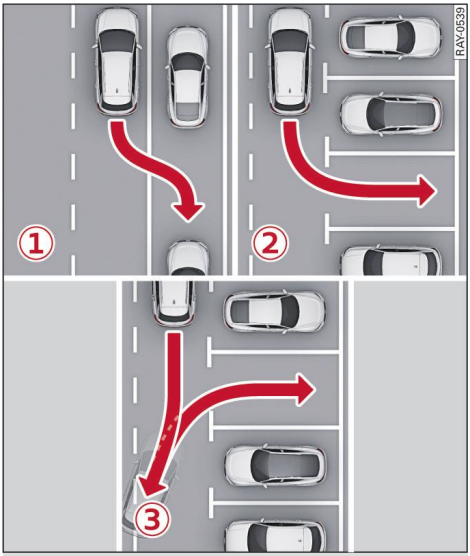



**Fig. 94** Parking options overview

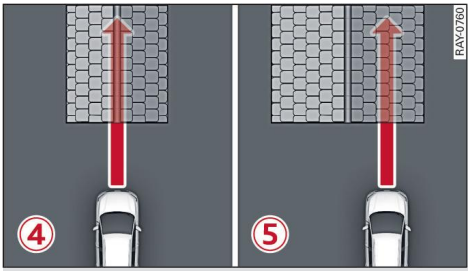



**Fig. 95** Overview of parking options in garages

The following parking options may be available depending on the when the system is activated and the vehicle equipment:

– After the parking space search is activated ① – ② and ④ – ⑤.
– Transferring a parking space you have approached to the assisted parking system ① – ③ ⇨ *page 172*.

### Parking options

① Backing into parallel parking spaces

② Reversing into perpendicular parking spaces or diagonal parking spaces as well, depending on the vehicle equipment

③ Driving forward into perpendicular parking spaces (depending on the country/vehicle equipment)

④ Single garages (remote-controlled parking only)

⑤ Multi-car garages (remote-controlled parking only)

The parking options ① – ③ are only available if you have driven far enough past the parking space.

### Additional information

– When parking in garages using remote-controlled parking, the vehicle must be positioned straight in front of the garage. You will have the best results when you align and stop your vehicle as straight as possible in front of the garage.
– Depending on vehicle equipment, assisted parking may also be possible if only the parking space markings are detected. Other vehicles acting as boundaries are only needed if the parking space markings are insufficient or the road surface is unsuitable.

8B1012721BF

### Overview of the assisted options for exiting parking spaces

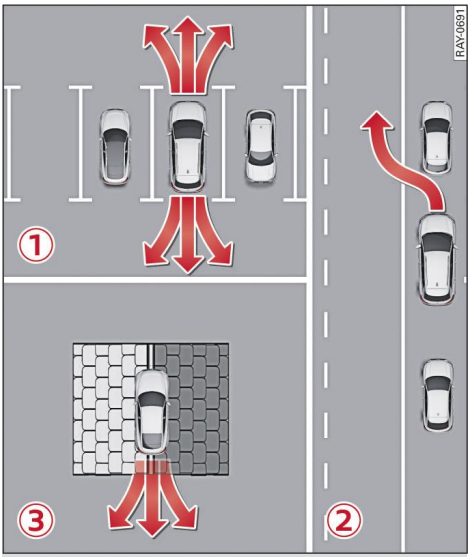



**Fig. 96** Overview of options for exiting a parking space

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following options for exiting parking spaces may be available:

① Exiting perpendicular parking spaces (only when using remote-controlled parking, depending on vehicle equipment)

② Exiting parallel parking spaces

③ Exiting parking spaces in garages (remote-controlled parking only)

## System limitations of the assisted parking systems

Assisted parking systems may be restricted or unavailable in situations such as the following:

– The Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) must not be turned off while using assisted parking systems. If the ESC intervenes, then the respective system will be stopped.
– If the ESC is restricted or turned off, or if there is a malfunction.
– The systems are not available when certain assist systems are turned on.
– The parking systems do not support assisted parking on steep inclines or on tight curves.
– The system can incorrectly interpret parking space barriers (such as parking curbs). Take over the process of parking or exiting a parking space if the vehicle is not completely inside the parking space or if the vehicle tries to drive past the parking space boundary.
– If parking on a steep road, turn the steering wheel so that your vehicle will roll against the curb in case it should start to move.
– Applies to: vehicles with surround view cameras: System limitations may occur if the exterior mirrors are not folded out completely. Make sure the exterior mirrors are folded out completely when driving.
– Applies to: vehicles with power folding outside mirrors: System limitations may occur if the exterior mirrors are adjusted manually. The exterior mirrors may only be folded in or out using the power controls.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Searching for a parking space for assisted parking

### Introduction

The parking space search will assist in finding suitable parking spaces. Parking spaces are measured using ultrasonic sensors on the sides of the vehicle.

Depending on vehicle equipment, additional sensors and cameras will improve the measurements.

If a parking space is found, the assisted parking systems will assist with parking, while the driver monitors the vehicle's surroundings using the parking systems, cameras, and direct eye contact, depending on vehicle equipment. ▶

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Activating the parking space search

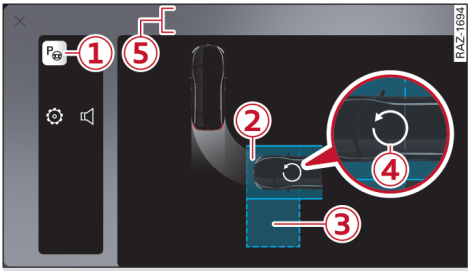



**Fig. 97** Central display: activated parking space search

① Activating the parking space search
② Selected parking space
③ Switch between parallel parking and perpendicular parking
④ Switch between pulling forward or backing into a perpendicular parking space (depending on the country/vehicle equipment)
⑤ System notification display

### Activating the parking space search

- To activate the parking space search, press P ① in the central display while the parking system is activated. The parking space search display appears and the symbol indicates that the parking space search is active.
- Drive forward to the row of parking spaces at a low speed. For the best parking results, the vehicle should be approximately 3 feet (1 m) from the row of parking spaces.

The parking space search looks for a suitable parking space on both sides of the vehicle at the same time.

### Automatically displaying the parking space search

The system will also search in the background for suitable parking spaces even when the parking space search is not activated, as long as you do not drive past the spaces too quickly. In this way, you can also activate the system, even if you have already driven past a suitable parking space. Depending on vehicle equipment, automatic display of the parking space search can be turned on or off in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 117*.

- Apply the brakes until the vehicle is stationary.
- Press the button in the center console or select "R" (reverse). The detected parking space appears directly in the central display and you can start the parking process.

### Selecting a parking space and parking option

If the system finds one or more parking spaces that could be suitable for the vehicle length and width, the system will display them ②.

The following can also be displayed:

- **P**: the vehicle is in an optimal starting position and you must apply the brakes until the vehicle is stopped.
- **P ↑**: the vehicle must continue to drive in the direction of the arrow to reach the optimal starting position. Only continue driving if there is no obstacle in the vehicle's path.

If the vehicle is stationary and there are other options in addition to the parking space the system is aiming for ②, you can manually change the selection:

- In the central display, press a different parking space or a different parking option ③.
- If necessary, switch between driving forward into a parking space or backing into it ④ (depending on the country/vehicle equipment).

### Starting the parking process

Requirement: the desired parking space is selected in the central display, the vehicle is stationary, and the brake pedal is pressed.

- Make sure that the parking space is suitable for your vehicle ⇨ (!).

Depending on vehicle equipment and the applicable legal regulations, you may start the assisted parking process:

- In the vehicle: assisted parking.
- Outside of the vehicle: remote-controlled parking with a mobile device. ▶

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Sensors and cameras have spots in which the surrounding area cannot be detected. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations or may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic situation and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.

**Note**

Parking spaces classified as suitable by the system may have been detected incorrectly. The driver must decide if the parking space displayed is suitable for the vehicle.

## Transferring a parking space you have approached and measured to the assisted parking system

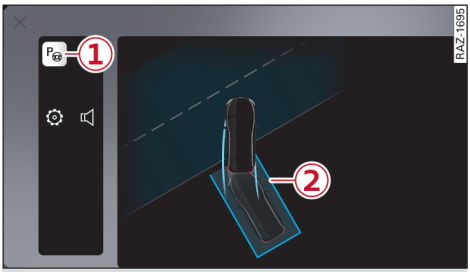



**Fig. 98** Central display: display of a parking space you have approached

Requirement: the vehicle must have measured the parking space. Depending on vehicle equipment, you must have driven far enough past the parking space.

If you have started the reverse parking process yourself and the vehicle is far enough into the parking space, then the system can assist with the rest of the parking process:

▸ If necessary, apply the brakes until the vehicle comes to a stop.
▸ Press the button in the center console.
▸ Press (1) in the central display. A visualization of your parking space (2) and a related message appear in the central display.
▸ To start the assisted parking process, remove your hands from the steering wheel and press Start in the central display.

Assisted parking ⇨ *page 173*.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Assisted parking and exiting of a parking space

### Introduction

The assisted parking systems enable assisted parking and assist with parking in or exiting unoccupied parking spaces. The driver monitors the vehicle surroundings while the systems control the steering, acceleration, braking, and gear selection.

Only use the assisted parking systems if the applicable legal regulations allow it. Usage may be prohibited or limited depending on the country. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated. The systems may be unavailable in countries where it has been deactivated in order to comply with legal regulations. Data will not be transmitted to Audi.

#### System limitations

– Observe the limitations of the assisted parking systems ⇨ *page 170*.

#### Maneuvering area

The vehicle can go off course during the process of parking or exiting a parking space ⇨ ⚠. If there are obstacles within the maneuvering area that block or endanger the parking process, for example on the opposite side of the street, a message may appear. You may need to drive ▸

farther forward and stay closer to the row of parking spaces.

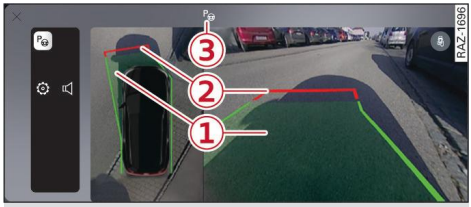
**WARNING**

- Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
- The driver is always responsible when entering or exiting a parking space and during similar maneuvers.
- Do not use this function if the vehicle cannot move freely, for example when on a vehicle jack.
- The vehicle can go off course during the parking process. The driver is still responsible for monitoring the vehicle's surroundings and preventing collisions when using the system.
- Sensors and cameras have spots in which the surrounding area cannot be detected. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations or may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic situation and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.

**Note**

- To reduce the risk of damage, do not use assisted parking systems when transporting cargo that extends outside of the vehicle or when snow chains are mounted.
- The assisted parking systems guide the vehicle either away from curbs or onto them, for example if other vehicles are parked on the curb. Make sure that your vehicle's tires and rims are not damaged. Resume control of the vehicle in time or stop the process of parking or exiting the parking space.
- Certain conditions near the parking space may cause the parking process to fail, such as if the parking space is near trees or posts, or if the ground is covered, for example, with gravel, snow, or ice.

## Assisted parking




Applies to: vehicles with assisted parking systems display
**Fig. 99** Center display: assisted parking display

### Performing the parking process

Requirement: a suitable parking option was found and selected. The vehicle must initially be stationary and the brakes must be pressed.

- Remove your hands from the steering wheel and press Start in the central display.
- Pay attention to the path of the vehicle. When the traffic situation allows, release the brakes ⇨ ⚠. The P symbol in the central display indicates that assisted parking is active and that it is controlling the vehicle.
- You can reduce the speed specified by the system at any time by pressing the brake pedal lightly.
- In situations where conditions are unclear, cancel the parking process by applying the brakes until the vehicle is stopped or take over steering. For example, this may be necessary if an obstacle appears or if the vehicle comes very close to an obstacle.

Canceling the assisted parking system ⇨ *page 175*.

### Display overview

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the current driving maneuver and the status of the assisted parking system may be shown in the central display:

1. Path that the vehicle will travel during the current parking maneuver.
2. End point of the current parking maneuver/ direction change.
3. P – The assisted parking system is active. ▶

### End of the parking process

The parking process will end automatically once the vehicle has reached the end point in the parking space. After the assisted parking system finishes parking successfully, the parking lock will be engaged and the parking brake will be set.

### Additional information

– The image in the display is an enlarged and distorted image. Under certain circumstances, objects may appear different and unclear in the display. This can be especially true with objects that do not touch the ground, such as the bumper of a parked vehicle or the rear of a truck. In these cases, pay particular attention while driving and check the distance with direct eye contact if necessary.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, only release the brakes while assisted parking systems are active if you are sure that there are no obstacles in the vehicle's path or under the vehicle, and that no obstacles could enter the vehicle's path.
– Assisted parking systems are assist systems. The driver is still responsible for monitoring the vehicle's surroundings and preventing collisions when using the system.
– When using assisted parking systems to drive into or out of a parking space, the steering wheel turns quickly on its own. Injuries to your fingers or hands are possible if you reach into the steering wheel spokes during this process.

## Assisted exiting of a parking space

### Performing the process for exiting a parking space

If you parked the vehicle, the assisted parking system can help you to exit the space.

▸ Start the vehicle.
▸ Press the button in the center console.
▸ Press in the central display with the parking system activated.
▸ Wait until a message appears in the central display prompting you to select the direction for exiting the parking space in order to start the process of exiting.
▸ In the central display, select from the possible directions for exiting the parking space ⇨ (!).
▸ Press the button in the central display to start the process of exiting the parking space.
▸ Remove your hands from the steering wheel.
▸ Pay attention to the path of the vehicle. When the traffic situation allows, release the brakes ⇨ ⚠. The symbol in the central display indicates that assisted parking is active and that it is controlling the vehicle.
▸ You can reduce the speed specified by the system at any time by pressing the brake pedal lightly.

The process of exiting the parking space is complete when a message to take over the vehicle appears. Resume control of the steering wheel ⇨ (!).

Canceling the assisted parking system ⇨ *page 175*.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, only release the brakes while assisted parking systems are active if you are sure that there are no obstacles in the vehicle's path or under the vehicle, and that no obstacles could enter the vehicle's path.
– Assisted parking systems are assist systems. The driver is still responsible for monitoring the vehicle's surroundings and preventing collisions when using the system.
– When using assisted parking systems to drive into or out of a parking space, the steering wheel turns quickly on its own. Injuries to your fingers or hands are possible if you reach into the steering wheel spokes during this process.

**Note**

– When selecting the direction for exiting the parking space, pay attention to obstacles and only select a side that is clear.
– Resume steering immediately after the last corrective movement and the take-over prompt, and before pressing the accelerator pedal so that the specified steering wheel angle is not recentered.

## Canceling or pausing the assisted parking system

### Pausing manually

You can pause assisted parking at any time by applying the brakes until the vehicle is stopped and remain stationary for a short time. To resume the process of parking exiting a parking space, press the button to continue in the central display and release the brakes.

### Automatically canceling or pausing

The assisted parking system is paused or canceled automatically in the following situations, among other things:

– You turn off the system
– You press the brake pedal firmly
– You press the accelerator pedal
– You change the selector position
– You set the parking brake
– You intervene with steering
– The system's limit for possible parking maneuvers is exceeded
– A vehicle door is opened
– The time limit is exceeded
– An obstacle is detected
– The ESC intervenes

The P OFF or P OFF display appears. A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays.

If the process of parking or exiting a parking space was automatically canceled, you must take over control of the vehicle.

You can resume the parking process in some situations. Follow the messages in the central display. If necessary, press the button to continue or press P in the central display.

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Assisted parking messages

If P OFF, P or P turns on, assisted parking is not available or only has limited availability and you may need to actively brake on your own.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the additional information, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115*. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Remote-controlled parking

## Introduction

During remote-controlled parking, the process of parking or exiting a parking space can be controlled remotely from outside the vehicle with a mobile device. To do so, you must have both the vehicle key and the mobile device with you. While you control the vehicle remotely and monitor the vehicle's surroundings, the system controls the steering, gear selection, acceleration, braking, and locking of the vehicle.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Remote-controlled parking is only an assist system. The driver is always responsible for ▶

maneuvering, driving, and stopping the vehicle and performing other driving maneuvers.
– The vehicle can go off course during the driving process. The driver is still responsible for monitoring the vehicle's surroundings and preventing collisions when using the system.
– Do not use this function if the vehicle cannot move freely, for example when on a vehicle jack.
– To reduce the risk of asphyxiation, only use this function in well-ventilated areas.
– Failing to pay careful attention to the vehicle's surroundings increases the risk of an accident. Sensors and cameras have spots in which the surrounding area cannot be detected. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations or may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic situation as well as the vehicle's surroundings with direct eye contact. Stay near the vehicle while controlling it. Make sure you have a clear view of the vehicle and the area surrounding it. Do not become distracted.
– Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: There is a risk of death for people locked in the vehicle, especially children. The vehicle is locked during remote-controlled parking. Make sure there are no persons inside the vehicle both before and after using remote-controlled parking.
– Malfunctions when using the myAudi app increase the risk of an accident. Do not exit the app during the parking process, and make sure that it does not go into the device background, for example by accepting an incoming call. Follow the user guide from the manufacturer of your mobile device.
– There is a risk of accident if the connection is interrupted. In certain situations, the connection between the mobile device and the vehicle can be interrupted, for example from other radio devices or when the distance to the vehicle is too far. Make sure the connection is sufficient, and when in doubt, resume parking the vehicle or exiting the parking space yourself.
– Blocking notifications, tones, and vibrations increase the risk of an accident. The myAudi app can only warn you if dangers are detected if you make sure that your mobile device allows all notifications, tones, and vibrations for the myAudi app.
– There is a risk of an accident if an incompatible mobile device is used. If there is a display indicating that functionality is restricted, the vehicle’s response speed may be impaired due to reduced transmission speed.

**Note**

– To reduce the risk of damage, do not use remote-controlled parking when transporting cargo that extends outside of the vehicle or when snow chains are mounted.
– Remote-controlled parking may guide the vehicle either away from curbs or onto them if other vehicles are parked on the curb. Make sure that your vehicle's tires and rims are not damaged. Resume control of the vehicle in time or stop the process of parking or exiting the parking space.

## Additional information about remote-controlled parking

Only use remote-controlled parking if the applicable legal regulations allow it. Usage of the system may be prohibited or limited depending on the country. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated. The system may be unavailable in countries where it has been deactivated in order to comply with legal regulations. Data will not be transmitted to Audi.

Any individual that uses the mobile device for remote-controlled parking is considered the driver and is participating in traffic. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations for using remote-controlled parking that are applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated. ▶

Do not endanger any other road users when using remote-controlled parking. Testing remote-controlled parking in a parking lot with minimal traffic is recommended.

Your mobile device should have a sufficient battery charge level. If necessary, charge the mobile device before starting to drive.

The myAudi app and the mobile device operating system must be up to date and not modified.

Do not use the remote-controlled parking function with devices that are faulty or damaged or whose function is impaired. Only use operating systems approved by the mobile device manufacturer.

When using remote-controlled parking, always pay attention to the areas where your vehicle can be accessed. Make sure that no one can enter your vehicle and that the vehicle has been locked after the parking process is completed. Take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle.

## Starting remote-controlled parking

The following steps must be completed before using for the first time:

- Create a myAudi account by registering in the myAudi app or at my.audi.com, depending on your country.
- Add your vehicle to your myAudi account.
- Set the key user ⇨ *page 29*.
- Install the myAudi app on your mobile device and log in with your access information.

### Device compatibility

The mobile device will be checked when the process for parking or exiting a parking space begins. If an incompatibility is detected, it will be displayed in the myAudi app. Audi does not recommend using the function if an incompatibility is detected ⇨ ⚠.

A selection of supported Bluetooth devices can be found in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth. Compatibility cannot be guaranteed for all types of mobile devices. The availability depends on the following factors, among others:

– Brand and build version of the mobile device
– Version of the mobile device operating system
– Software version of the app used
– Individual settings on the mobile device

**⚠ WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– There is a risk of an accident if an incompatible mobile device is used. If there is a display indicating that functionality is restricted, the vehicle's response speed may be impaired due to reduced transmission speed.

## Parking using the myAudi app

### Requirements

- The setup has been completed.
- You are logged into the vehicle with your myAudi user.
- Bluetooth is turned on in the mobile device and in the MMI.
- A suitable parking option was found and selected.
- The vehicle must initially be stationary.

### Preparing the vehicle

- To park with remote control, press in the central display.
- If you have already started parking in a space using assisted parking, you can also carry out the rest of the parking process using remote control. In the central display, press .
- Exit the vehicle with the vehicle running and take the vehicle key with you. Always keep both the vehicle key and the mobile device with you during the entire remote-controlled parking process.
- Make sure that all doors and the luggage compartment lid are closed.

### Starting the parking process

- Start the myAudi app soon, or the function will be canceled.

- Pay attention to the path of the vehicle. If the traffic situation permits, park your vehicle in the parking space using the mobile device ⇨ ⚠. The vehicle key and the mobile device must be in close proximity to the vehicle.
- In uncertain situations, pause the parking process with the mobile device either by releasing the button in the app or opening a vehicle door. For example, this may be necessary if an obstacle appears or if the vehicle comes very close to an obstacle.
- To resume the parking process, start it again on the mobile device. The remainder of the parking process will be recalculated based on the vehicle position.

Pausing remote-controlled parking ⇨ *page 179*.

### Unexpected interruption of the parking process

- If the parking process is interrupted unexpectedly because of the vehicle key, change your location together with the mobile device and vehicle key and resume the parking process.

### End of the parking process

The parking process will end automatically once the vehicle has reached the end point in the parking space. Once parking is successfully completed, the parking lock will be engaged, the parking brake will be set, and the vehicle will turn off. The vehicle will also be locked.

### Correcting the parking position

The end position of the vehicle in the parking space can be corrected by remote control using the myAudi app after completing the parking process.

### Additional information

– When parking in garages using remote-controlled parking, the vehicle must be positioned straight in front of the garage. You will have the best results when you align and stop your vehicle as straight as possible in front of the garage.

### System limitations

Remote-controlled parking may be restricted or unavailable in situations such as the following:

– Observe the limitations of the assisted parking systems ⇨ *page 170*.
– The parking process can only be started if the vehicle key is located outside the vehicle after the vehicle is prepared. Always keep both the vehicle key and the mobile device with you during the entire remote-controlled parking process.
– If there is another vehicle key inside the vehicle or nearby.

**⚠ WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Failing to pay careful attention to the vehicle's surroundings increases the risk of an accident. To reduce the risk of an accident, only park your vehicle using a mobile device if you are sure that there are no obstacles in the vehicle's path or under the vehicle, and that no obstacles could move into the vehicle's path.

## Exiting parking spaces using the myAudi app

### Starting the parking space exiting process

- Start the myAudi app.
- Start the vehicle in the myAudi app in a timely manner. When starting the vehicle, the vehicle key and the mobile device must be in close proximity to the vehicle.
- Start the process of exiting the parking space with the mobile device soon. Otherwise, the function will be canceled.
- Pay attention to the path of the vehicle. If the traffic situation permits, drive the vehicle out of the parking space using the mobile device ⇨ ⚠. When parking with remote control, the vehicle key and the mobile device must be in close proximity to the vehicle.
- In uncertain situations, pause the parking space exiting process with the mobile device either by ▶

releasing the button in the app or opening a vehicle door. For example, this may be necessary if an obstacle appears or if the vehicle comes very close to an obstacle.

- To resume the process of exiting the parking space, start it again on the mobile device. The rest of the process of exiting the parking space will be recalculated based on the vehicle position.

Pausing remote-controlled parking ⇨ *page 179*.

### Unexpected interruption when exiting the parking space

- If the process of exiting the parking space is interrupted unexpectedly because of the vehicle key, change your location together with the mobile device and vehicle key and resume the process of exiting the parking space.

### End of the parking space exiting process

The process for exiting a parking space ends when the maximum distance is reached or if additional corrective movements are no longer necessary. Unlock and resume manual control of the vehicle.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Failing to pay careful attention to the vehicle's surroundings increases the risk of an accident. To reduce the risk of an accident, park your vehicle with the mobile device only if you are sure that there are no obstacles in the vehicle's path or under the vehicle, and that no obstacles could move into the vehicle's path.

## Pausing or canceling remote-controlled parking

### Pausing manually

- To stop the vehicle, you can temporarily pause remote-controlled parking with your mobile device at any time by releasing the button in the app.

You can also stop the process of exiting the parking space and come to full stop immediately by pressing any button on the vehicle key. Therefore, always keep the vehicle key with you during the remote-controlled parking process.

### Automatically canceling or pausing

The remote-controlled parking system is paused or canceled automatically in the following situations, among other things:

– If the myAudi app is not started soon after exiting the vehicle
– The Bluetooth connection was interrupted,
– The vehicle is not within range of the mobile device,
– You turn off the system
– The system's limit for possible parking maneuvers is exceeded
– The time limit is exceeded
– An obstacle is detected
– The ESC intervenes

### Taking over the process of parking or exiting a parking space

After canceling the process of parking or exiting a parking space, the vehicle will come to a stop and the "P" position will be engaged. Take over control of the vehicle, manually end the process of parking or exiting a parking space, and safely park the vehicle. You can also restart the entire process of parking or exiting a parking space from inside the vehicle.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– Failing to pay careful attention to the vehicle's surroundings increases the risk of an accident. To reduce the risk of an accident, park your vehicle with the mobile device only if you are sure that there are no obstacles in the vehicle's path or under the vehicle, and that no obstacles could move into the vehicle's path.

### Remote-controlled parking messages

If , or turns on, remote-controlled parking is unavailable or has limited availability.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the additional information, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115*. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

## Reversing assist

### Introduction

Reversing assist helps when driving in reverse out of tight parking spaces, garages, or paths. The system continuously saves a section of the path used when driving forward, which enables it to reverse on the same path if desired. The driver monitors the vehicle surroundings while the system controls the steering, acceleration, and braking.

If the system detected objects, pedestrians, or other road users on the driving path, it can react to those by braking, within the limitations of the system. If an obstacle is only there temporarily, the vehicle will also start driving again.

The surround view cameras and ultrasonic sensors all around the vehicle are used for surrounding area detection.

#### System limitations

– Observe the limitations of the assisted parking systems ⇨ *page 170*.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– The driver is always responsible when entering or exiting a parking space and during similar maneuvers.
– Do not use this function if the vehicle cannot move freely, for example when on a vehicle jack.
– The vehicle can go off course during the driving process. The driver is still responsible for monitoring the vehicle's surroundings and preventing collisions when using the system.
– Sensors and cameras have spots in which the surrounding area cannot be detected. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations or may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic situation and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.

**Note**

To reduce the risk of damage, do not use reversing assist when transporting cargo that extends outside of the vehicle or when snow chains are mounted.

### Using reversing assist

#### Activating reversing assist

Requirement: you have already driven forward a few feet at a slow speed and the system was able to record a driving path.

▸ If necessary, apply the brakes until the vehicle comes to a stop.
▸ Select the reverse gear.
▸ To activate reversing assist, press in the central display.
▸ To start the driving operation with reversing assist, remove your hands from the steering wheel and press Start in the central display.
▸ Pay attention to the path of the vehicle. When the traffic situation allows, release the brakes ⇨ . The symbol in the central display indicates that reversing assist is active and controlling the vehicle.

The vehicle will automatically drive in reverse on the last path that was driven while it controls the steering and speed. The remaining distance will ▶

be displayed in the central display while the vehicle is driving on the path. The vehicle's driving path during the current parking maneuver will also be displayed in green. The end position of the recorded driving maneuver is displayed with a red line.

▸ Depending on vehicle equipment, you can reduce the speed specified by the system at any time by pressing the brake pedal lightly.

If obstacles are detected in the driving path, the vehicle will be braked. If an obstacle is only there temporarily, the vehicle will also start driving again.

### End of the driving operation

The driving operation will end automatically once the vehicle has reached the recorded end point. After reversing assist finishes the driving operation successfully, the parking lock will be engaged and the parking brake will be set.

You can cancel reversing assist if you have already reached the desired position ⇨ *page 181*.

### Additional information

– The path recorded by the function is limited to a short distance.
– The system may interpret some objects incorrectly, such as gates or garage doors. Take over control of the vehicle if necessary ⇨ *page 181*.
– The image in the display is an enlarged and distorted image. Under certain circumstances, objects may appear different and unclear in the display. This can be especially true with objects that do not touch the ground, such as the bumper of a parked vehicle or the rear of a truck. In these cases, pay particular attention while driving and check the distance with direct eye contact if necessary.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, only release the brakes while reversing assist is active if you are sure that there are no obstacles in the vehicle's path or under the vehicle, and that no obstacles could move into the vehicle's path.
– Reversing assist is an assist system. The driver is still responsible for monitoring the vehicle's surroundings and preventing collisions when using the system.
– When driving with reversing assist, the steering wheel turns quickly on its own. Injuries to your fingers or hands are possible if you reach into the steering wheel spokes during this process.

## Pausing or canceling reversing assist

### Pausing manually

You can pause reversing assist at any time by applying the brakes until the vehicle is stopped. To resume the driving operation, press the button in the central display to continue and release the brakes.

### Automatically canceling or pausing

Reversing assist is paused/canceled automatically in the following situations, among others:

– You turn off the system
– You press the accelerator pedal
– You change the selector position
– You set the parking brake
– You intervene with steering
– A vehicle door is opened
– The time limit is exceeded
– An obstacle is detected
– If the ESC intervenes
– Cross traffic is detected,
– The driving path differs too much from the recorded path.

The or display appears. A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays.

If the driving process is automatically canceled, you must take over control of the vehicle.

In some situations, you can resume the driving maneuver. Follow the messages in the central display. If necessary, press the button to continue or press in the central display. ▶

**WARNING**

Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.

## Reversing assist messages

If , or turns on, the reversing assist is not available or only has limited availability and you may need to actively brake on your own.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the additional information, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115*. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Trained parking

## Introduction

Trained parking enhances the usability of assisted parking systems by learning and saving frequently-used operations for parking or exiting parking spaces. If the system recognizes the surroundings and a saved operation for parking or exiting a parking space, it can perform the operation on its own. The parking operation can be performed either with the driver present in the vehicle or remotely (the function or equipment that is described was in development at the time this manual was published and may not be available).

### System limitations

Observe the limitations of the assisted parking systems ⇨ *page 170*.

### Additional information

Only use trained parking if the applicable legal regulations permit. Usage of the system may be prohibited or limited depending on the country.

The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

**WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– The vehicle can go off course during the driving process. The driver is still responsible for monitoring the vehicle's surroundings and preventing collisions when using the system.

## Programming an operation for parking or exiting a parking space

### Programming an operation for parking or exiting a parking space

- Drive to any starting point.
- Apply the brakes until the vehicle is stationary.
- Press in the central display with the parking system activated
- Start a new recording by pressing the respective button on the central display.
- Park your vehicle in the desired parking space.

During the manual drive for programming, and the remaining distance will appear in the central display. The speed is limited when recording the operation for parking or exiting a parking space.

Once the operation for parking or exiting a parking space is saved, the trained parking programming is complete.

### Saving an operation for parking or exiting a parking space

Operations for parking or exiting a parking space can only be saved when the vehicle is stationary. You cannot save an operation for parking or exiting a parking space while the reverse gear is selected.

- Save an operation for parking or exiting a parking space by pressing the corresponding button in the central display.
- Select a name for the parking or exiting operation, such as “Work”. ▶

The recording is finished after saving and it can then be used for trained parking.

### Managing operations for parking or exiting parking spaces

- To edit the name of an operation for parking or exiting a parking space, press and hold the corresponding operation and select ✎.
- To delete an operation for parking or exiting a parking space, press and hold the corresponding operation and select 🗑.

### Additional information

– You can save up to five operations for parking or exiting parking spaces. You can only save one operation for parking or exiting a parking space in the immediate vicinity of another saved operation. If different operations for parking or exiting parking spaces are saved with the same name, a number will appear beside the symbol.
– A saved parking operation cannot be used for exiting a parking space by default. Operations for exiting parking spaces must be programmed separately.

## Using trained parking

### Activating trained parking

Requirement: you are near an operation for parking or exiting a parking space.

- To activate the system, press while the parking system is activated.
- Drive to the starting point of the saved operation for parking or exiting a parking space and apply the brakes until the vehicle is stationary.

If a trained operation for parking or exiting a parking space has been detected nearby, a message will appear in the central display. You can start the system once you are positioned at the starting point or on the path of the trained operation for parking or exiting a parking space.

### Assisted parking using a programmed operation for parking or exiting a parking space

Requirement: trained parking has been activated and a recording is selected.

- Start the programmed operation for parking or exiting a parking space by pressing the corresponding button in the central display.
- Remove your hands from the steering wheel.
- When the traffic situation allows, release the brakes ⇨ ⚠. The symbol indicates that the system is active and that it will take over vehicle operation.
- In situations where conditions are unclear, cancel the operation for parking or exiting a parking space by applying the brakes until the vehicle is stopped or take over steering.
- If driving on the path of a trained operation for parking or exiting a parking space, the distance to the final position will be displayed in the central display.

### Starting the programmed operation for parking or exiting a parking space remotely

The function or equipment that is described was in development at the time this manual was published and may not be available.

You may also remotely start a programmed operation for parking or exiting a parking space.

Requirement: you are near an operation for parking or exiting a parking space.

- Select a recording and park the vehicle at the starting point.
- Select the ⇨ *page 175* button.

### System interventions during an operation for parking or exiting a parking space

Within system limitations, the system can react to detected obstacles, pedestrians, or other road users by avoiding them or braking.

Interventions are only possible within the area of the recorded operation for parking or exiting a parking space.

**⚠ WARNING**

– Observe the safety information and note the limitations of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 113* to ⇨ *page 115*.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, only use the system if you are sure that there are no obstacles in the vehicle's path or under the ▶

vehicle, and that no obstacles could move into the vehicle's path.
– Trained parking is an assist system. The driver is still responsible for monitoring the vehicle's surroundings and preventing collisions when using the system.
– When using trained parking, the steering wheel turns quickly on its own. Injuries to your fingers or hands are possible if you reach into the steering wheel spokes during this process.

## Pausing/canceling trained parking

### Pausing manually

You can pause trained parking at any time by applying the brakes until the vehicle is stopped and remaining stationary for a short time. To resume the process of parking exiting a parking space, press the button to continue in the central display and release the brakes.

### Automatically canceling or pausing

The trained parking system is paused or canceled automatically in the following situations, among other things:

– You turn the system off
– You press the accelerator pedal
– You set the parking brake
– You intervene with steering
– The system's limit for possible parking maneuvers is exceeded
– A vehicle door is opened
– The time limit is exceeded
– An obstacle is detected
– A supporting system such as the parking system is malfunctioning,
– The vehicle is driving too far off the recorded path,
– If the ESC intervenes
– Cross traffic is detected.

The or display appears. A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays.

If the process of parking or exiting a parking space was automatically canceled, you must take over control of the vehicle.

You can resume the process of parking or exiting a parking space in some situations. Follow the messages in the central display. If necessary, press the button in the central display to continue.

## Trained parking messages

If , or turns on, trained parking is not available and you may need to actively brake on your own.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. To display the additional information, open the notification center in the central display. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 115*. Try to turn on the system again later or after the next time the vehicle is turned on.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Phone

## Introduction

You can use the phone interface to connect your mobile device and operate it conveniently through the MMI. You can connect up to two mobile devices, for example your business and your personal mobile device. You can be reached in your vehicle through both mobile devices.

The functions depend on the country, the vehicle equipment, the mobile device used, and its operating system and are not available in all displays.

**WARNING**

- Medical experts warn that mobile devices can interfere with the function of pacemakers. Always maintain a minimum distance of about 7.9 inches (20 cm) between the mobile device antennas and the pacemaker.
  - Do not carry the mobile device in a pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is turned on.
  - Turn off the mobile device immediately if you suspect it may be interfering with the pacemaker.
- Your mobile device works with radio signals. For this reason, it is not always possible to establish a connection under all circumstances. Do not rely only on your mobile device for essential communication (such as during a medical emergency).
- Always follow the instructions given by the emergency personnel during an emergency call and only end the call when they instruct you to do so.
- Do not use the Audi assistant in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. The system may take longer to dial the number or may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.
- There is a risk of explosion at gas stations and facilities that store and transport fuel or chemicals. These locations are not always clearly marked. This also includes locations where fuel vapors (such as escaping propane or gasoline vapor in vehicles or buildings), chemicals, or large quantities of dust particles (such as flour, sawdust, or metal) may be present in the air. This also applies to all other locations where the drive system or the mobile device must be turned off. Turn off your mobile device at these locations.
- The demands of traffic require full attention of all road users. Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 20*.

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

## Opening the phone function

### Opening the phone function in the MMI

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Phone**.

### Opening the phone function in the instrument cluster

▸ Press the ▭ / ▭ button on the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until the phone content is displayed.

## Connecting a mobile device

▸ Connect your mobile device with the MMI in the **Connection manager** menu ⇨ *page 216*.
▸ After the connection process, make sure the device usage is set to a mobile device.

If you allowed access to your contacts during the connection process, they will be displayed automatically in the MMI after connecting successfully.

Depending on your mobile device, you can use the hands-free system after connecting successfully. You can make calls using the antenna on your mobile device.

If a connected mobile device has voice control, you can operate your mobile device using the external voice control.

8B1012721BF

# Overview of phone symbols

The following symbols may be available in the MMI depending on the country, the vehicle equipment, the mobile device used, and its operating system:

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| | Search for a contact. |
| | Switch between the mobile devices connected to the MMI. |
| | Switch the audio output during a phone call to the mobile device, the vehicle speakers (handsfree), or the speakers built into the head restraint. |
| | Send tone sequences (DTMF) during a phone call. |
| ... | Display other call options during a phone call. |
| | Edit a phone number before dialing. |
| | Display call history. |
| | Send a message template as a text message. |
| | Call recommendations. |

# Opening the phone settings menu

You can turn certain functions on or off and adjust their settings in the **Phone** settings menu. The settings depend on the country and vehicle equipment.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Phone** > ⚙.

# Opening the messages menu

You can turn various functions on or off and edit message templates in the **Messages** menu.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Phone** > ⚙ > **Messages**.

# Using phone functions

## Switching between connected mobile devices

If two mobile devices are connected to the MMI, you can switch between the mobile devices to access the contacts on each, to make calls, and to adjust settings.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Phone** > *connected phone 1* or *connected phone 2*.
▸ Press the desired device name.

## Starting a call

There are various options for starting a call, depending on the country, the vehicle equipment, the mobile device used, and its operating system.

### Starting a call in the MMI

▸ To search for a contact, select: ⊞ > **Phone** > 🔍.
▸ To enter a number manually, select: ⊞ > **Phone** > **Keypad**.
▸ To start a call using the call or favorites list, select: ⊞ > **Phone** > **Call list**/**Favorites** > *an entry*.
▸ To start a call using the contacts list, select: ⊞ > **Phone** > **Contacts** > *a contact*. Select the desired phone number, if necessary.

### Starting a call in the instrument cluster

The call list is displayed in one of the tabs on the left in the instrument cluster.

▸ To select an entry from the call list, turn the left thumbwheel.
▸ To confirm an entry, press the left thumbwheel.

### Starting a call in the head-up display

Requirement: the phone is enabled to display content in the head-up display ⇨ *page 25*.

▸ To show the call list, press the 📞 button on the multifunction steering wheel.
▸ To select an entry from the call list, turn the left thumbwheel.
▸ To confirm an entry, press the left thumbwheel.

### Starting a call using the Audi assistant

You can start a call using the Audi assistant.

## Making a phone call

You can answer or end incoming calls in the MMI and using the multifunction steering wheel.

If you exit the vehicle during a phone call, the Bluetooth connection will be disconnected. Depending on mobile device used, phone calls in progress may be automatically transferred from the MMI to your mobile device.

Depending on the mobile device used and your mobile phone service provider, additional call options may be available during a phone call.

Depending on the country, the **3-way conference call service** function in the **Phone** settings menu ⇨ *page 186* must be activated for some call options.

### Declining a call with a text message

Requirement: the mobile device used supports the function. There is an incoming call.

- Make sure that the function is turned on in the **Messages** menu ⇨ *page 186*.
- Press **Decline: text**. The message template that has been set is sent.

### Putting a call on hold in the instrument cluster

Requirement: there must be a call in progress.

- Turn the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel until **Hold** is selected.
- To confirm the selection, press the left thumbwheel.

### Answering a second incoming call in the MMI

Requirement: there must be a call in progress. There is a second incoming call.

The call waiting function must be activated on your mobile device to be alerted about an incoming call during an active call. One of these options will be available, depending on the mobile phone service provider:

- Press **Answer**. The current call is put on hold. The incoming call will be answered.
- Press **Replace**. The active call is replaced with the incoming call.

### Swapping a call in the MMI

Requirement: there must be a call in progress. A second call is on hold.

- Press on the call that is on hold to switch between the calls.

### Starting a conference call in the MMI

Requirement: there must be a call in progress. A second call is on hold.

- Press ⅄. The calls are merged into a conference call.

Depending on your mobile phone service provider, you can add up to five active callers to a conference call.

## Using a contact list

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI.

All contacts stored in your mobile device are displayed in the contact list. If there are too many entries, contacts may be missing in the MMI. The contacts can only be edited on the mobile device.

In the **Phone** settings menu, you can set the sort order and manually download contacts ⇨ *page 186*. Depending on the mobile device used, you may need to disconnect and reconnect the Bluetooth connection to download the contacts. If necessary, pay attention to any additional messages on your mobile device.

After turning off and exiting the vehicle, the contacts from the mobile device will be updated the next time the MMI starts if the mobile device is within range and the Bluetooth function is turned on in the mobile device and the MMI.

## Using call recommendations

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI. There are entries in the call list.

If call recommendations are turned on in the **Audi assistant** menu ⇨ *page 27*, contacts in the call list will be recommended based on the situation

### Opening a business card

The business card shows you details about a contact.

▸ To view the business card for a contact, press ⓘ.

## Using text message functions

You can send text messages to contacts and have incoming text messages displayed in the MMI or read out.

Requirement: your mobile device must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth Message Access Profile (Bluetooth MAP).

Applies to: iPhone: Make sure that access to your text messages is turned on in your mobile device's Bluetooth settings. The Bluetooth connection may need to be disconnected and reconnected to do this.

### Sending a text message

▸ Press and hold a contact in the call list until the context menu appears, or
▸ Open a contact's business card.
▸ Press 💬.
▸ Select a message template.

### Displaying incoming text messages

If the function is turned on in the **Messages** menu ⇨ *page 186*, new messages are displayed in the MMI notification center.

## Using the phone compartment

### Safety information about the phone compartment

#### Information about declarations of conformity

The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 293*.

**WARNING**

– Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.
– Do not allow the visual or audio signals from a mobile device to distract you from traffic, because this increases the risk of an accident. Only operate the mobile device through the MMI.

**Note**

Applicable to U.S.A.

Operation of the phone compartment is subject to the following requirements of the Federal Communications Commission:
– This is a CONSUMER device.
– BEFORE USE, you MUST REGISTER THIS DEVICE with your wireless provider and have your provider´s consent. Most wireless providers consent to the use of signal boosters. Some providers may not consent to the use of this device on their network. If you are unsure, contact your service provider.
– You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST be installed at least 20 cm (8 inches) from any person.
– You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by the FCC or a licensed wireless service provider.
– WARNING: E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

**Note**

Applicable to Canada

**In Canada, operation of a Zone Enhancer, such as a phone compartment, is subject to the following requirements of the Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada (ISED):**
– This is a CONSUMER device.
– BEFORE USE, you **MUST** meet all requirements set out in **CPC-2-1-05**. At the time of printing this user manual, the CPC-2-1-05 ▸

client procedures circular of ISED Canada was available at the following web page: http://www.ic.gc.ca/eic/site/smt-gst.nsf/eng/sf08942.html.
– You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST NOT be installed within 20 cm of any person.
– You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by ISED or a licensed wireless service provider.
– **WARNING**: E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

## Introduction

Using the phone compartment, you can wirelessly charge your mobile device and, depending on the system, make calls using the vehicle's exterior antenna.

The phone compartment is located in the front center console.

## Phone compartment system limitations

The phone compartment functions may be restricted or temporarily unavailable in situations such as the following:
– More than one mobile device is placed in the phone compartment
– The mobile device is inside a bag or a protective case.
– There are objects between the phone compartment and the mobile device.

## Using the exterior vehicle antenna

Depending on vehicle equipment, the mobile communications coupling antenna connects your mobile device to the exterior vehicle antenna, which reduces radiation inside the vehicle and improves reception quality.

Requirement: the vehicle is turned on.

▸ Place your mobile device in the phone compartment with the rear side of the device on the charging symbol.

## Selecting the wireless charging menu

You can turn various functions on or off in the **Wireless charging** menu.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Phone** > ⚙ > **Mobile device wireless charging**, or
▸ Select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Connections** > **Wireless charging**.

## Charging a mobile device wirelessly

You can charge your mobile device wirelessly using the phone compartment. The charging capacity depends on the mobile device used.

Requirement: the vehicle is turned on. Your mobile device must meet the Qi standard.

▸ Make sure the function is turned on in the **Wireless charging** menu ⇨ *page 189*.
▸ Place your mobile device in the phone compartment with the rear side of the device on the charging symbol.

### Wireless charging messages

If the function is turned on in the **Wireless charging** menu ⇨ *page 189*, the notification center in the MMI will show that the cell phone is charging wirelessly.

**WARNING**

An alternating magnetic field is used for wireless charging. Always keep a minimum distance of approximately 2.4 inches (6 cm) to the phone compartment charging surface. The thresholds for prolonged exposure at this distance comply with ICNIRP1998. Therefore, interactions such as irritation of sensory organs, malfunctions of active medical implants (such as pacemakers, infusion pumps, or neurostimulators) or effects on passive medical implants (such as prosthetic limbs) is highly unlikely. If you have a medical implant, seek medical advice from a specialist if you have any questions. You can also turn the phone compartment wireless charging function on or off. You can still charge your mobile device using a cable connection.

**Note**

The alternating magnetic field during a charging process can damage objects containing NFC chips.

– Do not place cards with an NFC chip between the phone compartment and the mobile device while charging.

### Using the reminder warning

Requirement: your mobile device must be located on the phone compartment (if Qi-capable) or connected to the USB port with charging function using a USB adapter, and the smartphone interface must be active or your iPhone must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth and charging using a USB adapter connected to the USB port with charging function.

If the reminder warning is turned on in the **Wireless charging** menu ⇨ *page 189*, you will be notified that your phone is still in the vehicle when exiting the vehicle.

## Phone troubleshooting

The information that follows lists some troubleshooting options. They depend on vehicle equipment.

| Problem | Solution |
|---|---|
| The connection between the mobile device and the MMI failed. | Make sure the requirements for connecting a mobile device have been met ⇨ *page 216*, or<br>Make sure you did not accidentally decline the PIN for establishing a connection on your mobile device. Repeat the connection process, if necessary ⇨ *page 216*. |
| Some of the contacts or all of the contacts were not loaded into the MMI after connecting. | Avoid using special characters in names.<br>Avoid using contact groups on your mobile device.<br>Check for prompts on your mobile device when connecting with Bluetooth. |
| Individual phone functions are grayed out or unavailable. | The phone functions depend on the mobile device you are using, as well as its service provider and operating system. |
| Some phone functions may be grayed out or unavailable even though the mobile device supports them. | Check if the Bluetooth settings on your mobile device are restricted or individual Bluetooth settings are deactivated. This may be the case with business mobile phones. |
| Text messages are not displayed in the MMI. | Check if the requirements needed to use the text message function have been met. |
| Wireless mobile device charging is not working or is interrupted. | Check if wireless charging with the phone compartment is turned on.<br>Check if your mobile device is Qi-capable.<br>Make sure your mobile device is positioned correctly on the charging symbol with the back facing down and that there are no objects located between the phone compartment and the phone. |

# Audi connect

## Information about Audi connect

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, Audi connect pairs your vehicle with the Internet. The apps and services offered expand your vehicle's range of functions.

The availability, scope, costs, and content of the apps, services, and technologies may depend on the software version installed in your vehicle, or on your mobile device. They may also vary depending on the country, rate, vehicle, and equipment.

The availability of apps and services depends on the subscription. The apps and services can be modified, activated, deactivated, renamed, and enhanced without further notification.

Some apps and services are provided by third party providers or are dependent on third party providers. Audi is not responsible for the content and availability.

The availability, scope, providers, screen display, and cost of apps and services may vary depending on the country, model, model year, mobile device, and rates.

Use of the most up-to-date mobile network standard is not available in every country. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility or your mobile phone service provider for additional information.

The myAudi app is required for some services. For additional information, see my.audi.com.

**WARNING**

- To reduce the risk of an accident, only use Audi connect services and the Wi-Fi hotspot if the traffic situation permits. Read and follow the guidelines provided in ⇨ *page 20, Information about traffic safety*.
- It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 69*.

**Note**

- The connection costs of Audi connect services are included in the price of Audi connect during the subscription period, with some exceptions. Some services require additional data. Please note that there may be additional charges when using these services. Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, there are various options for obtaining additional data:
  - You can purchase a data plan for your vehicle. For additional information, see my.audi.com.
  - You can connect your vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot. For example, the Wi-Fi hotspot may be provided by your smartphone and use your smartphone's SIM card data plan. This could result in additional costs, depending on your mobile phone service provider and especially when using in other countries. A flat rate data plan is strongly recommended. You can obtain more information from your mobile phone service provider.
- If you connect your mobile device to the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot to connect to the Internet, your mobile device's SIM card may be used instead in certain cases. This feature depends on the configuration of your mobile device and operating system. This could result in fees depending on your mobile phone service provider, especially if you are using this feature while abroad. A flat rate data plan is strongly recommended. For more information, contact your mobile phone service provider or refer to the user guide for your mobile device.
- You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection, and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used, for example, to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot.

– In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the coverage range of the respective mobile phone service provider, some functions and/or services may not be available, it may not be possible to send or receive data, or functionality may be limited.

# Using the Internet in the vehicle

## Connecting to the Internet using the eSIM card in the vehicle

An Internet connection is required to use Audi connect services or apps in the vehicle. An eSIM card is installed in vehicles with Audi connect. You can use the Internet immediately using the eSIM card. Follow the system instructions if necessary. Some services require additional data.

**WARNING**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

**Note**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

## Information about additional data

Some services require additional data. Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, there are various options for obtaining additional data:
– Use data plans
– Connect the vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot

## Using data plans

Some services require additional data. Depending on the country, data plans are offered for this.

Requirement: depending on the country, your myAudi user is set as the key user in the vehicle.

You can purchase data plans at my.audi.com.

### Displaying data plan information

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, you can display the available data and the data plan status.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Connections** > **Data plans**.

Depending on the country, there may be restrictions on the use of data plans (such as mobile phone service providers) when driving in other countries.

**WARNING**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

**Note**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

## Connecting the vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot

You can connect the vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot using Wi-Fi.

Requirement: the vehicle is turned on.

▸ If necessary, turn on the “Wi-Fi hotspot (tethering)” function or the “personal hotspot” on your mobile device.
▸ Select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Connections** > **Wi-Fi**.
▸ Turn on the **Wi-Fi** function.
▸ Press on the desired Wi-Fi hotspot from the list of available networks.
▸ Follow the system instructions.

The vehicle will successfully connect through Wi-Fi to a Wi-Fi hotspot.

### Information about declarations of conformity

The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 293*.

**WARNING**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

**Note**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

# Audi connect services

## Setting up Audi connect services and apps

You need a myAudi account to use Audi connect services and apps.

- Install the myAudi app on your mobile device.
- Register in the myAudi app to create a myAudi account.
- Set a key user.
- Follow the instructions in the myAudi app.

A myAudi user must be logged in for some Audi connect services.

Some Audi connect services must be activated at my.audi.com.

## Information about Audi connect services

Using Audi connect services expands the range of your vehicle's functions.

You can generally use the Audi connect services that are available in your vehicle directly in the MMI.

Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be configured through your personal myAudi account at my.audi.com before using them for the first time.

Information about the services and the corresponding app was accurate at the time this manual was published. The scope of services depends on the country and equipment. There may be changes over the service life of the vehicle.

**WARNING**

– Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.
– Vehicle messages, text messages, and illuminated warning and indicator lights in the vehicle always take priority over information from the Audi connect services. Do not take safety risks based on the information displayed by the Audi connect services. Doing so could result in vehicle breakdowns in traffic and in serious injuries or accidents.

**Note**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

## Information about vehicle control services

Using Audi connect vehicle control services, you can perform tasks such as viewing data about your vehicle or control vehicle functions remotely.

You can view and use services available for your vehicle at my.audi.com or through the myAudi app.

Accessing specific data or controlling functions remotely depends on the charge level of the vehicle battery. Therefore, these functions only have limited availability after the vehicle is turned off.

Information about the services and the corresponding app was accurate at the time this manual was published. The scope of services depends on the country and equipment. There may be changes over the service life of the vehicle.

**WARNING**

– Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.
– Vehicle messages, text messages, and illuminated warning and indicator lights in the vehicle always take priority over information from the Audi connect services. Do not take safety risks based on the information displayed by the Audi connect services. Doing so could result in vehicle breakdowns in traffic and in serious injuries or accidents.

**Note**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

8B1012721BF

# Connecting a mobile device to the vehicle hotspot

You can connect up to eight mobile devices (such as smartphones) to the vehicle hotspot using Wi-Fi. If the vehicle is connected to the Internet , the connected mobile devices can also use the vehicle's Internet connection.

Requirement: the drive system is turned on. Depending on the country, a data package may also be required.

- Turn on the Wi-Fi function on your mobile device.
- Select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Connections** > **Vehicle hotspot**.
- Turn on the **Vehicle hotspot**.
- Press **Connect devices to the vehicle hotspot**.
- Follow the system instructions to connect your mobile device with the vehicle hotspot.

A random initial password was set in the MMI at the factory. Audi recommends changing the initial password. Only use secure passwords that conform to the general guidelines for secure passwords.

### Information about declarations of conformity

The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 293*.

**WARNING**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

**Note**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

# Store

## Introduction

After receiving your vehicle, you can use your Audi's digital store to add functions or apps.

## Adding functions and apps

### Adding functions in the vehicle

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, you can add functions (such as functions on demand) using the store in the vehicle or using the myAudi app.

- Select: ⊞ > **Store** > **Audi functions**.
- Follow the system instructions if necessary.

The vehicle may need to be restarted before using a function for the first time.

### Adding apps in the vehicle

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, you can add apps using the store in the vehicle.

- Select: ⊞ > **Store** > **Apps**.
- Follow the system instructions if necessary.

### Changing the store region

- Select: ⊞ > **Store** > ⚙.

### Information about functions and apps

Certain functions (such as functions on demand) are linked to the vehicle and may be available in the vehicle permanently or for a limited time after the vehicle is sold, depending on the license. Apps are linked to the respective myAudi account.

**WARNING**

– Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.
– Only use the store in the vehicle and on your smartphone when the vehicle is stationary. Do not be distracted from traffic, because this increases the risk of an accident.

**Note**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

## Displaying installation history of functions

You can display the installation history. ▶

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Functions on demand**.

### Displaying installation history and updates

You can display the installation history and updates.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Store** > **My applications**.

# Emergency call

## Emergency call systems

### Overview of the emergency call systems

An emergency call is a combination of data transmission and a phone call. Your vehicle uses data transmission to forward important information, such as the vehicle and position data, to an emergency call center.

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available:

With the **emergency call**, you can call for help in dangerous situations as quickly as possible. Use this function when emergency help is needed ⇨ *page 195*.

– Audi connect emergency call (TPS emergency call). This eCall system uses third party emergency call centers, and if necessary, public emergency call centers.

With **online roadside assistance**, you can request assistance if there is a breakdown or a minor accident ⇨ *page 196*.

**WARNING**

– In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the coverage range of the respective mobile phone service provider, some functions and/or services may not be available, it may not be possible to send or receive data, or functionality may be limited.
– All sound sources, such as audible warning signals for the parking system, can be muted during active emergency calls.

### Information about the emergency call systems

The services are provided through a SIM card installed in the vehicle. Services are provided assuming that the mobile phone network required for the installed SIM card is functioning and available for use.

TPS emergency calls are only available within the mobile network coverage area of the mobile phone service provider selected by Audi.

### Information on using the emergency call systems

The availability of the TPS emergency call is limited to certain times.

The costs for call and data connections for TPS emergency calls is included in the price of the services.

### Emergency call system functions

A TPS emergency call can be made manually or automatically ⇨ *page 195*.

In the event that an automatic TPS emergency call is made, emergency responders as well as the local emergency call center or police station may receive the necessary information in order for help to arrive as quickly as possible.

### Making an emergency call

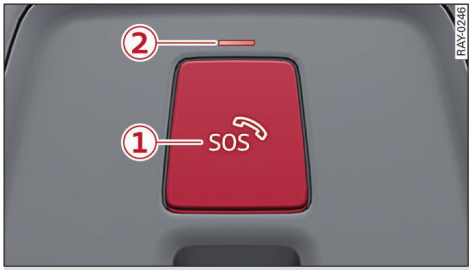



**Fig. 100** Front headliner: cover for the emergency call button

#### Manual emergency call

Requirement: the vehicle is turned on. ▸

- Tap the cover (1) to open it.
- Press and hold the emergency call button until the LED (2) blinks. The emergency call will be made.
- If the emergency call button is pressed by mistake, then press it again immediately and hold it until the LED stays on. The emergency call will be canceled.

### Automatic emergency call

The vehicle electrical system initiates an automatic emergency call under certain circumstances, for example if an airbag deploys. The LED (2) blinks. The emergency call will be made. The emergency call cannot be canceled.

If the emergency call ends due to a poor connection, then the system will automatically try to connect again.

### LED status

– **Green** – The emergency call function is available from the vehicle side.
– **Red** – There is a malfunction in the emergency call function. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Note the messages about the availability of the emergency function ⇨ *page 196*.
– **Off** – The emergency call function is not available, perhaps because no network is available.

### Warnings

If there is a critical system failure in the emergency call systems, the vehicle occupants will receive the following warning: see ⇨ *page 196, LED status* and ⇨ *page 196, Emergency call system messages*.

## Sending the phone number during an emergency call

In case of an emergency call, your phone number can be sent to a public emergency call center or police station to ensure help arrives as quickly as possible.

- Select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Connections** > **Connection manager** > ⚙.
- Turn on the **Send number during emergency call** function.
- To save phone numbers or edit them, press: **Save emergency call number/Change no. for emergency call**.
- Enter the phone number using the international format.

The function must be turned on separately for each mobile device that is connected.

Compatibility cannot be guaranteed for all types of phones/SIM cards. Because of this, it may not always be possible to read out the phone number. The display will not indicate if there is a compatibility issue.

## Emergency call system messages

**SOS Emergency call function: malfunction! Function unavailable. Please contact Service**

If this indicator light turns on and this message appears, you cannot make an emergency call. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Online roadside assistance

## Introduction

Online roadside assistance may consist of a combination of a phone call and data transmission. The availability of the services offered depends on the country and may change in the future. Your vehicle transmits important information to the Audi service center, such as vehicle and position data.

## Using online roadside assistance

If the online roadside assistance call is dropped due to a poor connection, then online roadside assistance must be started again.

### Accessing online roadside assistance with the headliner button

- Press the button at the front of the headliner. The LED in the button turns red. ▶

- Follow the instructions from the system to start online roadside assistance. The online roadside assistance call will be made.
- To cancel online roadside assistance, press the button at the front of the headliner.

### Accessing online roadside assistance in the MMI

- Select: > **Online roadside assistance**.
- Follow the instructions from the system to start online roadside assistance. The online roadside assistance call will be made.

### Audi incident assistance

A minor accident may be detected by the vehicle electrical system.

- Follow the instructions from the system to call Audi incident assistance or to make an emergency call.

# Navigation

## Introduction

The navigation system directs you to your destination, around traffic incidents, and on alternative routes, if desired.

The functions and services depend on the country and vehicle equipment, and are not available in all displays.

**WARNING**

– The demands of traffic require full attention of all road users. Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 20*.
– The route calculated by the navigation system is a driving recommendation. Follow the traffic regulations that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle. In the event that the driving directions contradict traffic regulations, always follow the traffic regulations applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle to reduce the risk of an accident.

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

## Navigation system limitations

The navigation system is subject to the limitations of the system. Navigation may be temporarily impaired in certain situations.

– Snow and objects on the GPS antenna or trees and large buildings can impair satellite reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position. Several deactivated or malfunctioning satellites can interrupt GPS reception.
– Roadways are always subject to change, such as new roads, construction zones, road closures, or changes to road names or house numbers. Outdated navigation data can result in errors or inaccuracies during route guidance.

## Opening navigation

### Opening the navigation function in the MMI

- Select: > **Navigation**.

### Opening the navigation function in the instrument cluster

- Press the / button on the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until the navigation content is displayed.

### Opening the map in the instrument cluster

- Press the VIEW button on the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until the navigation map is displayed.

## Overview of navigation symbols

The following symbols may be available in the MMI depending on the country and the vehicle equipment.

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| | Search for a destination and select it for route guidance. |
| / | Set or edit the home or work address. |
| | Last destinations. |
| | Destination information (such as the drive and distance to the destination) or destination marker on the map. |
| | Cancel route guidance. |
| / | Turn voice guidance on or off. You can adjust the voice guidance and the volume of its announcements in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 198*. You can change the volume of navigation announcements while one is playing ⇨ *page 23*. |
| | Set the map orientation: you can select from 2D heading-up map, 2D north-up map, and 3D heading-up map. |
| / | Zoom in and out on the map. |
| / AUTO / M | Adjust the map scale: you can select from the overview map, automatic zoom, and manual zoom. |
| | Center the map on the current vehicle position. |
| | Current vehicle position. |

# Opening the navigation settings menu

You can turn certain functions on or off and adjust their settings in the **Navigation** settings menu. The settings depend on the country and vehicle equipment.

▸ Select: > **Navigation** > .

# Opening the map contents menu

In the **Map contents** menu, you can turn the content displayed in the map on or off.

▸ Select: > **Navigation** > > **Map contents**.

# Entering a destination

## Searching for and selecting a destination in the MMI

You can search for your desired destination using the search function and select it for route guidance. The navigation system always searches for the fastest route.

### Opening the search

▸ Select: > **Navigation** > .

### Search options

The following options may be available depending on the country and vehicle equipment, as well as on the user that is logged in.

– Search: search for one or more search terms using the input field or the Audi assistant.
– Internet search: search for a destination using a search engine provider. Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet.
– Online points of interest: search for a point of interest in a point of interest category, such as gas stations, parking lots, and restaurants. To use additional categories, press •••.

Route guidance starts once you have selected the desired destination.

### POIs

Distances to points of interest are displayed as a straight-line distance from your current location. The actual distance from your current location to the point of interest is updated automatically. The list of points of interest that were found is not resorted when this happens.

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ! *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

## Selecting a destination in the instrument cluster

Requirement: route guidance is not active.

Navigation is displayed in one of the tabs on the left in the instrument cluster. ▶

- To select a destination from the list, turn the left thumbwheel.
- To confirm a destination, press the left thumbwheel.

Depending on the selected function, it may be necessary to use the MMI.

## Using search filters for points of interest

Depending on the point of interest category, you can use filters to search for a destination.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet.

- Select: ⊞ > **Navigation** > 🔍 > *a point of interest category (such as parking lots)* > **Filter**.
- Select your desired filters. The applicable points of interest are shown on the map.
- Use the destination from the map in order to navigate to a point of interest.

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

## Using a destination from the map

You can use a point on the map or an item from the map content (such as a point of interest) as the destination.

- Press on a point or on map content (such as 🍴) on the map.

The destination details will be displayed. You can set the destination for the route guidance.

## Displaying the destination details

You can show additional information about a destination. You have the following options for opening the destination details:

- Press ⓘ in the search.
- Press on a point or on map content (such as 🍴) on the map.

You can set the destination for route guidance or add it as a stopover to route guidance in progress.

## Selecting contacts as the destination

You can select the address of a contact in your mobile device as the destination.

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI. A contact must have an address stored.

- Open a contact's business card.
- Press on the stored address to transfer the address to the search.
- Press on the address in the search area to start route guidance.

## Using myAudi navigation

MMI navigation works seamlessly with the myAudi app.

Your last destinations and favorites are synced through your myAudi account. All important destinations can be displayed in the vehicle and in the myAudi app.

To load destinations in the vehicle automatically, Audi recommends logging into the vehicle with a myAudi user ⇨ *page 29*.

Requirement: the MMI and your mobile device must be connected to the Internet. You must have the myAudi app installed on your mobile device. You are in the vehicle and logged into the myAudi app with the same myAudi account.

myAudi navigation functions:

– You can send destinations from the myAudi app to the vehicle.
– Active route guidance in the myAudi app can be continued in the MMI.

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

# Using functions with active route guidance

## Using destination information

Route guidance starts once you have entered a destination. The destination information 🏁 calculated by the MMI is displayed, and it includes the driving time and distance to the destination, as well as the arrival time at the destination.

- Press the destination information 🏁 to display details about the route or to edit the route.

## Using the route monitor

The route monitor shows you information along the route. Traffic information, gas stations, points of interest, alternative routes, and national borders can be displayed, depending on the country and vehicle equipment.

- To display the entire route monitor, press on the route monitor bar.
- Press on an item in the route monitor information to show the details.
- Press 〈 to hide the route monitor.

## Editing a route

You can edit your current route by adding or deleting a stopover, editing the order of stopovers, or replacing the destination.

- To add a stopover, enter a new destination in the search or select a destination from the map, or
- Press **Edit route** in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 198*.
- To replace the existing destination, enter a new destination and press **Replace destination**. The route guidance will update.

## Using route criteria

You can change route criteria in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 198*.

### Using automatic route adjustment

By receiving traffic information, the MMI can calculate a better route and the possible time saved compared to the current route.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet.

If automatic route adjustment is turned on, a better route will be automatically applied if one is available. The MMI does not suggest a better route if the calculated route does not save any time compared to the current route.

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

## Using the maneuver display

If the maneuver display is turned on in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 198*, the next driving maneuver (such as turning or changing lanes) will be shown in the map.

- Press on the maneuver display to repeat the voice guidance.

## Using alternative routes

If alternative routes are turned on in the **Map contents** ⇨ *page 198* menu, you will also be shown two alternative routes in the map, in addition to the calculated route. The time difference compared to the route that is currently selected will be shown with the alternative routes.

- Press on a route in the map. The information window for the corresponding route is shown with the respective distance to the destination as well as the calculated arrival time. Tolls are displayed depending on the country.
- Select the preferred route and press **Start**. The route guidance will update.

## Canceling route guidance

- To cancel active route guidance, press 🏁. ▶

Route guidance will end. The destination and any stopovers will be stored individually as last destinations.

## Using predictive route guidance

The MMI can learn frequently-visited destinations, such as your workplace, and suggest route guidance to them, depending on the current vehicle position and time of day. This happens regardless of whether you are using navigation or not. Frequent stopovers will also be learned and considered in the suggested route. The learned destinations are saved to a specific user.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet. You are logged into the vehicle with a myAudi user.

You can turn predictive route guidance on or off in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 198*. If the function is turned off, your destinations will not be recorded anymore. Destinations that have already been recorded will remain saved.

Even with active route guidance turned off, the MMI can check the traffic conditions and show possible traffic incidents for the potential routes to be driven.

### Accepting a suggested destination

Requirement: route guidance is not active. A suggested destination must be displayed.

▸ To accept the suggested destination, press 🏁. Route guidance will start.

### Deleting recorded destinations

You can delete destinations recorded for the current user in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 198*.

– **Delete recordings from last 24 hours**: destinations recorded within the last 24 hours will be deleted.
– **Delete personal routes & destinations**: all saved destinations will be deleted.

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

## Operating the map

### Adjusting the map in the MMI

You can operate the navigation map using finger movements to provide an optimal view.

– Moving the map: drag your finger across the map in the desired direction.
– Moving the map quickly: swipe your finger across the map in the desired direction and lift your finger off the map.
– Zooming in on the map in increments: double-tap on the map with one finger.
– Zooming in on the map: place two fingers on the map and pull your fingers apart, double tap on the map with one finger, or hold one finger on the map while swiping your other finger down.
– Zooming out on the map in increments: double-tap on the map with two fingers.
– Zooming out on the map: place two fingers on the map and pinch your fingers together, double tap on the map with one finger, or hold one finger on the map while swiping your other finger up.
– Rotating the map: rotate the map using two fingers.
– Tilting the map: swipe up or down with two fingers.

### Adjusting the map in the instrument cluster

You can adjust the navigation map in the instrument cluster.

Requirement: the map is displayed in the instrument cluster.

– To zoom on the map, press and hold the ▭ / ▭ button until no more tabs are displayed.
– Zooming the map in or out: turn the left thumbwheel.

# Using map functions

## Changing the map colors

You can change the map colors in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 198*. If the **Auto** map color is set, the display adapts to the lighting conditions (for example, by changing from day to night when driving through a tunnel).

## Viewing country information

You can view country specific information, such as the maximum speed limit on highways, in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 198*.

## Using a satellite map

You can display the navigation map with satellite images. The map view is based on data packets received from the Internet in the form of satellite images, which are then combined with the roadways from the standard map view.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet.

You can turn the satellite map on or off in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 198*.

The satellite map is updated regularly whenever the function is opened. The process may take several seconds. Depending on the Internet connection, the standard map may be displayed instead when the satellite map is turned on.

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

# Using traffic information

The MMI can receive real-time online traffic information about congestion, accidents, road construction, and other incidents. The functions depend on the country and vehicle equipment.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet.

If traffic information is available on your route, it will be shown in the map or in the route monitor.

▸ Press on a traffic information item to display the details.

Particularly critical traffic information, such as warnings about wrong-way drivers, is automatically displayed as a notification.

Traffic incidents located on your route will be displayed with colored warning symbols. Traffic incidents that are not located on your route are grayed out. If route guidance is not active, all traffic incidents are displayed in color on the map.

### Displaying the traffic flow

You can turn the traffic flow display on or off in the **Map contents** ⇨ *page 198* menu.

The traffic flow is shown in color on the map:

– **Green**: traffic is flowing freely.
– **Orange**: stop-and-go traffic
– **Red**: traffic jam or traffic obstructions.

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

# Performing an online map update

Using the online map update, you can update the map material in your navigation system directly from your vehicle.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet.

When navigation is started for the first time, a notification appears in which you can agree to automatic updates of the map material. You can also turn automatic updates of the navigation database on or off later on in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 198*.

The MMI updates the map online automatically in the background when new map material is available. ▶

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

## Navigation troubleshooting

The information that follows lists some troubleshooting options. They depend on vehicle equipment.

| Problem | Solution |
|---|---|
| The destination entered cannot be found. | If the destination cannot be found, it may not be stored in the navigation database. Check the spelling of the destination that was searched. Use different search options. Search for the destination on the map. Check if automatic updates are allowed in the **Navigation** settings menu ⇨ *page 198*. |
| The last destinations are not displayed. | Last destinations are not stored if you are logged into the vehicle as a guest user or with no user name. Log into the vehicle as a user to store entered destinations and display them as last destinations. |

# Radio

## Introduction

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the radio may support the FM, AM, SiriusXM (satellite radio), and HD Radio frequency bands.

The functions depend on the country and vehicle equipment, and are not available in all displays and for all sources.

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

## Operating the radio

### Opening the radio in the MMI

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Radio**.

### Opening the radio in the instrument cluster

▸ Press the ▭ / ▭ button on the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until radio content is displayed.

### Selecting radio stations in the MMI

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Radio** > *a station list (such as presets)* > *a station*.
▸ To set a frequency, enter it in the search.

### Selecting radio stations in the instrument cluster

The radio is displayed in one of the tabs on the left in the instrument cluster.

▸ Turn the left thumbwheel to select a station.
▸ To confirm a station, press the left thumbwheel.

Depending on the selected function, it may be necessary to use the MMI.

### Opening the search

You can search by station name, frequency, or program type (such as news). ▶

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Radio** > 🔍.

# Overview of radio symbols

The following symbols may be available in the MMI depending on the country and the vehicle equipment.

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| (ψ) | Open the sources menu. |
| ◡ | The system is attempting to receive the station. |
| ⊘ | The station cannot be received. |
| ▷ / II | Starting or stopping the playback mode. |

# Opening the radio settings menu

You can turn certain functions on or off and adjust their settings in the **Radio** settings menu. The settings depend on the country and vehicle equipment.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Radio** > ⚙.

# Using radio functions

## Using HD Radio

If HD Radio is turned on in the **Radio** settings menu ⇨ *page 204*, FM/AM stations that can be received via digital radio are labeled with the HD Radio technology symbol HD and received digitally. If reception quality declines, the radio automatically switches to the analog FM/AM station depending on availability.

Digital HD Radio stations may contain multiple additional audio programs. If you lose reception, the additional audio programs will be muted since they can no longer be received.

## Using automatic music recognition

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet.

If automatic music recognition is turned on in the **Radio** settings menu ⇨ *page 204*, additional information can be displayed if available, such as an album cover, artist, or track.

You can set the preferred view in the **Radio** settings menu ⇨ *page 204*.

To display the legal information about the music recognition software used, you can open the provider information in the **Radio** settings menu ⇨ *page 204*.

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

## Using online station tracking

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet.

If online station tracking is turned on in the **Radio** settings menu ⇨ *page 204*, the radio tuner can switch to an alternative online station if reception is lost in the FM frequency band.

### Display in the station list

When online station tracking is turned on, stations that provide an online station alternative are labeled with the FM symbol.

### Display in the playback view

The following applies in the playback view when online station tracking is turned on: the grayed out WEB symbol indicates stations that can be switched to an alternative online station. The WEB symbol indicates stations that are currently being received online.

### Setting the data rate

You can set the preferred data rate for online station tracking in the **Radio** settings menu ⇨ *page 204*. This allows you to increase the playback quality or reduce the data usage. ▸

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

## Using radio text

Program information (such as general text information, artist, composer, song) is displayed in the radio text.

Requirement: the selected radio station must support the radio text function.

### Opening radio text

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Radio** > *a station list (such as FM)* > *a station* > •••.

## Using music streaming functions in the radio

In the radio playback display, you can use various functions from a music streaming service with the track currently playing, such as saving the current track as a favorite or streaming other songs form the same album.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet. Automatic music recognition in the **Radio** settings menu is turned on ⇨ *page 204*.

### Connecting a music streaming service

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Radio** > *a station list* > *a station* > ⊕.

▸ Follow the system instructions.

After logging in successfully, the symbol for the music streaming service will be shown in the playback view instead of ⊕.

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

# SiriusXM

## Introduction

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, you can receive satellite programming with SiriusXM and open web-based On Demand content.

### Information about SiriusXM radio reception

Buildings, tunnels, bridges, open areas, other vehicles, or objects on the vehicle roof can affect reception.

Satellite programming is sometimes subject to regional restrictions and is therefore not available in all regions.

## Operating SiriusXM

### Opening SiriusXM in the MMI

▸ Select: ⊞ > **SiriusXM**.

### Opening SiriusXM in the instrument cluster

▸ Press the ▭ / ▭ button on the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until SiriusXM radio content is displayed.

Depending on the selected function, it may be necessary to use the MMI.

### Selecting a SiriusXM program

▸ Select: ⊞ > **SiriusXM** > **Categories** > *a category (such as Music)* > *a subcategory (such as Rock)*.

You can select a program from the Channels or On Demand area.

### Opening the search

You can search for channels, artists, or categories (such as sports).

▸ Select: ⊞ > **SiriusXM** > ⌕.

### Opening a playlist

▸ To display a playlist, press ▷≡ in the playback view.

## Opening the SiriusXM settings menu

You can turn certain functions on or off and adjust their settings in the **SiriusXM** settings menu. The settings depend on the country and vehicle equipment.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **SiriusXM** > ⚙.

## Opening the listener settings menu

You can turn certain functions on or off and adjust their settings in the **Listener settings** menu.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **SiriusXM** > ⚙ > **Listener settings**.

## Registering SiriusXM

To be able to continue using SiriusXM, you must create an account with SiriusXM and activate your vehicle with the vehicle-specific radio ID.

### Viewing the radio ID

▸ Select: ⊞ > **SiriusXM** > **Categories** > *All Channels*.

The radio ID is displayed in channel number 0.

### Registering

▸ Select: ⊞ > **SiriusXM** > ⚙ > **SiriusXM subscription status**.
▸ Follow the system instructions.

After registering successfully, the status of your license is displayed in the **SiriusXM** settings menu ⇨ *page 206*.

## Using SiriusXM functions

### Using functions during playback

Depending on the selected program, you can use context-based functions in the playback view, such as restarting the current web content or displaying channels, artists, or shows related to the content that is currently playing.

### Using listener profiles

After registering with SiriusXM, you can create up to five personal listener profiles in the **SiriusXM** settings menu ⇨ *page 206* or log in with an existing profile. Once you are logged in, your favorites and listening habits are synced with SiriusXM and program suggestions are displayed in the **For You** list.

### Managing SiriusXM notifications

You can turn various notifications on or off and manage them in the **Listener settings** ⇨ *page 206* menu.

### Using Tune Start

If Tune Start is turned on in the **Listener settings** ⇨ *page 206* menu, the track that is currently playing when you start listening to a station will be played from the beginning.

### Using Smart Favorites

Channels, shows, and sports teams are stored in the favorites as Smart Favorites. After turning on the vehicle, the Smart Favorites store radio programs at a specific time.

### Managing Pandora stations

You can store Pandora stations as favorites that are dedicated to a specific theme or artist. You can manage your Pandora stations in the **SiriusXM** settings menu ⇨ *page 206*.

## Using Live Sports

You can find live broadcasts of current sporting events in the Live Sports category. You can follow the status of the game, create Team Notifications, and select the commentary.

### Creating Team Notifications

You can create notifications for future games with a specific team.

▸ Make sure that the function is turned on in the **Listener settings** ⇨ *page 206* menu.
▸ Press 🔔 in the playback view during a game.

### Selecting the commentary

While a game is in progress, you can select which commentary you would like to hear. You can switch between the impartial “national feed” and a “team feed” that is partial to a particular team.

▸ Press 🔊 to select the “team feed” of the respective team.

▸ To switch to the “national feed”, press 🔊 while in the “team feed”.

## Radio troubleshooting

The information that follows lists some troubleshooting options. They depend on vehicle equipment.

| Problem | Solution |
|---|---|
| No audio playback possible for the radio. | Check if the MMI is muted ⇨ *page 23*.<br>Check if the radio playback mode is active ⇨ *table on page 204*.<br>Check if the current station can be received ⇨ *table on page 204*. |
| The presets are shown without station logos. | If no station logo was available when saving, then the station is shown with the default logo. To update the preset, delete it from the presets list and save it again. |
| The radio starts at the frequency 88.3 MHz. | The last station that was set will not be stored if you are logged into the vehicle as a guest user or with no user name. Log into the vehicle as a user to store radio settings, presets, and the last station and to display them. |

# Media

## Introduction

Depending on the vehicle equipment, there are various options for playing media files and controlling them through the MMI if necessary.

The functions depend on the country and vehicle equipment, and are not available in all displays and for all sources.

**WARNING**

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate mobile devices while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.

**Note**

– Extremely high or low temperatures that can occur inside vehicles can damage mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Never leave mobile devices in the vehicle in extremely high or low temperatures.

– Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

## Information about using mobile devices and media

### Compatibility of data storage devices and media files

– Individual data storage devices and media files may not be recognized due to incompatibility or, under certain circumstances, may not play or may play with restrictions.
– Use the media center in the mobile device if the playlists are displayed incorrectly in the MMI.
– Audi is not responsible for damaged or lost media files on data storage devices.

### USB cables, adapters, and interfaces

– Do not use additional adapter cables or other USB extension cables to connect mobile devices to USB ports that already have a cable or that ▸

must be connected with a USB adapter cable. Using an additional adapter or USB extension cable may impair functionality.
– Functionality is not guaranteed for mobile devices that are not compatible with the USB 2.0 specification.
– USB hubs are not supported.

### Limitations for specific devices

– Apple devices with a dock connector can only be charged using a USB adapter designed for devices with a dock connector. Data cannot be transmitted.
– Some control options for MTP players may be limited, for example rating music tracks.

### Video playback

– Video playback is not available in every country.
– Video playback through the USB ports is not supported on Apple devices and MTP devices (such as smartphones).
– For safety reasons, the video image is only displayed in the central display when the vehicle is stationary. While driving, only the sound from the video plays.

### Mobile device software versions

– Audi recommends updating the mobile device software to the latest version. Follow the user guide from the manufacturer of your mobile device.

## Connecting mobile devices and media

### Preparing to use media with Bluetooth

▸ Connect your mobile device to the MMI Bluetooth audio player in the **Connection manager** menu ⇨ *page 216*.
▸ Make sure that the device usage is set to Bluetooth audio player after the connection process.

Multiple mobile devices can be paired to the MMI using Bluetooth, but only one mobile device can be selected to use as the Bluetooth audio player.

Pay attention to the volume control on your mobile device. Audi recommends setting your mobile device to the maximum volume when using it as a Bluetooth audio player.

### Preparing to use media with the USB interface

▸ Connect your mobile device to the MMI using the USB interface in the front center console.
▸ Follow the system instructions and, if necessary, any additional messages on your mobile device.

If you denied access to your files and media when you paired your mobile device for the first time, you can give permission later in the **Settings** menu ⇨ *page 215*.

## Using media

### Opening media in the MMI

▸ Select: > *a connected mobile device*.

### Opening media in the instrument cluster

▸ Press the / button on the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until media content is displayed.

### Switching the media source in the MMI

You can switch the media source within the media player.

▸ Press the symbol for the current media source in the tab area. A selection of all sources will be shown.
▸ Press the desired source.

### Selecting a media file in the instrument cluster

The media is displayed in one of the tabs on the left in the instrument cluster.

▸ Turn the left thumbwheel to select a media file.
▸ To confirm a media file, press the left thumbwheel.

Depending on the selected function, it may be necessary to use the MMI. ▶

### Opening the search

▸ To search in multiple sources, for example for tracks and artists, press 🔍 in the media player.

### Opening a playlist

▸ To display a playlist, press ▷≡ in the playback view.

## Opening the media settings menu

You can turn certain functions on or off and adjust their settings in the **Media** settings menu. The settings depend on the country and vehicle equipment.

▸ Select: ⊞ > *a connected mobile device* > ⚙.

## Using media functions

### Using online additional data

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet.

If online additional data is turned on in the **Media** settings menu ⇨ *page 209*, additional information can be loaded if available, such as the album cover, artist, or track.

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

### Setting the picture format

You can set the picture format for video playback in the **Media** settings menu ⇨ *page 209*. If the image is distorted or blurry or part of the image is cut off, use a different aspect ratio.

## Information about supported media and file formats

Supported media and file formats can be changed or enhanced, for example through software updates from Audi or a third party provider.

Media and files with the following properties are supported, depending on the country and vehicle equipment, and the software version:

### File systems

– **USB storage devices**: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS

### Metadata

– **Album cover**: GIF, JPG, PNG with max. 800x800 px. The album cover from the medium or from Gracenote is displayed, depending on availability.
– Special characters (such as those in ID3 tag information) may display differently or may not always display, depending on the system language.

### Playlists

– .m3u; .pls; .wpl

### Number of files

– **USB storage devices**: maximum 50,000 files per device. A maximum of 200 files per folder are displayed.

### Audio files up to 48 kHZ sampling frequency

– .mp3; .wav; .m4a; .flac; .3gp; .mp4; .aac; .mkv; .ogg; .webm
– For compressing MP3 files, Audi recommends a bit rate of at least 160 kbit/s. The display showing the remaining play time may differ for audio files with variable bit rate.

### Video files up to maximum 15 Mbit/s and 1920x1080 px at maximum 30 fps

– .mp4; .3gp; .mkv; .webm

8B1012721BF

## Media troubleshooting

The information that follows lists some troubleshooting options. They depend on vehicle equipment.

| Problem | Solution |
|---|---|
| The mobile device is not recognized as a source. | For some mobile devices, playback is not possible when the battery level is too low. Charge the mobile device to a sufficient battery charge level. |
| Audio playback malfunction on a mobile device that is connected to the USB interface. | Device usage is set to Bluetooth audio player. Turn off this function ⇨ *page 216* if you are not using the mobile device as a Bluetooth audio player. |
| Audio playback is not possible on a mobile device that is connected to the USB interface. | Make sure the *MTP* USB mode is selected in the settings on your mobile device. |
| Track display and audio playback from a Bluetooth audio player is malfunctioning. | Interference may occur if a music player app from a third party provider is open. Audi recommends using the integrated media player on your mobile device (such as a smartphone). |
| It takes a long time for media files to load on a mobile device. | The more files, folders, or playlists there are on a mobile device, the longer it will take to load. To reduce the amount of time it takes for the media files to load, use a mobile device (such as a USB stick) that only contains media files, and create subfolders (for example, for each artist or album). |
| Additional information or the album cover is not be displayed. | If additional information is not available on the mobile device, turn on online additional data in the **Media** settings menu ⇨ *page 209*. However, in some cases, the additional information may not be displayed. |
| Operation of mobile devices through the MMI is malfunctioning. | Malfunctions on mobile device can also affect the MMI. Reset your mobile device in these situations. |
| The search is not working. | The search is not available for every type of source. Use a source that supports the search. |

# Dash cam

## Introduction

The dash cam integrated into the vehicle is located below the rearview mirror and is used to record photos and videos of driving situations in front of the vehicle. Vehicle information such as speed, turn signal usage, and the time are also displayed. The vehicle interior is not filmed and audio is not recorded.

Recording may be started manually by the user or also automatically by the vehicle, depending on the settings. Recordings are stored on a memory card and can be viewed directly in the vehicle.

## Starting the dash cam

### Information about supported memory cards

A suitable memory card is required to ensure proper functionality of the dash cam. A memory card is not provided from the factory. Please make sure that the memory card that is used meets the recommended specifications to ensure proper functionality of the dash cam. ▶

The system supports microSD cards with a capacity of 64 GB to 512 GB and a write speed of at least 30 MB/s.

### Inserting a memory card

- To use dash cam functions, insert the memory card in the designated slot below the rearview mirror.
- Format the memory card in the **Dash cam** settings menu ⇨ *page 211* to permanently erase all data stored on it.

### Activating the dash cam

Requirement: a suitable memory card is inserted.

- Select: ⊞ > **Dash cam** > ⚙.
- Activate the dash cam.

### Deactivating the dash cam

- Remove the memory card, or
- Select: ⊞ > **Dash cam** > ⚙.
- Deactivate the dash cam.

## Opening the dash cam settings menu

You can turn certain functions on or off and adjust their settings in the **Dash cam** settings menu. The settings depend on the country and vehicle equipment.

- Select: ⊞ > **Dash cam** > ⚙.

## Operating the dash cam

### Starting or stopping the video recording

You can manually start or stop video recordings.

- To start or stop video recordings, select: ⊞ > **Dash cam** > ▷.

### Starting event recordings

In dangerous situations or in the event of an accident, you can start recording manually or automatically, depending on the settings. The next 30 seconds will be recorded.

- To start or stop an event recording, select: ⊞ > **Dash cam** > ⚠.

Depending on the settings, you can start an event recording by using the headlight flasher or the emergency flashers.

### Taking a photo

You can take individual pictures manually.

- To take a picture, select: ⊞ > **Dash cam** > 📷.

### Operating the dash cam with the multifunction steering wheel

Requirement: a dash cam function is programmed to the programmable steering wheel button.

- Press the ✱ button on the multifunction steering wheel.

### Operating the gallery

#### Displaying the gallery

You can display all dash cam pictures and videos in the gallery.

- Select: ⊞ > **Dash cam** > **Gallery**.

#### Deleting files

- To delete a video recording or a photo, swipe left on the file.

Event recordings due to an accident cannot be deleted individually. You can format the memory card in the **Dash cam** settings menu ⇨ *page 211* to permanently delete all data.

## Using dash cam functions

### Starting recordings by using the headlight flasher

In the **Dash cam** settings menu ⇨ *page 211* you can select for the dash cam to automatically start an event recording when the headlight flasher is activated.

### Starting recordings by using the emergency flashers

In the **Dash cam** settings menu ⇨ *page 211* you can set that the dash cam will automatically start an event recording when the emergency flashers are activated.

### Using the event review mode

To better understand the cause of an accident, you can set in the **Dash cam** settings menu ⇨ *page 211* to also record the 30 seconds prior to an event.

# Interior entertainment

## Introduction

There are certain functions in the MMI that you can use for customizing the interior and for entertainment.

The functions depend on the country and vehicle equipment, and are not available in all displays.

## Using themes

This function allows you to customize the appearance of the Infotainment system using themes.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet.

#### Using the theme preview

You can display a temporary preview of a theme.

- Select: ⊞ > **Themes** > **Catalog** > *a theme*.
- Press **Preview**.

#### Downloading a theme

To continue using a theme, you must download it.

Requirement: you have installed the myAudi app on your smartphone. You added your vehicle to the myAudi app. You are logged into the vehicle with your myAudi user.

- Open the myAudi app on your smartphone and download the desired theme.
- Follow the system instructions.

#### Selecting a theme

- To activate a downloaded theme, select: ⊞ > **Themes** > **Themes** > *a theme*.
- To adjust the brightness of the themes, select: ⊞ > **Themes** > ⚙.
- To restore the default appearance, select: ⊞ > **Themes** > **Themes** > **No theme**.

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

## Using experiences

### Introduction

Experiences allows you to customize the ambience in the vehicle interior. This includes various vehicle functions, such as climate control and the interior accent lighting.

**WARNING**

As the driver, do not allow an experience to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

### Using moods

You can select a scenario to create a certain ambiance in the vehicle.

- Select: ⊞ > **Experiences** > **Mood** > *a scenario*.

### Using entertainment

You can use this function to adjust the ambiance in the vehicle to match the media playback. For example, the colors from album covers will be used for the interior accent lighting.

#### Using music

- Select: ⊞ > **Experiences** > **Entertainment** > **Music**.

▸ To switch the station/media source, open the radio or the connected media source.

### Using video

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Experiences** > **Entertainment** > **Video**.
▸ Select an installed video streaming app. If no app is available, follow the system instructions.

For safety reasons, the video image is only displayed in the central display when the vehicle is stationary. While driving, only the sound from the video plays.

## Adjusting experiences settings

While an experience is active, you can turn certain functions on or off and adjust their settings. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

▸ Press ⚙.

If you end an experience, the settings for vehicle functions that were used will be reset to the previous settings.

# Using game controllers

## Introduction

With a compatible game controller, you can control apps, such as games, on the central and front passenger displays in your vehicle. You can connect up to two game controllers at a time.

**⚠ WARNING**

– Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. Due to the increased risk of an accident, the only safe way for the driver to use a game controller is while the vehicle is parked.
– Incorrect use increases the risk of injuries or an accident.
– To reduce the risk of injuries or an accident, do not use game controllers with sharp edges or any attachments or accessories for game controllers.
– As the driver, do not let players distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.
– As the driver, make sure that you and all others in the vehicle do not hold any connected devices, such as smartphones or game controllers, in front of the body or head when the airbag system is active ⇨ *page 69*. To reduce the risk of injuries, pay attention to the safety information regarding seating positions and safety belts.

## System limitations and functional limitations of game controllers

### System limitations

Game controllers are subject to system limitations, and compatibility cannot be guaranteed for all types of game controllers. The availability depends on the following factors, among others:

– The brand and design of the game controller
– If the game controller supports Bluetooth Low Energy
– The gaming app that is used

### Functional limitations

– The central display can be used for gaming only when the vehicle is stationary.
– If a Bluetooth headset is connected at the same time, the functionality of the game controller may be impaired.
– If multiple devices are connected at the same time, the functionality of the game controller may be impaired.

## Connecting game controllers wirelessly

Requirement: the vehicle is stationary and turned on. The menu **Connection manager** is shown ⇨ *page 216*.

▸ Make sure the game controller is in Bluetooth connectivity mode.
▸ To connect the game controller, press **Add new device**.
▸ Press on the game controller in the list of available Bluetooth devices.
▸ Select the display you would like to connect to the game controller. ▶

After connecting successfully, your game controller will be shown in the **Connection manager** menu.

### Managing game controllers

You can adjust various settings in the device options, such as switching the game controller between the central and front passenger display.

Requirement: the vehicle is stationary and turned on. The menu **Connection manager** is shown ⇨ *page 216*.

▸ To manage the game controller, press ⚙.

# Smartphone interface

## Introduction

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, you can connect your smartphone to the MMI with a cable or wirelessly. You can operate certain content and functions from your smartphone through the MMI in a modified display.

If the connected smartphone has voice control, you can operate your smartphone using the external voice control.

**WARNING**

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate mobile devices while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

## Connecting a smartphone

### Smartphone interface system limitations

The smartphone interface is subject to the limitations of the system. Compatibility cannot be guaranteed for all types of smartphones. The availability or the functions that can be used depend on the following factors, among others:

– The brand of your smartphone
– The version of your smartphone's operating system
– The software version of the app used
– The USB adapter cable and correct connection
– Your mobile phone service provider
– The customized settings on your smartphone

### Connecting a smartphone with a cable

Requirement: the vehicle is stationary and turned on. An iPhone generation 11 or newer must have the latest operating system installed or a smartphone with the Android Auto app must have the Android 9.0 operating system or newer installed.

▸ Connect your smartphone with the smartphone interface using the USB interface ⭠ in the front center console. Use a certified USB-C cable or a certified adapter to do this.
▸ Follow the system instructions and, if necessary, any additional messages on your smartphone.

### Connecting a smartphone wirelessly

Requirement: the vehicle is stationary and turned on. An iPhone generation 11 or newer must have the latest operating system installed or a smartphone with the Android Auto app must have the Android 11 operating system or newer installed.

▸ To connect your smartphone wirelessly, turn on the Bluetooth and Wi-Fi functions on your smartphone.
▸ Connect your smartphone with the MMI in the **Connection manager** menu ⇨ *page 216*.
▸ Make sure device usage is set to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto (depending on your phone) after connecting.

### Using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto

Requirement: you have connected your smartphone to the MMI, either with a cable or wirelessly. ▸

▸ To use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, open the app in the app overview.

If you are using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, Audi navigation may be displayed instead occasionally if there is a malfunction with the navigation display.

## Smartphone interface troubleshooting

The information that follows lists some troubleshooting options. They depend on vehicle equipment.

| Problem | Solution |
|---|---|
| Smartphone interface cannot be opened. | Check your smartphone's charge level.<br>Check if Android Auto or Apple CarPlay is available in the country where the vehicle is being operated. |
| | **Apple CarPlay**: check if Apple CarPlay is activated on your iPhone. |
| | **Android Auto**: check if the Android Auto app is installed and activated on your smartphone.<br>Check in the Android Auto app if Android Auto permits new vehicles. |
| The cable connection between the smartphone and the MMI failed. | Check if the USB-C cable or USB adapter is damaged and if it is connected correctly to your smartphone and the USB interface in the front center console.<br>Check if device usage is set to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto in the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 216* menu. |
| Wireless connection between the smartphone and the MMI failed. | **Apple CarPlay**: open the settings for Bluetooth and Apple CarPlay on your iPhone. Remove your vehicle. |
| | **Android Auto**: open the Android Auto app and the Bluetooth settings on your smartphone. Remove your vehicle. |
| | Open the **Connection manager** menu ⇨ *page 216*. Delete your smartphone from the list of known devices. Repeat the connection process. Restart the MMI. Restart your smartphone.<br>Open the Wi-Fi settings in your smartphone. Check if your smartphone is connected to the vehicle hotspot. |

# Additional settings

## Opening the settings menu

You can turn certain functions on or off or adjust them individually in the **Settings** menu. The settings depend on the country and vehicle equipment.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Settings**.

## System settings

### Adjusting settings for the system and language

You can adjust system settings in the **Settings** menu ⇨ *page 215*.

#### Date and time

You can adjust date and time settings, for example changing the time zone. ▶

### Units

You can set the units used to display measurements, such as the speed or temperature.

### Languages and input

You can adjust the language and keyboard layouts.

### Location

You can change access to your vehicle location.

## Adjusting the sound

You can adjust the sound in the **Settings** menu ⇨ *page 215*.

Depending on the user who is logged in, the volume will be set to the level that was last used or to an automatically set value when the MMI is turned on.

**WARNING**

Adjust the volume of the audio system so that signals from outside the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

## Opening the Bluetooth settings

In the **Bluetooth** menu, you can turn the MMI's Bluetooth functions on or off and adjust their settings.

- Select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Connections** > **Bluetooth**.

The *vehicle name* for the Bluetooth connection and the vehicle hotspot are compared automatically when changes are made.

## Resetting the system to factory settings

Requirement: the vehicle is stationary and turned on. The MMI must be connected to the Internet.

It may be necessary to disconnect the primary device for managing digital keys in order to reset the vehicle to factory settings.

### Disconnecting a primary device

- Select: ⊞ > **Digital key** > **Management** > **Primary device management**.

### Resetting to factory settings

You can reset the system to the factory settings in the **Settings** menu ⇨ *page 215*.

- Follow the system instructions.

The system is reset to the factory settings and restarted. This may take some time. This not only restores settings, but also deletes any stored data.

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ ⓘ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

# Connection manager

## Opening the connection manager menu

In the **Connection manager** menu, you can connect your mobile devices to the MMI and adjust various settings for devices that are already known.

Requirement: the vehicle is stationary and turned on.

- Select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Connections** > **Connection manager**, or
- Open the quick access area in the central display and press **Connection manager**.

## Connecting a mobile device with Bluetooth

### Establishing a Bluetooth connection

Requirement: the vehicle is stationary and turned on. The menu **Connection manager** is shown ⇨ *page 216*. The Bluetooth function is turned on in your mobile device.

- Make sure the Bluetooth settings are open on your mobile device. Activate visibility on your mobile device, if necessary.
- To connect your mobile device, press **Add new device**. The available Bluetooth devices will be displayed after several seconds. ▶

▸ Press on the desired mobile device.
▸ Follow the system instructions and, if necessary, any additional messages on your mobile device.

After connecting successfully, your mobile device will be shown in the **Connection manager** menu ⇨ *page 216*.

You can also find your mobile device and connect to it using the Bluetooth device search in the MMI.

Both the mobile devices displayed and the automatic reconnection are independent of the user logged into the vehicle.

### Using a Bluetooth headset

A Bluetooth headset can only be used with the front passenger display for audio output of certain apps, such as games or video streaming apps.

▸ Connect the Bluetooth headset with the MMI through the front passenger display.

The Bluetooth audio player and Bluetooth headset device connections are not available at the same time in the **Connection manager** menu. An active connection will automatically be disconnected once the other device usage type is selected.

### Bluetooth connection troubleshooting

When connecting, make sure that:
– The Bluetooth menu is open in the foreground on your mobile device.
– Your mobile device is connected to any other Bluetooth devices.
– Your mobile device is within range of the MMI.
– The PIN in the connection request on your mobile device and the MMI match and the request was confirmed.

If the connection fails, try the following:
– Delete your vehicle in the Bluetooth settings on your mobile device
– Remove the mobile device from the list of known devices in the MMI.
– Turn off the Bluetooth function on your mobile device and close the Bluetooth menu. Open the Bluetooth menu again and then activate the Bluetooth function.
– Turn the Bluetooth function off in the MMI and back on after a few seconds.
– Repeat the connection process.

## Managing mobile devices

Requirement: the vehicle is stationary and turned on. The menu **Connection manager** is shown ⇨ *page 216*.

### Opening the device options

▸ Press ⚙.

### Adjusting settings for device usage

You can use the symbols in the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 216* menu as well as the device options to select the settings for your mobile device, depending on the country, vehicle equipment, and mobile device:

# Software update

## Introduction

You can update the vehicle software.

The functions depend on the country and vehicle equipment:
– Perform a software update
– Perform a map update
– Perform a software update at an authorized Audi dealer or an authorized Audi Service Facility. This can result in additional costs.

## Checking the vehicle's software version

You can check the software version that is installed in your vehicle in the **Settings** menu ⇨ *page 215*.

Your vehicle's software version is displayed under **Installed software version**.

## Updating the software

The function or equipment that is described was in development at the time this manual was published and may not be available in your vehicle. ▶

You can update the software directly in your vehicle using a software update.

### Downloading a software update

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet.

The download occurs automatically and without prior notice, and will resume if necessary once the vehicle is turned on again. A notification will be displayed in the central display once the download is complete.

### Installing a software update

Requirement: a notification about a software update appears in the central display. The vehicle is stationary and turned off.

- Press on the notification, or
- To open the software update, select: ⊞ > **Settings**.
- Press on the desired software update and follow the system instructions.
- Note that certain conditions may need to be met in order to install the software update. They will be displayed in the central display.
- To start the software update, exit and lock the vehicle.

The MMI will start the installation. Vehicle functions are limited when installing the software update.

Once the software update has been completed successfully, a notification will appear in the central display. You can display information about the installed software.

If the software update failed, a notification will be shown in the central display. Follow the system instructions.

**WARNING**

– To ensure the installation completes successfully, the vehicle must not be turned on during the installation.
– If the installation fails, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Note**

Read the information about Audi connect, especially regarding connectivity costs ⇨ *in Information about Audi connect on page 191*.

### Software update messages

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

**Software update: incomplete. Warning! Vehicle cannot be driven. See owner's manual**

An error occurred when installing the software update. The vehicle cannot be driven. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the error corrected.

**Software update: incomplete. Warning! Vehicle functions limited. See owner's manual**

An error occurred when installing the software update. The vehicle can be driven, but certain vehicle functions may not be available. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

## Legal information

### Legal information about software licenses

You can find information about open source software components that are used in the MMI and online at www.audi.com/softwareinfo.

You can view license texts, copyright regulations, and other information. If needed and requested, Audi will provide the applicable source code, according to the respective license terms. There may be a fee.

### Legal information about the vehicle software

You can display the software and version information for your vehicle in the **Settings** menu ⇨ *page 215*.

## Legal information about apps

You can display various legal notices, software information, and license information about apps. The content and availability depend on the app.

- To view legal information about an app, select: ⊞ > *an app* > ⚙.

## Legal information about the system

You can display various legal notices, software information, and license information about the system.

- To view legal information about the system, select: ⊞ > **Settings**.
- To open additional legal information, select: ⊞ > **Legal notices**.

## Legal information about the smartphone interface

Requirement: a smartphone must be connected to the MMI. The menu **Connection manager** is shown ⇨ *page 216*.

- Press ⚙.
- Press § next to **Apple CarPlay** or **Android Auto**.

## Legal information about the instrument cluster

Requirement: the vehicle is stationary and turned on.

- Press the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel until the legal notices appear.

## Legal information about the dash cam

You can display legal information about the dash cam.

- Select: ⊞ > **Dash cam** > ⚙ > **Legal notices and privacy policy**.

# Checking and Filling

## Fuel

### Information about gasoline types

The correct gasoline grade is stated on the inside of the fuel filler door.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be driven with **unleaded gasoline**.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For additional information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, visit www.toptiergas.com.

The individual gasoline grades are differentiated by **octane ratings**. This value is given with (R+M)/2 equating to AKI or in RON.

The headings below match the corresponding fuel information label in the fuel filler door (examples):

**UNLEADED FUEL ONLY PREMIUM MIN. (R+M)/2 91 / SUPER MIN. RON 95**

Use premium gasoline with minimum 91 AKI / 95 RON.

If premium gasoline is not available, you can also use regular 87 AKI / 91 RON gasoline *if absolutely necessary*. However, you must only drive in the middle of the RPM range and with low engine load. The fuel consumption may also increase. Refuel your vehicle with premium gasoline as soon as possible ⇨ ⓘ.

**UNLEADED FUEL ONLY PREMIUM (R+M)/2 93 / SUPER PLUS RON 98**

Use premium plus gasoline 93 AKI / 98 RON.

If no premium plus gasoline is available, you can also use premium gasoline with 91 AKI / 95 RON. However this does reduce the engine power slightly. The fuel consumption may also increase.

If premium gasoline is not available, you can also use regular gasoline 91 RON/ROZ (87 AKI) *if necessary*. However, you must only drive in the middle of the RPM range and with low engine load. Refuel your vehicle with premium gasoline as soon as possible.

**Information about gasoline types**

The vehicle may be filled with fuel that has a higher octane rating than what is required by the engine. The risk of engine damage will increase if you fuel with gasoline with an octane rating that is too low. ⇨ ⓘ

**Note**

- Filling the tank just one time with leaded fuel or other metallic additives will cause permanent deterioration to the catalytic converter function.
- Damage or malfunctions caused by the use of incorrect types of gasoline are not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Audi recommends only using additives approved by Audi. The risk of engine damage will increase if additives that are not approved by Audi are used. Additives with octane boosters or anti-knock agents may contain metallic additives that will cause considerable damage to the engine and catalytic converter. Such additives must not be used.
- When gasoline with an octane rating that is too low is used, high speeds or heavy engine load can lead to engine damage.
- The engine could be damaged if you accidentally fuel with gasoline with an octane rating that is too low and that is not permitted. Engine damage may occur immediately or at a later time. Do not continue driving. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

### Information about the gasoline mixture

**Gasoline with alcohol (ethanol)**

You can fuel your vehicle with unleaded gasoline that has an ethanol content of up to 15%, for example “E15”.

**Gasoline adapted to the season**

Many gasoline fuels are adapted to the seasons. When the season changes, refueling at high-traffic gas stations is recommended. It is more likely ▶

that the gasoline will be suitable for the season there.

**Note**

- Do not use gasoline that does not meet the specifications. Otherwise there is a risk of damaging the engine.
- Ethanol fuels with a high ethanol percentage, such as E30 – E100, must **not** be used. The fuel system will be damaged!
- Methanol fuels with a high methanol percentage, such as M5 – M100, must **not** be used. The fuel system and the engine will be damaged!
- If you are unable to find out if a specific gasoline mixture meets the specifications, ask the gas station operator or their fuel supplier.
- Do not use any gasoline mixture whose composition cannot be identified.
- Audi does not assume any responsibility for damage to the fuel system or for performance problems caused by using gasoline mixtures different from those specified. This type of damage also does not fall under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty or under the emissions control system warranty.

# Refueling

## Fueling the vehicle

**Fig. 101** Right rear side of the vehicle: opening the fuel filler door

**Fig. 102** Fuel filler door with attached fuel cap

The fuel filler door is unlocked or locked by the central locking system. Exception: the fuel filler door will not be locked if you lock your vehicle with the central locking switch from inside the vehicle.

The correct fuel type for your vehicle can be found on a fuel information label located on the inside of the fuel filler door. Observe the information at the beginning of this chapter about "Fuel".

### Preparing to fuel

- Turn off the drive system.
- Set the parking brake.
- Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open it ⇨ *fig. 101*.

### Fueling

- Unscrew the tank cap counterclockwise.
- Place the cap from above on the open fuel filler door ⇨ *fig. 102*.
- Insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the fuel filler neck.
- Begin fueling. The fuel tank is full as soon as the pump nozzle shuts off for the first time ⇨ ⚠.
- After the fuel pump has turned off, wait five seconds before removing the nozzle to allow the rest of the fuel to finish dripping into the fuel tank.
- Turn the fuel cap clockwise until it clicks into place.
- Close the fuel filler door and then press on the left side until it latches.

If you turn on the vehicle after fueling, the following message may appear: **Fueling detected. Reset mi (km) now?** Select **Yes** if you would like ▶

to reset the trip odometer. The message appears in the instrument cluster depending on the fuel level in the tank and the amount of fuel added.

Fuel can deteriorate over time, which may lead to problems when starting. Audi recommends replacing the fuel in your vehicle within 6 months.

The fuel tank capacity of your vehicle is listed in the Technical Data section of the Owner's Manual. The maximum amount of fuel that can be added depends on the amount of fuel remaining in the tank.

To reduce the risk of fuel leaking out or vapors escaping, make sure that the fuel tank is closed correctly. Otherwise the indicator light may turn on, depending on the engine and the country.

**WARNING**

Improper fueling procedures and improper handling of fuel can result in explosions, fires, severe burns, and other injuries.

- Do not smoke. Keep away from open flames.
- The vehicle must be turned off when refueling.
- Mobile devices, radio devices, and other radio equipment should always be turned off when refueling. Electromagnetic rays could cause sparks and start a fire.
- If you do not insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the filler tube, then fuel can leak out. Spilled fuel can ignite and start a fire.
- Never get into the vehicle when refueling. If there is an exceptional situation where you must enter the vehicle, close the door and touch a metal surface before touching the fuel pump nozzle again. This will reduce the risk of electrostatic discharge that can cause flying sparks. Sparks can start a fire when refueling.
- Once the fuel pump nozzle turns off the first time, the fuel tank is full. Do not continue fueling, or else the expansion space in the tank will be filled with fuel. Do not overfill the fuel tank – fuel may also leak at a later time if the temperature increases. This may cause explosions, fires, and severe or fatal injuries.

**WARNING**

Audi does not recommend transporting fuel containers inside the vehicle. Fuel could leak out of the container and ignite, especially during an accident. This can cause explosions, fires, and injuries.

- If you must transport fuel in a fuel container, note the following:
  - Always place the fuel container on the ground before filling. Never fill the fuel container with fuel while it is inside or on the vehicle. Electrostatic discharge can occur while refueling and the fuel vapors could ignite.
  - When using fuel containers made of metal, the fuel pump nozzle must always remain in contact with the container to reduce the risk of static charge.
  - Insert the fuel pump nozzle as far as possible into the filler opening while refueling.
  - Follow the applicable legal regulations in the country where you are driving when using, storing and transporting fuel containers.
  - Make sure that the fuel container meets the industry standards, for example ANSI or ASTM F852-86.

**Note**

- Remove fuel that has overflowed onto any vehicle components immediately to reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle.
- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel may enter the exhaust system and increase the risk of damage to the catalytic converter.

**For the sake of the environment**

- Do not overfill the fuel tank, or fuel could leak out when the vehicle is warming up.
- Fuel should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground.

### Manually releasing the fuel filler door

- See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility if you cannot open the fuel filler door.
- Afterward, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

### Messages about the tank system

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

#### Messages

If the indicator light appears with a corresponding message, refuel the vehicle.

**Tank system: malfunction! Please contact Service**

There is a malfunction in the fuel tank system. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Please check the fuel door! See owner's manual**

The fuel filler cap is not screwed completely onto the fuel tank filler neck. Close the fuel filler cap correctly.

## Emissions control system

### Safety information about the emissions control system

**WARNING**

The temperature of the exhaust system is high, both when driving and after stopping the engine.

– Never touch the exhaust tail pipes once they have become hot. This could result in burns.
– Do not park your vehicle over flammable materials such as grass or leaves because the high temperature of the emissions system could start a fire.
– Do not apply underbody protectant in the exhaust system area, because this increases the risk of fire.
– Never drive until the tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel could enter the exhaust system, which could cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

### Information about the catalytic converter

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 223, Safety information about the emissions control system*.

**Note**

The vehicle may only be driven with unleaded gasoline, or the catalytic converter will be destroyed.

### Messages about the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

If the indicator light blinks or turns on, there is a malfunction related to emissions that can cause issues such as poor emissions quality and damage to the catalytic converter/particulate filter. Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

Depending on the engine and country, the indicator light may also turn on if the fuel filler cap is not closed correctly.

## Particulate filter

### Information about the particulate filter and regeneration drives

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 223, Safety information about the emissions control system*.

The particulate filter removes almost all of the soot particles from the exhaust. The filter cleans itself automatically under normal driving conditions. If the filter cannot be cleaned automatically (for example if only short distances are usually ▶

driven), the filter will become clogged with soot and a message will appear. The particulate filter needs to be cleaned (regeneration). Always use the correct engine oil and fuel to ensure that the service life of the particulate filter is not reduced. Also try to avoid driving only short distances.

Typical system reactions during a regeneration drive:

– Noises, odors, and increased idle speeds
– Due to the high temperatures that occur during particulate filter regeneration, the radiator fan may continue running after the engine stops, even if the engine did not reach its operating temperature.

## Cleaning the particulate filter with a regeneration drive

A regeneration drive allows the particulate filter to clean itself.

### Regenerating the particulate filter by driving in intervals

Requirement: the engine must be at operating temperature.

▸ Drive at a speed of at least 50 mph (80 km/h) ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Then remove your foot from the accelerator pedal completely for a few seconds to allow the vehicle to coast while still in gear.
▸ Repeat this process (accelerating to at least 50 mph (80 km/h) and then letting the vehicle coast again) until the indicator light turns off.

This process may take some time.

Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility repair the malfunction if the indicator light does **not** turn off after some time has passed.

**⚠ WARNING**

To reduce the risk of an accident, always adapt your speed to the current weather, road, and traffic conditions when trying to regenerate the particulate filter. You should never disobey the traffic laws applicable in the country in which you are driving in order to follow driving recommendations.

## Messages about the particulate filter

If the indicator light appears, perform a regeneration drive ⇨ *page 224, Cleaning the particulate filter with a regeneration drive* appropriate for your vehicle

# Engine compartment

## Safety information about the engine compartment

**Special care is required if you are working in the engine compartment**

**For work in the engine compartment, such as checking and filling fluids, there is a risk of injury, scalding, accidents, and burns. For this reason, follow all the warnings and general safety precautions provided in the following information. The vehicle's engine compartment is a dangerous area.**

**Explanation of warning symbols:**

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| ⚠ | Observe all warnings - there is a risk for injury! |
| | Hot components!<br>Rotating parts! |
| | Hot surfaces. The surfaces of individual components can become very hot due to the heat generated during vehicle operation. Do not touch components - there is a risk of burns! |
| | The radiator fan can turn on at any time! |
| | High voltage! The voltage level in these components, such as the high-voltage system or the ignition system, can cause fatal injuries. Touching damaged live components can result in a fatal electric shock. |

▸

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| | High voltage! Turn off the engine before coming into contact with any ignition system components! |
| | The catalytic converter can be damaged if the oil level is too high! |
| | Hot coolant - there is a risk of scalding! |
| | Always follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual. |

**WARNING**

The engine/motor compartment in any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

– Always use extreme caution when doing any work in the engine compartment. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and use common sense. Never risk personal injury.
– Never perform any work in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry out the job and have the correct technical information and the correct tools.
– If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Audi dealer, an authorized Audi Service Facility, or another qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from work that is not performed correctly.

**WARNING**

Observe the following when performing any work in the engine compartment:

– Turn off the vehicle.
– Set the parking brake.
– Keep children away from the engine compartment.
– Allow the engine to cool.
– Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids (such as the freeze protection contained in the coolant) can catch fire.
– Avoid short circuits in the electrical system. For example, close the positive terminal cover immediately after use.
– Never reach into the radiator fan. The fan is temperature-controlled and can turn on suddenly, even when the ignition is turned off.
– Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.
– The cap on the coolant expansion tank must never be opened when the coolant is hot. The cooling system is under pressure, which increases the risk of scalding.
– To protect your face, hands, and arms from hot steam or coolant, cover the cap with a thick cloth when opening.
– Do not remove the engine cover under any circumstances. This increases the risk of burns.
– Due to the risk of electric shock, never touch the ignition cable or other components in the electronic high-voltage ignition system when the engine is running or is starting.
– If a position is selected while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running, do not press the accelerator pedal inadvertently. Pressing the accelerator pedal will cause the vehicle to move, and this could result in an accident.
– If inspections or repairs must be performed while the engine is running, moving components (such as the ribbed belt, generator, and radiator fan) pose an additional risk.
  – Set the parking brake first and select the "P" (Park) position.
  – Always make sure that no parts of the body, jewelry, ties, loose clothing, and long hair can be caught in moving engine components. Before any work, always remove any jewelry and/or ties, tie back long hair, and make sure all clothing fits close to the body to reduce the risk of anything becoming caught in engine components.
– Pay attention to the following warnings listed when work on the fuel system or on the electrical equipment is required.
  – Do not smoke.

▶

– Never work near open flames.
– Always have a working fire extinguisher nearby.
– All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents, or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Limit your exposure to exhaust and chemicals to as short a time as possible. Chemical substances such as electrolyte fluid can irritate the skin.

**WARNING**

California Proposition 65 Warning:
– Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

**Note**

When filling fluids, be sure not to add any fluids to the wrong reservoirs. Otherwise, severe malfunctions and damage will occur.

**For the sake of the environment**

You should regularly check the ground under your vehicle in order to detect leaks quickly. If there are visible spots from oil or other fluids, bring your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to be checked.

## Opening and closing the hood

**Fig. 103** Footwell: release lever

**Fig. 104** Unlocked hood: lever

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 224, Safety information about the engine compartment*.

Make sure the wiper arms are not raised up from the windshield. Otherwise the windshield wiper arms may strike the hood when it is opened and cause paint damage.

### Opening the hood

The hood is released from inside the vehicle.

▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
▸ Turn off the vehicle.
▸ With the door open, pull the lever (symbol is not available in all countries) below the instrument panel in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 103*.
▸ Raise the hood slightly ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Press the lever ⇨ *fig. 104* in the direction of the arrow. This releases the hooks.
▸ Open the hood. ▶

### Closing the hood

When closing the hood, make sure the two locks at the left and right engage audibly. If that is not the case, a message indicating this will appear.

- Push the hood down until you override the force of the strut.
- Let the hood fall lightly into the latch. *Do not press it in.* ⇨ ⚠ and ⇨ (!).

**WARNING**

– Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.
– For safety reasons, the hood must always be latched securely while driving. Because of this, always check the hood after closing it to make sure it is latched correctly. The hood is latched if the front corners cannot be lifted.
– If you notice that the hood is not latched while you are driving, stop immediately and close it, because driving when the hood is not latched increases the risk of an accident.

**Note**

If the hood does not engage when closing it, do not use your hands to press it into the latch. Otherwise, permanent pressure marks could form in the hood.
– Open the hood again and let it fall into the latch with a bit more force.

## Messages about the hood

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

**Warning! Hood is not locked. Stop vehicle and check the lock**

The hood latch is not locked correctly. It is also possible that the hood is latched with only one of the two hooks. Stop immediately and close the hood ⇨ *page 226*.

**WARNING**

If you notice that the hood is not latched while you are driving, stop immediately and close it, because driving when the hood is not latched increases the risk of an accident.

## Overview of the engine compartment

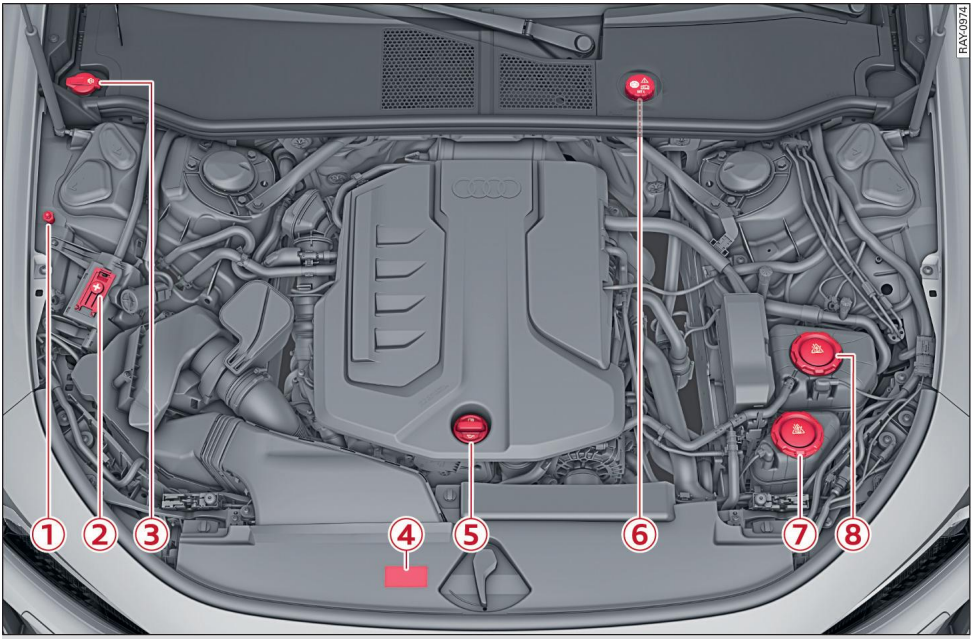



**Fig. 105** Engine compartment overview

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 224, Safety information about the engine compartment*.

Overview of the most important check points.

① Jump-start point: (–) with hex head screw ⇨ *page 242, Charging the 12 volt vehicle battery*, ⇨ *page 276, Jump-starting*

② Jump-start point: (+) under the cover ⇨ *page 242, Charging the 12 volt vehicle battery*, ⇨ *page 276, Jump-starting*

③ Washer fluid reservoir ( ) ⇨ *page 243*

④ Sticker for engine oil specifications ⇨ *page 228*

⑤ Engine oil filler opening ( ) ⇨ *page 229, Checking the engine oil level*

⑥ Brake fluid reservoir ( ) under a cover ⇨ *page 237*

⑦ Coolant expansion tank for electrical components ( ) ⇨ *page 234*

⑧ Coolant expansion tank for internal combustion engine ( ) ⇨ *page 234*

The engine oil filler opening may be located in a different area depending on the specific engine.

# Engine oil

## Information about engine oil

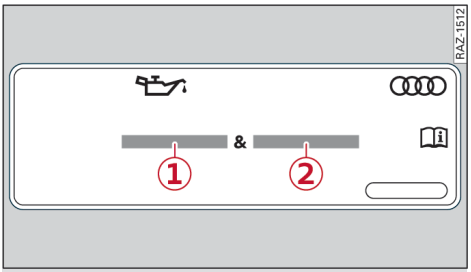



**Fig. 106** Engine oil sticker

### Specified engine oil standard

– ① Engine oil viscosity
– ② Engine oil standard

If you need to add engine oil, use an oil that meets the engine oil standard listed on the ▶

sticker ⇨ *fig. 106*. The sticker with the specified standard is located in the front of the engine compartment ⇨ *page 228, fig. 105*. When using the specified engine oil, you can adjust the oil level as often as needed.

Audi recommends using engine oils provided by Audi Genuine Parts.

### Engine oil in emergency situations

If engine oil that meets the recommended specification is not available, **in an emergency** you may add a maximum of 0.5 quart (0.5 liter) of engine oil that meets one of the different standards listed below. You may do this **one time** until the next regular oil change.

– Standard VW 504 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4, API SQ or ILSAC GF-7A. All viscosity classes within these standards are permitted.

### Information about changing the engine oil

Audi recommends having the oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

**Note**

Audi recommends using approved engine oil that meets the respective VW standard. Using engine oils which do not meet these quality standards can cause damage to the engine. As an exception and only in an emergency, 0.5 qt (0.5 l) of engine oil that differs from the standards listed may be used.

## Checking the engine oil level

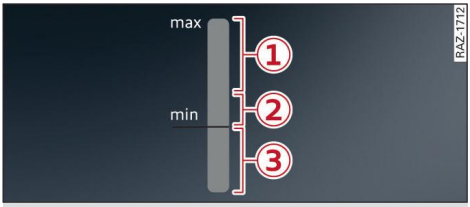



**Fig. 107** Central display: checking the engine oil level

The engine oil level is checked in the MMI.

Ranges on the engine oil level display ⇨ *fig. 107*. See ⇨ ⓘ.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | The engine oil level is OK.<br>Do not add engine oil. |
| 2 | The engine oil level is OK.<br>You may add engine oil. |
| 3 | The engine oil level is too low!<br>Add engine oil. |

When the vehicle is used under particularly demanding conditions, such as long expressway drives in the summer or driving on high mountain roads, the engine oil level should be in the upper end of the permitted range.

### Displaying the engine oil level in the MMI

– To display the engine oil level in the MMI, open the **Vehicle** menu ⇨ *page 25*.

If the oil level cannot be displayed, perform the following steps:

– Park the vehicle on a level surface.
– Shut the engine off when it is warm.
– Turn on only the ignition again.
– Wait approximately five minutes so that the engine oil distributed inside the engine can flow back into the engine oil pan.
– Check the engine oil level in the **Vehicle** menu again ⇨ *page 25*.
– Check the oil level in the display ⇨ *fig. 107*.
– Add engine oil if necessary ⇨ *page 230, Adding engine oil*.

### Information about the oil level indicator

The oil level indicator in the central display (MMI) is only an informational display. If the oil level is low, the indicator light will turn on and a message will appear in the instrument cluster. Add engine oil ⇨ *page 230, Adding engine oil*.

### Information about engine oil consumption

The engine oil consumption may be up to 0.5 quart/600 miles (0.5 liter/1,000 km), depending on driving style and operating conditions. Consumption may be higher during the first 3,000 miles (5,000 km). The engine oil level must be checked regularly. It is best to check each time you refuel your vehicle and before long drives. ▶

Because of the lubrication and cooling of the engine, internal combustion engines consume oil. The oil consumption varies depending on the engine and may change during the service life of the engine. Engines generally consume more oil at the beginning during the break-in period. Then oil consumption stabilizes after the break-in period.

Under normal conditions, oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the engine RPM, the climate conditions, and the road conditions. The dilution of oil from condensation or fuel residue as well as the age of the oil also play a role. Because engine wear increases with mileage, oil consumption will increase again over time until it may be necessary to replace worn components.

Because all these variables play a role, it is not possible to define an oil consumption standard. Therefore, the oil level must be checked regularly.

If you believe that your engine has increased its oil consumption, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to determine the cause. Please note that an exact oil consumption measurement must be done with the necessary care and accuracy and may take time. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility is trained in accurately measuring the oil consumption.

**Note**

If the engine oil level is too low or too high, there is a risk of engine damage.

– The engine oil level must not be in area (3) ⇨ *fig. 107*, because this increases the risk of engine damage.
– After adding engine oil, the oil level must not be above the "max" marking ⇨ *fig. 107*, because this increases the risk of catalytic converter and/or engine damage. If the indicator light is also on and a corresponding message appears, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have them extract engine oil if necessary. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration, and heavy engine loads.

## Adding engine oil

**Fig. 108** Engine compartment: engine oil filler opening cover

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 224, Safety information about the engine compartment*.

If it is necessary to add engine oil, note the following:

### Adding 0.5 liters of engine oil

- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Shut the engine off when it is warm.
- Open the hood.
- Unscrew the cap for the engine oil filler opening ⇨ *fig. 108*.
- Carefully add 0.5 quart (0.5 liter) of the correct oil.
- Close the cap on the engine oil filler opening .

If you are not using engine oil that meets the required standard, then you must not add any additional engine oil ⇨ (!) *in Information about engine oil on page 229*. Close the hood ⇨ *page 226*.

If you are using engine oil that meets the required standard, you may add additional engine oil, if necessary.

### Adding additional engine oil

The following steps may only be performed if an engine oil that meets the required standard is used ⇨ *page 228, Information about engine oil*.

- Close the hood ⇨ *page 226*.

- Restart the vehicle after two minutes and check the current oil level in the MMI ⇨ *page 229, Checking the engine oil level*.
- Open the hood again.
- Unscrew the cap for the engine oil filler opening ⇨ *fig. 108*.
- If necessary, add a small amount of engine oil that meets the required standard again.
- Close the cap on the engine oil filler opening .
- Close the hood ⇨ *page 226*.

**WARNING**

– When adding oil, do not let oil drip onto hot engine components. This increases the risk of a fire.
– You must close the cap on the oil filler opening correctly so that oil does not leak out onto the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running, because this is a fire hazard.
– Always clean skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.
– Engine oil is poisonous and must be kept out of reach of children.
– Store the engine oil securely in the original container.

**Note**

– Only use high-grade engine oil that explicitly meets the Audi oil quality standard for your vehicle. Using another oil may cause severe vehicle damage.
– Do not mix any additives with the engine oil. Additives may cause engine damage that is not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

**For the sake of the environment**

– Oil should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground.
– Follow the legal regulations in the country where you are located when disposing of empty oil containers.

## Changing engine oil

Audi recommends having the oil changed at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 224, Safety information about the engine compartment*.

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals specified in the Warranty & Maintenance Booklet. This is very important because the lubrication function of the oil gradually declines during regular vehicle operation.

The engine oil should be changed more frequently under certain circumstances. Have the oil changed more frequently if you often drive short distances, your vehicle is predominantly in stop-and-go traffic situations, is in very dusty environments, or is operated for long periods of time in temperatures below zero.

Cleansing additives in the oil make fresh oil appear darker after the engine has run briefly. This is normal and no reason to change the engine oil more frequently than recommended.

Because correctly disposing of engine oil is difficult and special tools and technical knowledge are needed for an oil change, Audi recommends having your engine oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

If you change the engine oil yourself, please note the following important information:

**WARNING**

If you change the engine oil on the vehicle yourself, the following precautions must be followed:
– Wear protective eyewear.
– Due to the risk of scalding, allow the engine to cool down sufficiently.
– Maintain enough distance when you are removing the oil drain plug. While doing this, keep your forearm parallel to the ground to reduce the risk of hot oil dripping down your arm.

– Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose that is large enough to hold the full amount of oil in your engine.
– Engine oil is poisonous. Always store out of reach of children.
– Prolonged contact of used engine oil with the skin may cause skin damage. Always wash oil off immediately with soap and water to protect your skin.

**Note**

Do not mix any additives with the engine oil. Additives may cause engine damage that is not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

**For the sake of the environment**

– Before changing the engine oil, make sure you can dispose of the used engine oil correctly.
– Engine oil must always be disposed of correctly. Do not dump it in the yard, in the forest, or in open water, river channels, or sewers.
– Have your used engine oil recycled by bringing it to a used oil collection site or contact a gas station.

## Engine oil messages

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

**Turn off engine. Oil pressure too low**

Stop driving and turn off the engine. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 229*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 230*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.
– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, turn the engine off and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**Please add oil immediately**

Stop driving and turn off the engine. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 229* and add engine oil immediately ⇨ *page 230*.

**Please reduce oil level**

There is too much oil in the engine and there is a risk of damaging the catalytic converter or engine. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the engine oil level adjusted if necessary. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration, and heavy engine loads.

**Oil level system: malfunction! Please contact Service soon**

The sensor that checks the engine oil level has malfunctioned. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

**Oil system: malfunction! Please contact Service**

The sensor that checks the engine oil pressure or the hood locking mechanism has malfunctioned. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

**Please drive to warm up engine**

Especially low outside temperatures are a main reason why fuel may get into the engine oil. The fuel can only evaporate from the engine oil if the engine oil temperature is high enough.

– Drive in the “S” position.
– Drive the engine at higher RPMs while avoiding full acceleration.

You should drive for at least 30 minutes. The indicator light may not turn off during this time. Repeat the steps that are described at any time.

Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility repair the malfunction if the indicator light does not turn off after a few drives.

**WARNING**

If the message **Please drive to warm up engine** appears, adjust your speed according ▶

to the weather, road, terrain, and traffic conditions to reduce the risk of an accident. You should never disobey the traffic laws applicable in the country in which you are driving in order to follow driving recommendations.

# Cooling system

## Safety information about the cooling system

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 224, Safety information about the engine compartment*.

**Special care is required if you are working in the engine compartment**

**For work in the engine compartment, such as checking and filling fluids, there is a risk of injury, scalding, accidents, and burns. For this reason, follow all the warnings and general safety precautions provided in the following information. The vehicle's engine compartment is a dangerous area.**

**Explanation of warning symbols:**

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| ⚠ | Observe all warnings - there is a risk for injury! |
| 📖 | Always follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual. |

## Information about coolant

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 224, Safety information about the engine compartment*.

The cooling system is filled with a mixture of purified water and coolant additive at the factory. This coolant must not be not changed.

The coolant level is monitored using the or indicator lights. However, you should occasionally check the coolant level.

### Coolant additive

The coolant additive is made of anti-freezing and corrosion protection agents. Only add the following coolant additives mixed with distilled water.

| Coolant additive | Specification | Color code |
|---|---|---|
| **G12evo** | **TL 774 L** | purple |

The amount of coolant additive that needs to be mixed with water depends on the climate where the vehicle will be operated. If the coolant additive percentage is too low, the coolant could freeze and damage the engine ⇨ ⓘ.

| Climatic region | Coolant additive | Freeze protection |
|---|---|---|
| Warm regions | min. 40%<br>(max. 45%) | min. -13 °F (-25 °C) |
| Cold regions | min. 50%<br>(max. 55%) | min. -31 °F (-35 °C) |

If the coolant for your vehicle was adjusted for a "cold region" and you are driving into a "warm region", the coolant additive in the coolant does not need to be adjusted.

**Note**

- Before winter weather begins, have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check if the coolant additive in your vehicle matches the percentage appropriate for the climate. This is especially important when driving in colder climates.
- To reduce the risk of engine damage, the specifications of minimum 40% and maximum 55% coolant additive in the coolant must be observed.
- Coolant additives may only be adapted for colder temperatures by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Otherwise you could severely damage the components of the cooling system. The vehicle is equipped with multiple coolant circuits, which can only be charged using specialized tools at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

– If the G12evo coolant additive is not available in an emergency, do not add any other additive. You could severely damage the components of the cooling system. If this happens, only use clean water (distilled, if possible) and restore the correct mixture ratio with the specified coolant additive as soon as possible.
– Only refill with new coolant.
– Radiator sealant must not be mixed with the coolant.
– You can continue driving if the permitted G12evo coolant additive was not added. However, go to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the coolant replaced in order to reduce the risk of severe damage to the components of the cooling system.
– Due to the risk of severely damaging the components of the cooling system, it should only be refilled by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can also provide you with important information about the recommended coolant additive.

**Note**

– Auxiliary headlights and other accessories in front of the air intake impair the cooling effect of the coolant. This increases the risk of the engine overheating during high outside temperatures and heavy engine load.
– The front spoiler also helps to distribute cooling air correctly while driving. If the spoiler is damaged, the cooling effect will be impaired and the risk of the engine overheating will increase. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

## Checking the coolant level

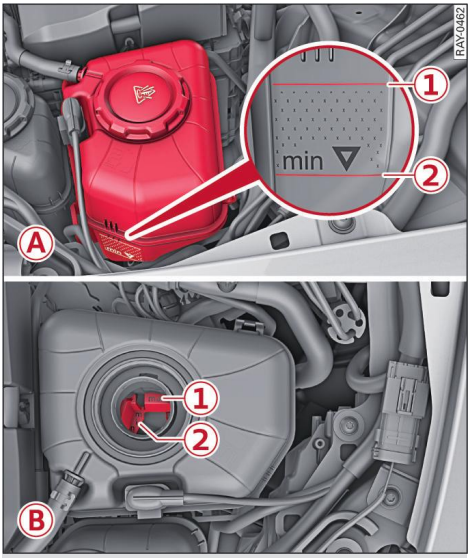



**Fig. 109** Engine compartment: coolant expansion tank for the internal combustion engine. Ⓐ: markings on the tank, Ⓑ markings inside the tank (visible when cap is opened - there is a risk of scalding!)

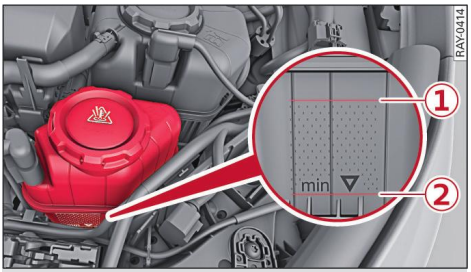



**Fig. 110** Engine compartment: coolant expansion tank for electrical components.

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 224, Safety information about the engine compartment*.

Depending on vehicle equipment, your vehicle may be equipped with two separate coolant expansion tanks ⇨ *page 228, fig. 105*. One expansion tank is for the internal combustion engine (black cap) ⇨ *fig. 109* and one is for the electrical components (black cap) ⇨ *fig. 110*. The caps for both expansion tanks are the same. It is not a problem if the caps are swapped after opening. ▶

### Preparing to check the coolant level

- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Turn off the vehicle. (The vehicle must be off during the entire checking and filling procedure!)
- Open the hood.
- Applies to: 4-cylinder gasoline engine: Wait at least 15 minutes after turning off the engine. Otherwise the coolant level may be incorrect.
- The coolant level in each expansion tank when the coolant is cold must be between the ① and ② markings ⇨ *fig. 109* or ⇨ *fig. 110*. On new vehicles, the coolant level may initially be slightly above the upper marking ①. The same applies if the engine is warm.
- You can either use the inner or outer markings on the coolant expansion tank to check the coolant level.

### Checking the coolant level using the outside markings

- Read the coolant level on the outside of the expansion tank Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 109* or, ⇨ *fig. 110*.
- When adding coolant to the expansion tank, refer to ⇨ *page 235, Adding coolant*

### Checking the coolant level using the inside markings

Applies to: coolant expansion tank for the internal combustion engine

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 224, Safety information about the engine compartment*.

- Allow the engine to cool.
- Place a large, thick towel on the coolant expansion tank cap.
- Carefully remove the black cap for the respective coolant circuit Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 109* by turning it counterclockwise ⇨ ⚠.
- Read the coolant level on the inside of the expansion tank Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 109*.
- If coolant does not need to be added, close the cap by turning it clockwise until it clicks into place.
- When adding coolant to the expansion tank, refer to ⇨ *page 235, Adding coolant*

**WARNING**

– The engine/motor compartment in any vehicle is a potentially dangerous area. Before performing work in the engine compartment, turn off the vehicle and allow the cooling system to cool down. Always follow the safety information found in ⇨ *page 224, Safety information about the engine compartment*.
– Never open the hood if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. This increases the risk of burns. The cooling system is under pressure. When you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping, you may open the engine/motor compartment with caution.
– When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can turn on even if the ignition is turned off, which increases the risk of injury.
– Coolant additive and coolant can be dangerous to your health. Store the coolant in the original container and away from children. There is a risk of poisoning.

**Note**

Coolant loss when the coolant expansion tank is empty primarily indicates that there are significant leaks in the cooling system, which can result in further damage. If this is the case, do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

## Adding coolant

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 224, Safety information about the engine compartment*.

Depending on vehicle equipment, your vehicle may be equipped with two separate coolant expansion tanks ⇨ *page 228, fig. 105*. One expansion tank is for the internal combustion engine (black cap) ⇨ *page 234, fig. 109* and one is for the electrical components (black cap) ⇨ *page 234, fig. 110*. The caps for both expansion tanks are the same. It is not a problem if the ▶

caps are swapped after opening. Observe the safety information ⇨ ⚠ *in Checking the coolant level on page 235*!

Read and observe ⇨ ⚠ *in Checking the coolant level on page 235* and ⇨ (!).

Requirement: a residual amount of coolant must be visible in the expansion tank ⇨ (!).

- Applies to: 4-cylinder gasoline engine: Wait at least 15 minutes after turning off the engine. Otherwise the coolant level may be incorrect.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- First, check the coolant level ⇨ *page 234*.
- Place a large, thick towel on the coolant expansion tank cap that will be opened.
- Carefully turn the cap for the affected coolant circuit ⇨ *page 234, fig. 109* (A) or ⇨ *page 234, fig. 110* counterclockwise to remove ⇨ ⚠ *in Checking the coolant level on page 235*.
- If you must add coolant, use a mixture of distilled water and the specified coolant additive ⇨ *page 233*. Only use non-distilled water in emergency situations ⇨ (!). Always use clean water only.
- Add coolant mixed in the correct ratio ⇨ *page 233* up to the marking (1) ⇨ *page 234*.
- Make sure that the fluid level remains stable. Add more coolant if necessary.
- Turn the cap to the right to tighten it until you feel it engaging.

**Note**

Coolant loss when the coolant expansion tank is empty primarily indicates that there are significant leaks in the cooling system, which can result in further damage. If this is the case, do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

– Do **not** add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could enter the cooling system and increase the risk of damage. If this is the case, do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– If there is any visible coolant remaining, add additional coolant. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. If the ⚠ or ⚠ indicator light turns on again, do not continue driving and turn off the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– If there is too much coolant in the expansion tank after adding coolant, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible to have the coolant level corrected.
– Using non-distilled water increases the risk of engine damage. Its chemical components may cause significant corrosion damage in the engine.
– If you had to add a large amount of non-distilled water (more than 0.5 qt (0.5 liters)), then immediately drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the coolant changed.

## Cooling system messages

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

**Turn off engine and check coolant level. See owner's manual**

The coolant level for the combustion engine is too low ⇨ *page 228*.

Do not continue driving and turn off the vehicle. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 234*.

– If the coolant level is too low, add coolant ⇨ *page 234*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.

**Coolant temperature: too high! Please turn off engine**

Stop driving and turn off the engine. Wait approximately 15 minutes and then restart the engine. If the indicator light does not turn off, do not continue driving the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**Coolant temperature: elevated. Please adapt driving style** ▶

You can continue driving with limited climate control convenience functions. Drive power limitations are possible. Drive slowly or remain stationary while the engine is running until the indicator light turns off. If the indicator light still does not turn off, do not continue driving the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**Cooling system: malfunction! Please contact Service**

There is a malfunction in the cooling system. Do not continue driving, and check the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank for electrical components ⇨ *page 234, Checking the coolant level*. You can continue driving if the indicator light turns off after checking the coolant level or refilling coolant. If the indicator light does not turn off, do not continue driving the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

# Brake fluid

## Safety information about brake fluid

**WARNING**

- If the brake fluid level is below the MIN marking, it can impair the braking effect and driving safety, which increases the risk of an accident. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
- If the brake fluid is old, bubbles may form in the brake system during heavy braking. This could impair braking performance and driving safety, which increases the risk of an accident.
- The brake fluid in your vehicle must meet the standard VW 501 14 and is available at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If this brake fluid is not available, another high-grade brake fluid of equivalent quality may be used, and it must meet the U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4, Class 6.
- Reusing brake fluid or using brake fluid that is not permitted for your vehicle will significantly impair the braking performance and can even result in a failure of the brake system and increase the risk of an accident. The manufacturer of the vehicle is not liable for failures or damage resulting from this. It will also not be covered by the warranty.

**Note**

- If the brake fluid level is above the MAX marking, brake fluid may leak out over the edge of the reservoir and result in damage to the vehicle.
- Do not allow any brake fluid to come into contact with the vehicle paint, because it will corrode the paint.

## Checking the brake fluid and having it changed

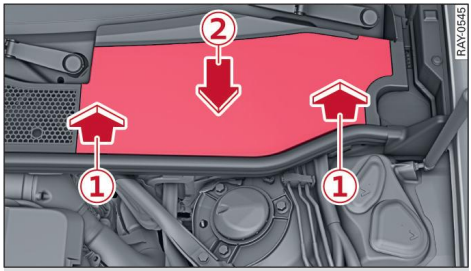



**Fig. 111** Engine compartment: remove the cover on the brake fluid reservoir

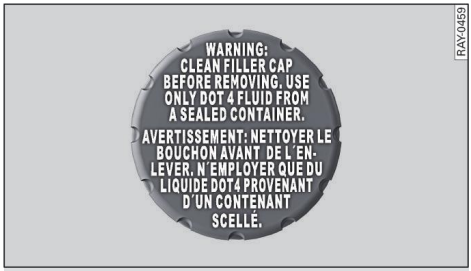



**Fig. 112** Engine compartment: cap on brake fluid reservoir

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 224, Safety information about the engine compartment*.

### Checking the brake fluid level

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the driver's side of the engine compartment under a cover. ▶

- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Turn off the vehicle.
- Open the hood.
- Remove the cover on the driver's side below the windshield. To do this, lift up the front of the cover slightly ① and then remove the cover ② ⇨ *fig. 111*.
- Read the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *page 228*. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX markings ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety information about brake fluid on page 237*.
- Reinsert the cover below the windshield securely. To do this, press down on the long edges at the front and rear of the cover until all tabs have locked into place.

The brake fluid level is monitored automatically.

### Changing the brake fluid

Brake fluid should be changed at regular intervals. Have the brake fluid changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. The authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will inform you of the replacement intervals.

## Brake system messages

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

**BRAKE / ⓘ Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid level**

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**ⓘ Brakes: overheating! Safely stop vehicle and let cool down. See owner's manual**

Stop the vehicle and select the “P” position. Wait until the message disappears.

**⚠ WARNING**

Observe the safety information ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety information about brake fluid on page 237*.

**ⓘ Note**

Observe the safety information ⇨ ⓘ *in Safety information about brake fluid on page 237*.

# Electrical system

## Electrical system messages

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

If the ▬ or ▬ indicator light turns on, there is a malfunction in the power supply, the battery, or the vehicle electrical system.

**▬ Electrical system: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle**

The steering wheel may also vibrate when the message appears. Safely stop your vehicle, do not continue driving, and turn off the vehicle ⇨ ⚠. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**▬ Electrical system: malfunction! Restart not possible. Please contact Service**

If you turn off the vehicle, you will not be able to restart it. Vehicle functions or driving stability may be limited. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately.

**▬ Electrical system: malfunction! Please contact Service**

Turn off all electrical equipment that is not needed. If necessary, some equipment will be turned off automatically. Vehicle functions or driving stability may be limited. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately.

**▬ Electrical system: low battery charge. Battery will be charged while driving.**

The starting ability may be impaired.

– If this message turns off after a little while, the vehicle battery has charged enough while driving.
– If the message does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized ▶

Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

**WARNING**

When there is an electrical system malfunction, vehicle functions may not work and driving stability may be limited, which increases the risk of an accident. Do not continue driving and turn off the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

# Battery

## Safety information about the battery

Because of the complex power supply, all work on batteries such as disconnecting, replacing, etc., should **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility ⇨ ⚠ *in Replacing the battery on page 241*.

Batteries with different technologies are installed in your vehicle:

– 12 volt vehicle battery (for example, for basic power supply) ⇨ *page 239, Safety information about the battery*

**Explanation of warning symbols:**

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| ⚠ | Observe all warnings - there is a risk for injury! |
| / | Always follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual. |
| / | 12 volt vehicle battery. Energized components. Improper handling can result in short circuits ⇨ ⚠ *in Replacing the battery on page 241*. |
| | With the exception of charging the 12 volt vehicle battery and jump-starting, all other procedures involving the 12 volt vehicle battery must be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility ⇨ ⚠ *in Replacing the battery on page 241* ⇨ ⓘ *in Battery information on page 240*. |
| | Electrolyte fluid is highly corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection. **First aid**: if electrolyte fluid enters the eyes, immediately flush with clean water for several minutes. Seek medical attention immediately. If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with skin or clothing, neutralize it immediately using a soap solution and rinse with plenty of water. Seek medical attention immediately if electrolyte fluid is ingested. |
| | Always wear eye protection. |
| | If electrolyte fluid enters the eyes, immediately flush with clean water for several minutes. Seek medical attention immediately. |
| | Fire, sparks, open flame, and smoking are prohibited. Avoid short circuits and creating sparks when working with wires and electrical equipment or when discharging static electricity. |
| | Always keep children away from battery electrolyte fluid and the battery. |
| | A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries. |

**WARNING**

All work on the batteries must **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

– Gases that escape from these batteries can be poisonous or flammable.
– The contents of these batteries can be corrosive. If any battery contents come into contact with the skin, flush the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes. Then wash the affected area with soap. Have the affected area examined by a medical professional.
– Avoid creating sparks when working with wires and electrical equipment or when discharging static electricity.

## Battery information

### Not running the vehicle for long periods of time

If the vehicle is left parked for long periods of time, the 12 volt vehicle battery will drain gradually. To ensure that the vehicle can still be started, the electrical equipment will be limited or turned off. Some convenience functions, such as interior lighting or power seat adjustment, may not be available under certain circumstances. The convenience functions will be available again when you establish drive ready mode.

Even when electrical equipment is turned off, the equipment can still drain the 12 volt vehicle battery if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time. Deep draining results in a chemical reaction that destroys the inside of the battery. The battery must be charged every month to prevent this ⇨ *page 242*. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

### Winter operation

Cold weather places an especially high load on the 12 volt vehicle battery. Have the battery checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before cold weather begins.

**WARNING**

All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents, or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

**WARNING**

If the ventilation hose for the 12 volt vehicle battery is not secured correctly, then a highly explosive mixture of gases that forms while driving may enter the vehicle interior. The mixture of gases could ignite and cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Make sure that the opening on the positive terminal side of the 12 volt vehicle battery is always closed.
- Make sure the ventilation hose is attached securely to the 12 volt vehicle battery in vehicles that have the battery installed in the vehicle interior or luggage compartment. The ventilation hose must always be attached to the negative terminal side of the 12 volt vehicle battery.

**WARNING**

California Proposition 65 Warning:
- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

**Note**

- If the vehicle will be parked for long periods of time, protect the 12 volt vehicle battery against the cold so that it will not “freeze” and become damaged ⇨ *page 242, Charging the 12 volt vehicle battery*.
- There are electrical components under the cargo floor behind a trim panel that warm up during operation. To reduce the risk of the components overheating, do not store objects such as blankets under the cargo floor. If the components overheat, they will turn off temporarily. This will be indicated by a message that will be displayed in the instrument cluster until the temperature returns to normal.

**For the sake of the environment**

Batteries and electrical/electronic devices must be disposed of in an environmentally safe manner ⇨ *page 293, Disposal instructions*.

## Replacing the battery

The following description applies to the 12 volt vehicle battery. All work on the battery must **only** ▶

be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

The 12 volt vehicle battery was designed for the location where it is installed, and it is equipped with safety features. If a 12 volt vehicle battery needs to be replaced, then it must be done by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. You can obtain information about component specifications, such as size as well as the required service, performance, and safety specifications, from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. These facilities are required to have the necessary technical documentation and equipment. The battery vent on the 12 volt vehicle battery must always be on the negative terminal side. The battery vent on the positive terminal side must always be closed.

When replacing the 12 volt lead-acid vehicle battery, only use a maintenance-free 12 volt lead-acid battery that conforms to the TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73 standards. These standards must be from October 2014 or newer.

**WARNING**

– Always have a qualified, authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility replace the 12 volt vehicle battery, because an adaptation must be performed on the vehicle electrical system when the battery is replaced. In addition, the battery parameters for safe operation were only determined using the original equipment battery. Only an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility qualified for this process has the necessary technology to perform the adaption correctly. Otherwise, there could be a loss of safety-related functions among other things, which increases the risk of an accident.
– Using a 12 volt vehicle battery that does not match the same specifications and dimensions as the factory-installed 12 volt vehicle battery can result in short circuits or cause a fire. Serious injuries or death may result.
– Only use maintenance-free 12 volt vehicle batteries that match the same specifications and dimensions as the factory-installed 12 volt vehicle battery.
– If a **leak-proof** 12 volt vehicle battery was installed in the luggage compartment or vehicle interior from the factory, then the replacement battery must also be leak-proof. If a **leak-proof** 12 volt vehicle battery was installed in any other location, then the replacement battery must also be leak-proof.

**WARNING**

Attaching the ventilation hose to the 12 volt vehicle battery incorrectly can lead to short circuits or fire. Serious injuries or death may result.
– The 12 volt vehicle battery must always be secured to the designated attachment points in the vehicle.
– All necessary covers for the vehicle must be installed on the battery again.

**Note**

– Always have a qualified, authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility replace the 12 volt vehicle battery, because an adaptation must be performed on the vehicle electrical system when the battery is replaced. Only an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility has the necessary technology to perform the adaption correctly.
– Using a vehicle battery that does not meet the AUDI AG quality specifications or with a capacity that is too low will void the vehicle's certification for use on public roads, and this will void the vehicle registration ⇨ ⚠.

**For the sake of the environment**

Batteries and electrical/electronic devices must be disposed of in an environmentally safe manner ⇨ *page 293, Disposal instructions*.

## Charging the 12 volt vehicle battery

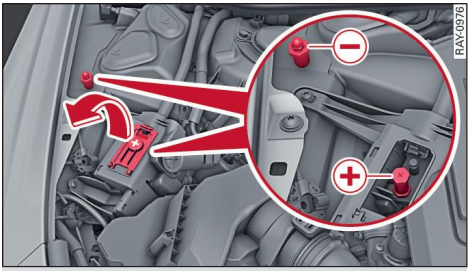



**Fig. 113** Engine compartment: connectors for a charger or jump-start cables

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 224, Safety information about the engine compartment*, ⇨ ⚠ *in Replacing the battery on page 241* and ⇨ ⚠.

### Information about the 12 volt battery charger

Only use chargers with the following specifications:

- Charging voltage limitation (V): **Maximum charging voltage: 14.8 V**
- Charging current limitation (A): the maximum charging current should not exceed 80 A.

The battery cables remain connected.

### Connecting the charger

The charging cable connections are located in the engine compartment. The ground point ⊖ is always located on the vehicle body. Only charge the battery through the connections in the engine compartment.

- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Turn off all electrical equipment and the vehicle.
- Open the hood.
- Open the cover on the positive terminal ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 113*.
- Clamp the charger terminal clamps carefully and correctly, first to the positive terminal ⊕ and then to the ground ⊖ ⇨ *fig. 113*. Consult the manufacturer's instructions for the charger before charging the battery.
- Insert the power cable for the charger into the socket and turn on the charger.
- Keep the hood completely open during the charging session ⇨ ⚠.
- At the end of the charging session, turn off the charger and pull the power cable out of the socket.
- Remove the charger terminal clamps. First the ground point ⊖ and then the positive terminal ⊕.
- Close the cover on the positive terminal.
- Close the hood ⇨ *page 226*.

If the 12 volt vehicle battery cannot be charged anymore, it has been deeply discharged and should be replaced. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

**⚠ WARNING**

- A drained battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 °C). Do not charge or use a frozen or thawed battery. If ice forms, the battery housing can crack and battery electrolyte fluid can leak, which increases the risk of an explosion and chemical burns. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.
- A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries. Only charge the battery in well-ventilated areas.
- Never use charging equipment that is unsuitable, visibly damaged, and/or dirty. Check the charging equipment for damage before every use.
- Applies to: vehicles with a jump-start connection in the engine compartment: The charging cable or jump-start cable must never be connected directly to the 12 volt vehicle battery. Only use the connections in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 242*.
- Never connect a charging cable or jump-start cable for the negative terminal directly to the 12 volt vehicle battery. Only use the ground point on the body in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 242*.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with wires and electrical equipment or when discharging static electricity.

– Do not connect or disconnect the charging cable during an active charging session because this increases the risk of an explosion.
– Leave the hood open while the 12 volt vehicle battery is charging. If the hood is closed, the connected charging cables could cause an electrical short circuit, which increases the risk of fire.

# Windshield washer system

## Filling the windshield washer system

**Fig. 114** Engine compartment: washer fluid reservoir cap

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 224, Safety information about the engine compartment*.

The windshield washer reservoir contains the cleaning solution for the windshield/rear window and the headlight washer system ⇨ *page 228*. The container capacity can be found in the Owner's Manual, in the technical data section.

To reduce the risk of lime scale deposits on the spray nozzles, use clean water with low amounts of calcium. Ideally, use distilled water. Always add window cleaner to the water. When the outside temperatures are cold, an anti-freezing agent should be added to the water so that it does not freeze.

**Note**

– The concentration of anti-freezing agent must be adjusted to the vehicle operating conditions and the climate. A concentration that is too high can result in vehicle damage.
– Never add radiator anti-freeze or other additives to the washer fluid.
– Do not use a glass cleaner that contains paint solvents, because this could damage the paint.

## Windshield washer system messages

The following messages may appear, depending on the vehicle equipment:

If the indicator light appears, add washer fluid to the washer fluid reservoir while the vehicle is off ⇨ *page 243* and ⇨ *in Filling the windshield washer system on page 243*.

# Service interval display

## Information about the service interval display

The service interval display detects when your vehicle is due for service.

The service interval display works in two stages:
– **Inspection or oil change reminder:** after driving a certain distance, a message appears in the instrument cluster display each time the vehicle is turned on or off. The remaining distance or time is displayed briefly.
– **Inspection or oil change due:** if your vehicle has reached an inspection or oil change interval or both intervals at the same time, the message **Inspection due!** or **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** will appear briefly after turning the vehicle on or off.

### Resetting the display

An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will reset the service interval display after performing service.

**WARNING**

Inadequate service, a lack of service, or failing to adhere to the service intervals can result in the vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents, and serious injuries.

**Note**

– Regular service work on the vehicle is not only beneficial for sustainable use of the vehicle and retention of its value, but also for operational and traffic safety. For this reason, always have service work performed according to the Audi guidelines.
– Even if the mileage on the vehicle is low, do not exceed the time for the next service.
– Audi is not responsible for damage to the vehicle that occurred due to inadequate service or insufficient part availability.

### Operating the service interval display

You can check the remaining distance or time until the next oil change or next inspection in the **Vehicle** menu in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 25*.

In new vehicles, the service interval schedule can only be viewed after 310 miles (500 km).

## Online Car Care

### Using Online Car Care

Applies to: vehicles with Online Car Care

Online Car Care will display service information, predictive messages, and field campaigns (such as service actions or recalls) about your vehicle.

If new messages from Online Car Care are available, they will be displayed in the MMI.

▸ To open Online Car Care messages and to schedule an appointment, select in the MMI: ⊞ > **Audi apps** > **Online Car Care**

**WARNING**

– Pay attention to the information about Audi connect in the Owner's Manual.
– Recalls by the manufacturer must be performed. Failing to adhere to this requirement can void the vehicle's operating license. Failing to perform measures can result in impaired functionality, which increases the risk of an accident.

**Note**

– Pay attention to the information about Audi connect in the Owner's Manual.
– Recalls by the manufacturer must be performed. If they are not, there is a risk of vehicle damage.

# Wheels

## Tires and rims

### Introduction

The combination of a rim and tire will be referred to as a wheel in the Owner's Manual. If only one of the components is referred to, then the term tire or rim will be used.

▸ Check your tires regularly for damage, such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and bulges. Remove foreign objects from the tire tread.
▸ If driving over curbs or similar obstacles, drive slowly and approach the curb at an angle.
▸ Have faulty tires or rims replaced immediately.
▸ Protect your tires from oil, grease, and fuel.
▸ Mark tires before removing them so that the same running direction can be maintained if they are reinstalled. ▸

▶ Lay tires flat when storing and store them in a cool, dry location with as little exposure to light as possible.

**WARNING**

– Never drive faster than the maximum permitted speed for your tires. This could cause the tires to heat up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst.
– Always adapt your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tires can lose traction on black ice.

**Note**

– Please note that summer and winter tires are designed for the conditions that are typical in those seasons. Audi recommends winter tires during the winter months. Low temperatures significantly decrease the elasticity of summer tires, which affects traction and braking ability. If summer tires are used in very cold temperatures, cracks can form on the tread bars, resulting in permanent tire damage that can cause loud driving noise and unbalanced tires.
– Burnished, polished, or chromed rims must not be used in winter driving conditions. The surface of the rims does not have sufficient corrosion protection for this and could be permanently damaged by road salt or similar substances. The exception to this are rims that are part of complete winter wheels provided by the factory.

## Tire designations

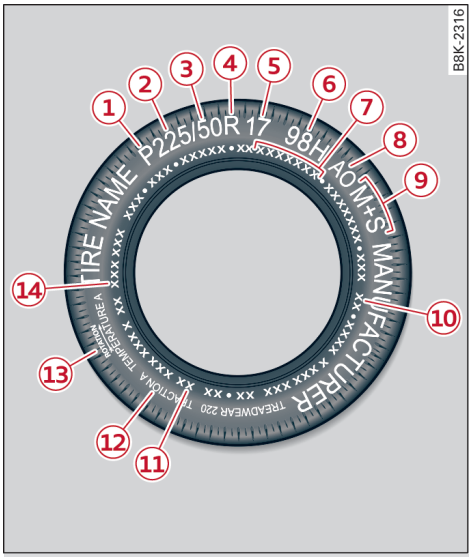



**Fig. 115** Tire designations on the sidewall ▶

### ① Tires for passenger vehicles (if applicable)

“P” indicates a tire for a passenger vehicle. “T” indicates a tire designated for temporary use.

HL indicates High Load Capacity tires.

### ② Nominal width

Nominal width of the tire between the sidewalls in millimeters. In general: the larger the number, the wider the tire.

### ③ Aspect ratio

Height/width ratio expressed as a percentage.

### ④ Tire construction

“R” indicates a radial tire.

### ⑤ Rim diameter

Size of the rim diameter in inches.

### ⑥ Load index and speed rating

The load index indicates the tire's load-carrying capacity.

The speed rating indicates the maximum permitted speed. Also see ⇨ ⚠ *in Introduction on page 245*.

“EXTRA LOAD”, “xl” or “RF” indicates that the tire is reinforced or is an Extra Load tire.

| Speed rating | Maximum permitted speed |
|---|---|
| P | up to 93 mph (150 km/h) |
| Q | up to 99 mph (160 km/h) |
| R | up to 106 mph (170 km/h) |
| S | up to 110 mph (180 km/h) |
| T | up to 118 mph (190 km/h) |
| U | up to 124 mph (200 km/h) |
| H | up to 130 mph (210 km/h) |
| V | up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[a)] |
| Z | above 149 mph (240 km/h)[a)] |
| W | up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[a)] |
| Y | up to 186 mph (300 km/h)[a)] |

a) For tires above 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the code “ZR”.

### ⑦ US DOT number (TIN) and manufacture date

The manufacture date is listed on the tire sidewall (it may only appear on the inner side of the tire):

**DOT ... 2226 ...**

means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of the year 2026.

### ⑧ AO or R0

Tires with the designation “AO” or “R0” that have been specifically matched to your Audi are installed at the factory. When used correctly, these tires meet very high standards for safety and handling. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility ▶

will be able to provide you with more information.

### ⑨ Mud and snow capability

“M/S” or “M+S” indicates the tire is suitable for driving on mud and snow. The ❄ symbol indicates a winter tire.

### ⑩ Composition of the tire cord and materials

The number of plies indicates the number of rubberized fabric layers in the tire. In general: the more layers, the more weight a tire can carry. Tire manufacturers must also specify the materials used in the tire. These include steel, nylon, polyester, and other materials.

### ⑪ Maximum permitted load

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that the tire can carry.

### ⑫ Uniform tire quality grade standards for treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance

Treadwear, traction, and temperature ranges ⇨ *page 261*.

### ⑬ Running direction

The arrows indicate the running direction of unidirectional tires. You must always follow the specified running direction ⇨ *page 276*.

### ⑭ Maximum permitted inflation pressure

This number indicates the maximum pressure to which a tire can be inflated under normal operating conditions.

## Glossary of tire and loading terminology

### Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

### Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 55 or lower indicate a ▶

low sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement.

### Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

### Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

### Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

### Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

### Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

### Extra load tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Extra load tires may be identified as “XL”, “xl”, “EXTRA LOAD”, or “RF” on the sidewall.

### Gross Axle Weight Rating (“GAWR”)

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

### Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (“GVWR”)

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

### Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

### High load capacity tire

High load capacity tires are extra load tires that are designed to carry a higher load at the same pressure. High load capacity tires are identified with the prefix “HL” in front of the tire size designation. ▶

### Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

### Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

### Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of:

(a) Curb weight
(b) Accessory weight
(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight

### Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called “maximum inflation pressure.”

### Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

### Occupant distribution

means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

### Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

### Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

### Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

### Production options weight

means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs. (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

### Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the ▶

beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

### Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇨ *page 248, Cold tire inflation pressure*.

### Reinforced tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Reinforced tires may be identified as “XL”, “xl”, “EXTRA LOAD”, or “RF” on the sidewall.

### Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

### Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

### Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

### Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

### Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

### Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h) ⇨ *table on page 246*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the maximum permissible road speeds. See also ⇨ ⚠ *in Introduction on page 245*.

### Tire pressure monitoring system

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale. ▶

**Tread**

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

**Tread separation**

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

**Treadwear indicators (TWI)**

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇨ *page 254, Treadwear indicator* for more information on measuring tire wear.

**Uniform Tire Quality Grading**

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles (kilometers) or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

**U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)**

This is the tire's "serial number". It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example,

**DOT ... 2226 ...**

means that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of 2026. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

**Vehicle capacity weight**

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity. ▶

### Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

### Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with ⇨ *table on page 257*) and dividing by two.

### Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Refer to the tire inflation pressure label ⇨ *page 255, fig. 118* for the number of seating positions. Refer to the table ⇨ *table on page 257* for the number of people that correspond to the vehicle normal load.

## Information about new tires or wheels

Audi recommends having all work on tires or wheels performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. These facilities have the proper knowledge and are equipped with the required tools and replacement parts.

- ▶ New tires do not yet have the optimal gripping properties. Drive carefully and at moderate speeds for the first 350 miles (500 km) with new tires.
- ▶ Only use tires with the same dimensions, design, size (rolling circumference), and as close to the same tread pattern as possible on all four wheels.
- ▶ Do not replace tires individually. At least replace both tires on the same axle at the same time.
- ▶ Audi recommends using Audi Original Tires. If you would like to use different tires, please note that the tires may perform differently even if they are the same size.
- ▶ If you would like to equip your vehicle with a tire and rim combination that is different from what was installed at the factory, consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before making a purchase. Note the important ▶

information and warnings about run-flat tires.

All four wheels must be equipped with tires that are the same brand and have the same construction and tread pattern so that the drive system is not damaged by different tire speeds.

**WARNING**

- Do not use steel rims. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
- Only use tire/rim combinations and suitable wheel bolts that have been approved by Audi. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
- For technical reasons, it is not possible to use tires from other vehicles. In some cases, you cannot even use tires from the same vehicle model.
- Make sure that the tires you select have enough clearance to the vehicle. Replacement tires should not be chosen simply based on the nominal size, because tires with a different construction can differ greatly even if they are the same size. If there is not enough clearance, the tires or the vehicle can be damaged and this can reduce driving safety and increase the risk of an accident.
- Only use tires that are more than six years old when absolutely necessary and drive carefully when doing so.
- If you install wheel covers on the vehicle, make sure they allow enough air circulation to cool the brake system. If they do not, this could increase the risk of an accident.
- Mounting a tire on the rim incorrectly can result in tire damage or failure. To reduce the risk of an accident, only trained personnel may mount a tire on the rim.

## Information about tire wear and damage

**Fig. 116** Tire profile: treadwear indicator

## Tire wear

Check the tires regularly for wear.

- Inflation pressure that is too low or high can increase tire wear considerably.
- Driving quickly through curves, rapid acceleration, and heavy braking increase tire wear. When driving under these conditions, check the tread depth every 3,100 miles (5,000 km) to 6,200 miles (10,000 km).
- Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check the wheel alignment if there is unusual wear.
- Have the wheels rebalanced if an imbalance is causing noticeable vibration in the steering wheel. If you do not, the tires and other vehicle components could wear more quickly.

## Treadwear indicator

Original equipment tires contain treadwear indicators in the tread pattern, which are bars that are 1/16 in (1.6 mm) high and are spaced evenly around the tire perpendicular to the running direction. The letters “TWI” or triangles on the tire sidewall indicate the location of the treadwear indicators.

When checking tread depth, you must check the wear indicators across the entire width of the tire and on all four tires.

The tires have reached the minimum tread depth when they have worn down to the treadwear indicators. Replace the tires with new ones. Pay attention to country-specific legal regulations regarding the minimum tread depth.

## Tire rotation

Rotating the tires regularly is recommended to ensure the tires wear evenly. To rotate the tires, install the tires from the rear axle on the front axle and vice versa. This will allow the tires to have approximately the same length of service life.

For unidirectional tires, make sure the tires are installed according to the running direction indicated on the tire sidewall.

## Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims can often occur in locations that are hidden. Unusual vibrations in the vehicle or pulling to one side may ▶

indicate that there is tire damage. Reduce your speed immediately. Check the tires for damage. If no damage is visible from the outside, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the vehicle inspected.

**WARNING**

Tread that has worn too low or uneven tread depths on the tires can reduce driving safety. This can increase the risk of an accident because it has a negative effect on handling, driving through curves, and braking, and because it increases the risk of hydroplaning when driving through deep puddles.

## Information about tire pressure

**Fig. 117** Driver's side B-pillar: tire pressure label

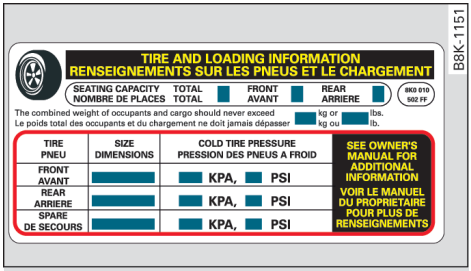



**Fig. 118** Tire pressure label

The correct tire pressure for tires installed at the factory is listed on a label. The label is located on the B-pillar ⇨ *fig. 117*, ⇨ *fig. 118*.

Use the tire pressure specified for a normal vehicle load when the vehicle is partially loaded ⇨ *table on page 257*. If driving the vehicle when fully loaded, you must increase the tire pressure to the maximum specified pressure ⇨ ⚠.

### Checking and correcting tire pressure

- ▸Check the tire pressure at least once per month and also check it before every long drive.
- ▸Always check the tire pressure when the tires are *cold*. Do not reduce the pressure if it increases when the tires are warm.
- ▸Refer to the sticker ⇨ *fig. 118* for the correct tire pressure.
- ▸Correct the tire pressure if necessary.

▸

▶Store the new tire pressure in the central display.

**WARNING**

Always adapt the tire pressure to your driving style and the vehicle load.

–Overloading can result in loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of an accident. Read and follow the important safety information in ⇨ *page 257*.

–The tire must flex more if the tire pressure is too low or if the vehicle speed or load are too high. This heats the tire up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst and result in loss of vehicle control.

–Incorrect tire pressure increases tire wear and has a negative effect on driving and braking behavior, which increases the risk of an accident.

**Note**

Replace lost valve caps to reduce the risk of damage to the tire valves.

**For the sake of the environment**

Tire pressure that is too low increases energy use.

## Tire pressure table

Please note that the information contained in the following table was correct at the time of publication, and the information is subject to change. If there are any differences, you should always follow the tire pressure sticker ⇨ *page 255, fig. 117*.

Make sure that the tire designation on your tire matches the designation on the tire pressure label and the tire pressure table.

The following table lists recommended tire pressures in cold tires according to the load and the size of the tires installed. ▶

| Model | Tire designation | Tire pressure | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Normal load (up to 3 persons: 2 persons in the front, 1 person in the rear) | | | | Maximum load | | | |
| | | Front | | Rear | | Front | | Rear | |
| | | kPa | PSI | kPa | PSI | kPa | PSI | kPa | PSI |
| A5 | 235/45 R18 98H | 270 | 39 | 240 | 35 | 280 | 41 | 280 | 41 |
| | 245/40 R19 98H | 270 | 39 | 240 | 35 | 280 | 41 | 280 | 41 |
| | HL245/35 R20 98H | 280 | 41 | 250 | 36 | 280 | 41 | 280 | 41 |
| S5 | 245/40 R19 98Y | 290 | 42 | 260 | 38 | 300 | 44 | 300 | 44 |
| | HL245/35 R20 98Y | 290 | 42 | 260 | 38 | 300 | 44 | 300 | 44 |
| | 245/40 R19 98H | 270 | 39 | 240 | 35 | 280 | 41 | 280 | 41 |
| | HL245/35 R20 98H | 280 | 41 | 250 | 36 | 290 | 42 | 290 | 42 |

**WARNING**

Please note the important safety information regarding tire pressure ⇨ *page 255* and load limits ⇨ *page 257*.

## Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs. (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating ▶

position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle. If you tow a trailer, the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer must be included as part of the vehicle load.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles.

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle (including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer) is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located on the driver's side B-pillar.

**WARNING**

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

- Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.
- The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.
- Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.
- Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

## Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded.

### Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS" on your vehicle's placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇨ *page 255, fig. 118*.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from "XXX" kilograms or "XXX" pounds shown on the sticker ⇨ *page 255, fig. 118*.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lbs. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

▶ Check the tire sidewall (⇨ *page 245, fig. 115*) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire.

### Information about wheel bolts and rims

**Wheel bolts**

Wheel bolts must be clean and must loosen and tighten easily.

**Rims**

Rims with a bolted rim ring or with bolted wheel covers consist of multiple pieces. These components were bolted together using special bolts ▶

and a special procedure. You must never repair or disassemble them.

**WARNING**

Wheel bolts that are tightened or repaired incorrectly can become loose and result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident. The correct tightening specifications can be found in the description for changing tires.

– Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hub clean and free of grease.
– Only use wheel bolts that fit the rim.
– Always have damaged rims repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Never repair or disassemble rims yourself, because this increases the risk of an accident.

## Information about winter tires

Winter tires significantly improve the vehicle's handling when driving in winter conditions. Because of their construction (width, compound, tread pattern), summer tires provide less traction on ice and snow.

You can also use all-season tires instead of winter tires. Please note that in some countries where winter tires are required, only winter tires with the symbol may be permitted.

▸ Use winter tires on all four wheels.
▸ Only use winter tires that are approved for your vehicle.
▸ Please note that the maximum permitted speed may be lower with winter tires. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can inform you about the maximum permitted speed for your tires.
▸ Check the tire pressure after installing a wheel.

The effectiveness of winter tires is reduced greatly when the tread is worn down to a depth of 0.16 in (4 mm). The characteristics of winter tires also decrease greatly as the tire ages, regardless of the remaining tread.

**For the sake of the environment**

Reinstall summer tires at the appropriate time, because they provide better handling when roads are free of snow and ice. Summer tires cause less road noise, tire wear, and energy use.

## Information about snow chains

Snow chains improve both driving and braking in winter road conditions.

▸ Only install snow chains on the front wheels.
▸ Check and correct the seating of the snow chains after driving a few feet, if necessary. Follow the instructions from the manufacturer.
▸ Note the maximum speed of 30 mph (50 km/h). Observe local regulations.

Use of snow chains is only permitted with certain rim/tire combinations for technical reasons. Check with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to see if you may use snow chains.

Use **fine-mesh snow chains**. They must not add more than 0.35 inch (9 mm) in height, including the chain lock.

When using snow chains, it may be advisable to limit the ESC.

You must remove the snow chains on roads without snow. Otherwise, you could impair driving ability and damage the tires.

**WARNING**

Using incorrect snow chains or installing snow chains incorrectly can result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident.

**Note**

Snow chains can damage the rims and wheel covers if the chains come into direct contact with them. Remove the wheel covers first. Use coated snow chains.

## Information about low-profile tires

Compared to other tire/rim combinations, low-profile tires offer a wider tread surface and a larger rim diameter with shorter tire sidewalls. This results in an agile driving feel. However, it may reduce the level of comfort and increase road noise when driving on roads in poor condition.

Low-profile tires can become damaged more quickly than standard tires when driving over large bumps, potholes, manhole covers, and curbs. Therefore, it is particularly important to maintain the correct tire pressure.

To reduce the risk of damage to the tires and rims, drive very carefully on poor roads.

Check your wheels regularly every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) for damage. For example, check for bulges/cracks on the tires or deformations/cracks on the rims.

After a heavy impact or damage, have the tires and rims inspected or replaced immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Low-profile tires can wear out faster than standard tires.

## Uniform tire quality grading

– Tread wear
– Traction AA A B C
– Temperature A B C

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇨ *page 245, fig. 115*.

**For example:** Tread wear **200**, Traction **AA**, Temperature **A**.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

### Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇨ ⚠.

### Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇨ ⚠.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

**⚠ WARNING**

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

**⚠ WARNING**

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or ▶

in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

**WARNING**

Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.

# Tire pressure monitoring system

## General notes

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

## Tire pressure monitoring system function

The tire pressure monitoring system uses sensors that measure the temperature and pressure in the tires. The data is sent from these sensors to the control module by radio frequency.

While driving, the system monitors the tire pressures of the four wheels and displays the current pressures and temperatures in the central display. It also compares the current tire pressures with the stored tire pressures and gives a warning in the driver information system if the tire pressure is different from what is stored.

The system does not detect if the stored tire pressures match the recommended tire pressures. You must store the tire pressures again in each of the following situations:

– Each time the tire pressures change, for example when the load in the vehicle changes
– After replacing a tire
– If wheels with new wheel sensors are used

If tires are being replaced, sensors, valves and wheel electronics only need to be replaced if necessary. Only the valve insert must be replaced. If you have questions, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

An incorrect display or a malfunction in the tire pressure monitoring system can occur after using the tire repair kit. Have the sensors replaced by ▶

an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

### Information about declarations of conformity

The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 293*.

**WARNING**

- The tire pressure monitoring system assists with monitoring tire pressures. The driver is always responsible for maintaining the correct tire pressure.
- Do not change the tire pressure when the temperature of the tire is extremely high. This could result in serious damage to the tire and even cause the tire to burst, increasing the risk of an accident.
- A tire with low pressure flexes more. This heats the tire up too much. This could cause the tread to separate and even cause the tire to burst, increasing the risk of an accident.
- The tire pressure monitoring system does not warn about damage or defects in the tire construction that could cause the tire to burst, for example. Inspect your tires regularly.

## Displaying tire pressures and temperatures

Requirement: you must be driving the vehicle.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Vehicle** > **Service** > **Tire pressure monitoring** > **Display tire pressure**.

The current tire pressures are shown in green, yellow, or red numbers:

- **Green:** the current tire pressure and the specified tire pressure are approximately the same.
- **Yellow:** the current tire pressure is lower than the specified tire pressure.
- **Red:** the current tire pressure is much lower than the specified tire pressure.

The specified tire pressure is the last tire pressure that was stored.

Note that the tire pressure also depends on the temperature of the tire. The tire pressure increases as the tires become warmer while driving.

The tire pressure or temperature is not displayed while the vehicle is stationary and in adaptation mode. Dashes **-.-** are shown in place of the pressure and temperature.

**WARNING**

Read and follow the important information and notes ⇨ *page 262*.

## Tire pressure monitoring system messages

If the (!) indicator light turns on, the tire pressure is too low compared to the specified pressure. Check and store the tire pressure(s) the next time it is possible to do so.

**(!) Flat tire! Safely stop vehicle. Please check all tires and store pressures in MMI.**

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, the tire pressure has reached a critical level compared to the specified pressure. Avoid unnecessary steering and braking maneuvers. Adapt your driving style to the situation. Stop as soon as possible and check the tire(s). If it is possible to continue driving, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately and have your tire(s) repaired or replaced if necessary.

**TPMS Tire pressure: malfunction! See owner's manual**

If the TPMS indicator light appears after turning on the vehicle or while driving and the (!) indicator light also blinks for approximately one minute and then stays on, then there is system malfunction. The following are examples of situations that could cause a malfunction:

- If the message appears at the end of the adaptation phase, the system may not detect one or several of the wheel sensors necessary for pressure monitoring. This may result from one or more wheels without wheel sensors or with incompatible wheel sensors being installed.
- A wheel sensor or another component has failed.

– Using snow chains can affect the function of the system because of the shielding effect of the chains.
– The tire pressure monitoring system is not available due to a malfunction.
– Transmitters with the same frequency, such as headphones or remote-controlled devices, may cause a temporary system malfunction due to the strong electromagnetic field.

The TPMS indicator light and the message turn off once the tire pressure monitoring system is available again. If you cannot correct the malfunction and the TPMS indicator light stays on, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

**WARNING**

Read and follow the important information and notes ⇨ *page 262*.

## Storing tire pressures in the tire pressure monitoring system

It is always necessary to store the tire pressures when the tire pressures are modified, for example due to a change in load or when new sensors are installed. The tire pressure specifications must be stored correctly for the tire pressure monitoring system to function reliably.

▸ Make sure before storing that the tire pressures of all four tires meet the specified values on the tire pressure label and are adapted to the load. Only correct and store the pressure in tires whose temperature is approximately the same as the ambient temperature. If the temperature of the tire is higher than the ambient air temperature, the tire pressure must be increased approximately 3 PSI (0,2 bar) above the value on the sticker.
▸ Turn on the vehicle.
▸ Select: ⊞ > **Vehicle** > **Service** > **Store tire pressure** > **Store tire pressure** > **Yes, store now**.
▸ If the changed tire pressures are not displayed in the central display, drive the vehicle for approximately 10 minutes so that the sensor signals from the wheels are received again.

During this adaptation phase, **-.-** is displayed for the pressure and temperature and the tire pressure monitoring system is only available to a limited extent. It only provides a warning if one or more tire pressures is below the minimum permitted specified pressure.

**Tire pressure: wheel change detected. Please check all tires and store pressures in the MMI.**

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, the system has detected that the location of the sensors has changed due to a wheel replacement, or new sensors have been installed. Store the new tire pressures.

**WARNING**

Read and follow the important information and notes ⇨ *page 262*.

# Information about run-flat tires

Run-flat tires have reinforced sidewalls that protect the tire if there is a loss of pressure. They can be identified by the “AOE”, “REO” or “ROE” labeling on the tire sidewall.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicates a loss of pressure in one or several tires, you can continue driving on run-flat tires for at least 20 miles (30 km). Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the problem corrected.

The tire pressure must be adjusted to a specified value listed on the tire pressure label.

You can use the tire repair kit on run-flat tires.

**Continuing to drive on run-flat tires is no longer possible if:**

– There is visible damage to the tires, such as cracks in the sidewalls
– Strong vibrations are felt while driving, or the tire begins to smoke due to a strong build-up of heat
– The tire has been heavily damaged, for example in an accident. There is a risk that parts of the tire tread will detach and damage important vehicle components. ▸

– The Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) is not working or is continuously running
– The tire pressure monitoring system is not working

If it is no longer possible to continue driving despite having run-flat tires, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**WARNING**

– Incorrect use of run-flat tires can result in vehicle damage or accidents. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to learn if run-flat tires may be used on your vehicle and if so, which ones.
– The vehicle must have suspension designed for run-flat tires and a factory-installed tire pressure monitoring system.
– If run-flat tires are used, they must be installed on all four wheels. Mixing tire types is not permitted.
– If you have to drive when the tire pressure is too low or there is no tire pressure, note the following:
  – Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) because this increases the risk of an accident. Observe any laws specific to the country where you are driving.
  – Avoid full-throttle acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering, because this increases the risk of an accident.
  – The vehicle may become more difficult to control.
  – See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance if the tire is too heavily damaged.
– Have the faulty tires replaced and the rims checked for damage by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– The driver is responsible for the vehicle, for correcting the tire pressure, and for replacing faulty parts. Therefore, always adjust your driving to the current situation.

# Care and cleaning

## Introduction

Regular, proper care helps to maintain your vehicle's value. It can also be a requirement when submitting warranty claims for corrosion damage and paint defects on the body.

The required cleaning and care products can be obtained from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility. Read and follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

**WARNING**

– Using cleaning and care products incorrectly can be dangerous to your health.
– Always store cleaning and care products out of reach of children to reduce the risk of poisoning.

## Washing your vehicle

The longer that deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap, or road salt remain on the vehicle, the more the surface can be damaged. High temperatures such as those caused by sunlight increase the damaging effect.

Before washing, rinse off heavy deposits with plenty of water.

Stubborn deposits, such as bird droppings or tree sap, are best removed with plenty of water and a microfiber cloth.

Also, wash the underside of your vehicle once use of road salt ends for the season.

### Pressure washers

When washing your vehicle with a pressure washer, always follow the operating instructions provided with the pressure washer. This is especially important in regard to the pressure and spraying distance. Do not aim the spray directly at the seals on the side windows, doors, lids, or the sunroof or at tires, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors, or camera lenses. Maintain a distance of at least 16 inches (40 cm). ▶

Do not remove snow and ice with a pressure washer.

Never use cone nozzles or high pressure nozzles.

The water temperature must not be above 140 °F (60 °C).

### Automatic car wash

Spray off the vehicle before washing.

Make sure that the windows and roof are closed and the windshield wipers are off. Make sure that the vehicle is still able to roll during the washing process in the car wash. Follow instructions from the car wash operator, especially if there are accessories attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use car washes that do not have brushes.

### Washing by hand

Clean the vehicle starting from the top and working downward using a soft sponge or cleaning brush. Use solvent-free cleaning products.

### Washing vehicles with matte finish paint by hand

To reduce the risk of damaging the matte paint when washing, first remove dust and large particles from your vehicle. Insects, grease spots, and fingerprints are best removed with a special cleaner for matte finish paint.

Apply the product using a microfiber cloth. To reduce the risk of damaging the paint surface, do not use too much pressure.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water. Then clean using a neutral shampoo and a soft microfiber cloth.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly again and let it air dry. Remove any water residue using a chamois.

**WARNING**

- To reduce the risk of accidents, only wash the vehicle when it is turned off and follow the instructions from the car wash operator.
- To reduce the risk of cuts, protect yourself from sharp metal components when washing the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.
- After washing the vehicle, the effectiveness of the brakes may be delayed due to moisture on the brake rotors or ice in the winter. This increases the risk of an accident. The brakes must be dried with a few careful brake applications.

**Note**

- If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage to the mirrors. Power folding exterior mirrors must only be folded in and out using the power folding function.
- To reduce the risk of damage to the rims and tires, compare the width between the wheels on your vehicle with the distance between the guide rails in the car wash.
- To reduce the risk of damage, compare the height and width of your vehicle with the height and width of the inside of the car wash.
- Make sure there is sufficient ground clearance when driving into a car wash with a conveyor belt. There is risk of damage because the vehicle could come in contact with the guide rails.
- Using a pressure washer incorrectly can cause damage. Never direct a stream of water directly onto electrical/electronic components when cleaning the engine compartment. Such components can be seriously damaged by the entry of fluids and by pressure, and this can result in component failure.
- To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- To reduce the risk of damage, do not wash decorative decals with a pressure washer.
- To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use insect removing sponges, kitchen sponges, or similar items.
- When washing matte finish painted vehicle components:

▶

– Do not use polishing agents or hard wax to reduce the risk of damage to the surface.
– Never use protective wax. It can destroy the matte finish effect.
– Do not place any stickers or magnetic signs on vehicle components painted with matte finish paint. The paint could be damaged when the stickers or magnets are removed.

**For the sake of the environment**

Only wash the vehicle in facilities specially designed for that purpose. This will reduce the risk of dirty water contaminated with oil entering the sewer system.

# Cleaning and care information

When cleaning and caring for individual vehicle components, refer to the following tables. The information contained here is simply recommendations. For questions or for components that are not listed, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Also follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠.

**Exterior cleaning**

| Component | Situation | Solution |
|---|---|---|
| **Windshield wiper blades** | Deposits | Soft cloth with glass cleaner |
| **Headlights/ tail lights** | Deposits | Soft sponge with a mild soap solution containing a maximum of 2 tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water |
| **Sensors/ camera lenses** | Deposits | Sensors: soft cloth with a solvent-free cleaning product<br>Camera lenses: soft cloth with an alcohol-free cleaning solution |
| | Snow/ice | Hand brush/solvent-free de-icing spray |
| **Wheels** | Road salt | Water |
| | Brake dust | Acid-free special cleaning solution |
| **Exhaust tail pipes** | Road salt | Water, cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary |
| **Decorative parts and trim** | Deposits | Mild soap solution containing a maximum of 2 tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water, cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel if necessary. |
| **Rubber seals** | Deposits | Microfiber cloth with a mild soap solution containing a maximum of 2 tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water |
| | Frost | Protect the seals on doors, covers, and lids from freezing using a suitable care product |

| Component | Situation | Solution |
|---|---|---|
| **Paint** | Spilled fuel | Rinse with water immediately |
| | Surface rust | Rust remover, then treat with hard wax; for questions, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. |
| | Corrosion | Have it removed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. |
| | Water no longer beads on the surface of clean paint | Treat with hard wax (at least twice per year) |
| | No shine even though paint has been protected/paint looks poor | Treat with suitable polish; then apply paint protectant if the polish that was used does not contain any protectant |
| | Deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap, and road salt | Dampen with water immediately and remove with a microfiber cloth |
| | Grease-based contaminants such as cosmetics or sunblock | Immediately clean with a mild soap solution containing a maximum of 2 tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water on a soft cloth |
| **Carbon components** | Deposits | Clean the same way as painted components |
| **Decorative decals** | Deposits | Soft sponge with a mild soap solution containing a maximum of 2 tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water |
| | Deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap, and road salt | Dampen with water immediately and remove with a microfiber cloth |
| | Grease-based contaminants such as cosmetics or sunblock | Immediately clean with a mild soap solution containing a maximum of 2 tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water on a soft cloth |
| | Spilled fuel | Immediately dab off using a soft cloth and then clean with a mild soap solution containing a maximum of 2 tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water on a soft cloth |

Additional information about exterior cleaning:

– Insects are easier to remove from paint that has been freshly waxed.
– Regular waxing can prevent rust spots from forming.
– Decorative decals can age due to environmental conditions, which can result in damage such as brittleness. The color may fade if exposed to excessive sunlight. ▶

**Interior cleaning**

| Component | Situation | Solution |
|---|---|---|
| **Window glass** | Deposits | Glass cleaner, then wipe dry |
| **Decorative parts and trim** | Deposits | Mild soap solution containing a maximum 2 tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water |
| **Plastic parts** | Deposits | Damp cloth |
| | Heavier deposits | Mild soap solution containing a maximum of 2 tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water, solvent-free plastic cleaner if necessary |
| **Displays** | Deposits | Soft cloth with LCD cleaner, if necessary solvent-free plastic cleaner; dust in the lower area of the instrument cluster can be removed using a soft brush |
| **Controls** | Deposits | Soft brush, and then a soft cloth with a mild soap solution containing a maximum of 2 tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water, solvent-free plastic cleaner if necessary |
| **Safety belts** | Deposits | Mild soap solution containing a maximum of 2 tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water. Allow to dry before retracting. |
| **Textiles, artificial leather, microfiber** | Deposits adhering to the surface | Vacuum cleaner |
| | Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc. | Absorbent cloth and a mild soap solution containing a maximum of 2 tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water |
| | Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc. | Apply a mild soap solution containing a maximum 2 tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water, dab off loosened grease and paint particles using an absorbent cloth, post-treat with water if necessary |
| | Special types of deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc. | Special stain remover, dab off using an absorbent material, if necessary post-treat with a mild soap solution containing a maximum 2 tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water |

| Component | Situation | Solution |
|---|---|---|
| **Natural leather** | Fresh stains | Cotton cloth with a mild soap solution containing a maximum of 2 tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water |
| | Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc. | Fresh stains: absorbent cloth<br>dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather |
| | Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc. | Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and stain remover suitable for leather<br>Dried stains: oil cleaning spray |
| | Special types of deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc. | Spot remover suitable for leather |
| | Care | Regularly apply conditioning cream that protects from light and penetrates into the material. Use special colored conditioning cream, if necessary. |
| **Carbon components** | Deposits | Clean the same way as plastic components |

**WARNING**

The windshield must not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Under unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness, and when the sun is low, these coatings can cause increased glare, which increases the risk of an accident. They can also cause wiper blade chatter.

**Note**

– **Headlights and tail lights**
  – Never clean the headlights or tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge because the lights could be damaged.
  – Do not use any cleaning products that contain alcohol, because they could cause cracks to form.
– **Wheels**
  – Never use any paint polish or other abrasive materials.
  – Damage to the protective layer on the rims, such as stone chips or scratches, must be repaired immediately.
– **Camera lenses**
  – Never use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the camera lens. This could cause the lens to crack.
  – Never use abrasive cleaning materials or alcohol to clean the camera lens. This could cause scratches and cracks.
– **Door windows**
  – Remove snow and ice on windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper. To reduce the risk of scratches, move the scraper only in one direction and not back and forth.
  – Never remove snow or ice from door windows and mirrors using warm or hot water because this could cause cracks to form.
  – To reduce the risk of damage to the rear window defogger, do not apply any stickers on the heating wires on the inside of the window.
– **Decorative parts and trim**
  – Never use chrome care or cleaning products.
– **Rubber seals**
  – There is a risk of damage if chemical cleaning solutions or solvents are used.
– **Paint**

▶

  - To reduce the risk of scratches, the vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before polishing or waxing.
  - To prevent paint damage, do not polish or wax the vehicle in direct sunlight.
  - To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not polish away rust spots.
  - Remove cosmetics and sunscreen immediately because they could damage the paint.
- **Decorative decals**
  - Do not clean decorative decals with a pressure washer, because the decals could loosen.
  - To reduce the risk of damage, do not use any rough powder or abrasive cleaning products.
  - To reduce the risk of damage, do not polish decorative decals.
  - Due to the risk of damage, do not use an ice scraper to remove snow and ice on windows with decorative decals on them.
- **Displays**
  - Make sure that the displays are turned off and have cooled down before cleaning.
  - Displays, the instrument cluster, and the trim surrounding it must not be cleaned with dry cleaning methods because they could become scratched.
  - Make sure no fluids enter the spaces between the instrument cluster and the trim, because this could cause damage.
- **Controls**
  - Make sure that no fluids enter the controls, because this could cause damage.
- **Safety belts**
  - Do not remove the safety belts to clean them.
  - Never clean safety belts or their components with chemicals or with corrosive fluids or solvents and never allow sharp objects to come into contact with the safety belts. This could cause damage to the belt webbing.
  - If there is damage to the webbing, the connections, the retractors, or the buckles, have them replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- **Textiles/artificial leather/microfiber**
  - Never treat artificial leather or microfiber with leather care products, solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover, or similar products.
  - Have a cleaning specialist remove stubborn stains to reduce the risk of damage.
  - Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
  - Do not turn on the seat heating to dry the seats.
  - Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
  - Open hook and loop fasteners, for example on clothing, can damage seat covers. Make sure hook and loop fasteners are closed.
- **Natural leather**
  - Never treat leather with solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover or similar products.
  - Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
  - Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
  - Do not turn on the seat heating to dry the seats.
  - To help prevent the leather from fading, do not leave the vehicle in direct sunlight for long periods of time. If leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.

## Taking your vehicle out of service

If you would like to take your vehicle out of service for a long period of time, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. You can obtain information about the steps to complete depending on the conditions for taking the vehicle out of service (duration, location, etc.).

8B1012721BF

# Emergency assistance

## Introduction

- In the event of a breakdown, park the vehicle as far as possible from moving traffic. In the event of a flat tire, park the vehicle on a level surface. If you are on a steep hill, be especially careful.
- Set the parking brake.
- Turn on the emergency flashers.
- Have all passengers exit the vehicle. They should move to a safe place, for example behind a guard rail.

**WARNING**

Follow the steps listed above. This is for your own protection and for the safety of other road users.

## Equipment

### Vehicle tool kit/tire repair kit

The vehicle tools and tire repair kit are stored in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor. Depending on vehicle equipment the tire sealant bottle is located behind the left storage net in the luggage compartment.

- Lift the cargo floor using the handle.

## Tire repair kit

### Preparing to repair a tire

- Read and follow the important safety information ⇨ *page 272*.
- Set the parking brake.
- Check if a repair with the tire repair kit is possible.

### Using the tire repair kit

**Fig. 119** Tire: tire damage that cannot be repaired

The tire repair is only meant for temporary use. Follow the legal regulations that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle. Change the damaged tire as soon as possible.

If the tire has been pierced by an object, such as a nail, do not remove the object from the tire.

The tire repair kit may be used at temperatures down to -4°F (-20°C).

**The tire repair kit must not be used:**

– If the tire has cuts or punctures that are larger than 0.16 in (4 mm) ①.
– If the rim is damaged ②
– If you have driven with very low tire pressure or without air in the tire ③

See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance in these cases.

**Information about the tire repair kit**

If sealant leaks, allow it to dry in place. You can then peel it off like a sticker.

Note the expiration date on the sealant bottle. Replace the tire sealant at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Radio reception can be interrupted when operating the compressor.

**WARNING**

– Please note that the tire repair kit cannot be used in all situations, and that it may only be used temporarily.
– The tire sealant must not come in contact with skin, eyes, or clothing.

– If tire sealant comes into contact with your eyes or your skin, thoroughly rinse the affected area immediately with clean water.
– Do not inhale the fumes.
– If you swallow any of the tire sealant, thoroughly rinse your mouth immediately and drink a lot of water. Do not induce vomiting. Seek medical attention immediately.
– Change your clothing immediately if it comes into contact with tire sealant.
– Seek medical attention immediately if an allergic reaction occurs.
– Keep the tire sealant away from children.
– In vehicles with a tire pressure monitoring system, using tire sealant can result in an incorrect display or a system malfunction. Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

**For the sake of the environment**

Batteries and electrical/electronic devices must be disposed of in an environmentally safe manner ⇨ *page 293, Disposal instructions*.

## Repairing tires

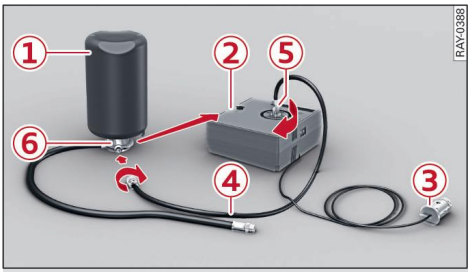



**Fig. 120** Components of the tire repair kit

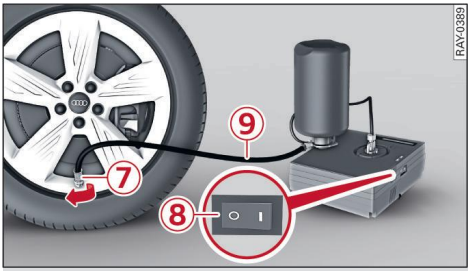



**Fig. 121** Tire repair kit connection

Requirement: the tire repair kit must be laid out and ready for use.

### Setting up the tire repair kit

▸ Take the connector ③ and pressure hose ④ from the bottom of the housing.
▸ Install one end of the pressure hose ④ all the way into the socket ⑤ of the compressor by turning it clockwise. Install the other end on the flange ⑥ of the tire sealant bottle ①. The compressor may look different. However, the way it is operated is generally the same.
▸ Insert the sealant bottle with the flange at the bottom into the opening ② on the compressor.
▸ Remove the valve cap from the faulty tire.
▸ Connect the filler hose ⑨ to the valve ⑦.
▸ Connect the plug ③ to an outlet in the vehicle.
▸ Turn on the ignition.

### Inflating a tire

▸ Move the switch ⑧ on the compressor to the **I** position.
▸ Inflate the tire to between 29 psi (200 kPA) and 36 psi (250 kPA) and read the pressure on the gauge.
▸ Do not operate the compressor for more than ten minutes continuously, or it can overheat. Once the compressor has cooled, you can continue to use it.
▸ If this tire pressure is not reached, remove the filler hose. Drive slowly approximately 33 feet (10 m) forward or in reverse so that the sealant can be distributed in the tire. Inflate the tire again. ▶

**WARNING**

– Read and follow the manufacturer's safety information on the compressor and in the instructions on the bottle of sealant.
– If a tire pressure of 29 psi (200 kPA) cannot reached after inflating for 10 minutes, then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.
– If the tire cannot be repaired with the tire sealant, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

## Completing a tire repair

- Affix the sticker that says "max. 50 mph (max. 80 km/h)" that is provided with the tire repair kit within your field of vision.
- Stop the vehicle after driving for about 10 minutes and check the tire pressure.
- If the tire pressure is lower than 19 psi (130 kPA), then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.
- Remember to obtain a new bottle of sealant from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility after repairing a tire.

**WARNING**

Pay attention to the following after repairing a tire:
– Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h).
– Avoid hard acceleration or braking and driving fast around curves.
– The vehicle may become more difficult to control.
– If the tire is too severely damaged, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**For the sake of the environment**

You can give the used tire sealant bottle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for disposal.

# Replacing wheels

## Preparing to change a tire

You should only perform the following steps if you have the necessary technical knowledge and tools. Audi recommends having the tires changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Commercially available tools, such as a vehicle jack and a wheel wrench, are needed to change the tires. Have these ready when starting the procedure.

- Read and follow the important safety information ⇨ *page 272*.
- Set the parking brake.
- When towing a trailer: disconnect the trailer from your vehicle.
- Turn off the ignition.

**WARNING**

When using a vehicle jack, the vehicle must also be secured to prevent it from rolling. Use suitable objects to block the front and back of the wheel that is diagonal from the wheel with the flat tire.

## Removing the caps

**Fig. 122** Wheel: wheel bolts with caps

- Slide the plastic clip from the vehicle tool kit onto the cap until it engages.
- Remove the cap using the plastic clip.

## Loosening anti-theft wheel bolts

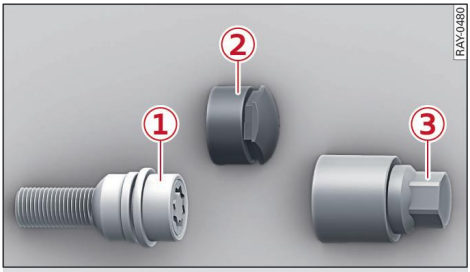



**Fig. 123** Anti-theft wheel bolt with cap and adapter

You need a special adapter in the vehicle tool kit to remove the anti-theft wheel bolts.

- Remove the cap ②.
- Slide the adapter ③ all the way onto the anti-theft wheel bolt ①.
- Slide the wheel wrench all the way onto the adapter ③.
- Loosen the wheel bolt.

Note the code number for the wheel bolt adapter and store it in a safe place separate from the vehicle. If you need a replacement adapter, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and give them the code number.

## Loosening the wheel bolts

**Fig. 124** Wheel: loosening the wheel bolts

- Slide the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go. You need the matching adapter in order to loosen and tighten anti-theft wheel bolts ⇨ *page 275*.
- Turn the wheel bolt approximately one turn to the left. To achieve the required torque, hold the end of the wheel wrench. If the wheel bolt will not loosen, press carefully on the wheel wrench with your foot. Hold onto the vehicle securely while doing this and make sure your footing is stable.

> **WARNING**
> To reduce the risk of an accident, only loosen the wheel bolts gently one turn before raising the vehicle with the vehicle jack.

## Raising the vehicle

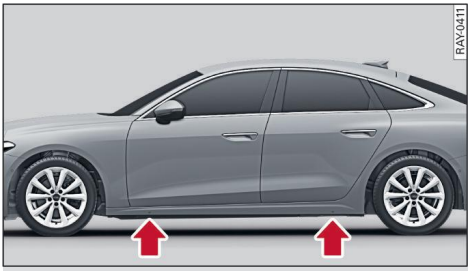



**Fig. 125** Sill panels: markings

- Place the vehicle jack on a firm surface. Use a flat, stable support if necessary. On a slippery surface such as tile, you should use a non-slip pad such as a rubber mat ⇨ ⚠.
- Find the marking on the sill that is closest to the tire that will be changed. Behind the marking, there is a lifting point on the side sill for the vehicle jack.
- Lift the vehicle using the vehicle jack until the wheel lifts off the ground slightly.

> **WARNING**
> – To reduce the risk of injury, make sure no one is in the vehicle before raising it.
> – Make sure the vehicle jack is stable. The risk of injury increases when the ground is slippery or soft, because the vehicle jack could slide or sink.
> – Position the vehicle jack only at the designated mounting points on the side sill and align the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle jack could slip and cause an injury if it does not have sufficient hold on the vehicle.
> – To reduce the risk of an accident, never turn on the drive system while the vehicle is raised.

– To reduce the risk of injury, no work should be performed under the vehicle while it is raised.

**Note**

Do not lift the vehicle by the sill. Position the vehicle jack only at the designated mounting points on the side sill. Otherwise, your vehicle could be damaged.

## Removing and installing a wheel

### Removing a wheel

- Remove the loosened wheel bolts completely using the wheel wrench and place them on a clean surface.
- Remove the wheel.

### Installing a wheel

Pay attention to the relevant information when installing unidirectional tires.

- Make sure that the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hub are clean, loosen/tighten easily, and are free of oil and grease.
- Install the wheel.
- Install the wheel bolts and tighten them lightly.
- Carefully lower the vehicle using the vehicle jack.
- Tighten the wheel bolts in a diagonal pattern using the wheel wrench.

**WARNING**

Read and follow the important information and notes under ⇨ *page 252*.

**Note**

When removing or installing the wheel, the rim could hit the brake rotor and damage the rotor. Work carefully and have a second person help you.

## Using unidirectional tires

A unidirectional tire profile is identified by arrows on the tire sidewall that point in the running direction. You must always maintain the specified running direction. This is necessary to ensure the tire's optimal performance in regard to adhesion, running noise, and friction, and to reduce the risk of hydroplaning.

To benefit fully from the advantages of the unidirectional tire design, you should replace faulty tires as soon as possible and restore the correct running direction on all of the tires.

## Completing a wheel change

- Reinstall any covers on the wheel bolts that were removed.
- Store the vehicle tool kit in its designated place.
- Store the replaced tire securely in the luggage compartment.
- Check the tire pressure on the installed wheel as soon as possible.
- Correct the tire pressure and store it in the central display.
- The wheel bolts must be tightened to 100 ft lbs (140 Nm). Have them checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Drive carefully until then.
- Have the faulty wheel replaced as soon as possible.

# Jump-starting

## Measures when the vehicle is without power

Refer to the following information if the vehicle is without power and locked:

– Manually opening the driver's door.
– Luggage compartment lid emergency release.

## Introduction

You should only perform the following steps if you have the necessary technical knowledge and tools.

If drive ready mode cannot be established because the 12 volt vehicle battery is drained, you can use another vehicle to supply energy to the 12 volt vehicle battery. Jump-start cables are needed to do this. ▶

Both vehicle batteries must have 12 volt nominal voltage. The voltage capacity (Ah) of the vehicle battery that is giving power must not be less than the capacity of the drained vehicle battery.

The drained vehicle battery must be connected correctly to the electrical system.

### Jump-start cable

Only use a jump-start cable with a large enough diameter. Note the manufacturer's specifications.

Only use a jump-start cable with insulated terminal clamps.

Positive cable - usually red.

Negative cable - usually black.

**WARNING**

- A drained battery can freeze at temperatures around 32°F (0°C). To reduce the risk of an explosion and chemical burns, always thaw a frozen battery before connecting jump-start cables. After supplying energy from an external source, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the vehicle battery checked.
- Read the warnings when working in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 224*.
- Handling the jump-start cables incorrectly may cause the vehicle battery to explode and result in serious injuries.

**Note**

- Jump-start cables can cause considerable damage to the vehicle electrical system if they are connected incorrectly.
- You must **not** give a jump-start with your vehicle. This could cause significant damage to the electrical system in your vehicle.

## Preparing to jump-start the vehicle

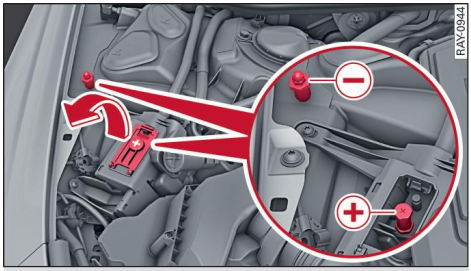



**Fig. 126** Engine compartment: connectors for jump-start cables or a charger

The jump-start cable connections are located in the engine compartment.

Observe the information about the vehicle battery.

### Preparing to jump-start the vehicle

- Make sure there is sufficient distance between the vehicles. Otherwise, voltage could flow when connecting the positive terminal and drain the battery of the vehicle providing the jump-start.
- Turn off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- Open the hood.

## Jump-starting

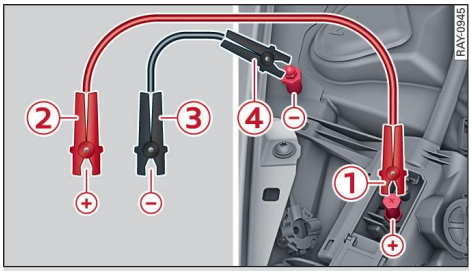



**Fig. 127** Connecting the jump-start cables

Connect the two jump-start cables in the correct order.

Make sure that the connected jump-start cables have sufficient contact with metal. ▶

### Connecting the positive cable (red) to the positive terminal

▸ Open the cover on the positive terminal.

1. Attach one end of the positive cable (red) to the jump-start pin ① on your vehicle.
2. Attach the other end of the positive cable (red) to the positive terminal ② on the power source.

### Connecting the negative cable (black) to the negative terminal

3. Attach one end of the negative cable (black) to the negative terminal ③ on the power source.
4. Attach the other end of the negative cable (black) to the jump-start pin ④ on the vehicle.

### Starting the engine

▸ Start the engine/motor in the vehicle giving the charge and let it run at idle.
▸ Now start the engine in your vehicle, which has the drained battery.
▸ If the engine does not start, stop the starting procedure after 10 seconds and then repeat it after approximately 30 seconds.
▸ Turn on the rear window defogger in your vehicle in order to reduce any voltage peaks that may occur when disconnecting the jump-start cables. The headlights must be turned off.
▸ With the engines running, remove the cables in reverse order of the way they were installed.
▸ Close the cover on the positive terminal.
▸ Immediately visit an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the vehicle battery checked.

### Information about jump-starting

If jump-starting does not start the vehicle, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**WARNING**

– Never connect the jump-start cable directly to your vehicle battery. Only use the connections in the engine compartment.
– Do not touch the non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps. The cable must also not come into contact with vehicle components that conduct electricity when it is connected to the positive vehicle battery terminal. This can cause a short circuit.
– The plugs on the battery cells must not be opened.
– Keep ignition sources (such as open flames, burning cigarettes, etc.) away from the vehicle batteries to reduce the risk of an explosion.
– Route the jump-start cables so they cannot get caught in the moving parts in the other vehicle's engine/motor compartment.

**Note**

Please note that the connecting process previously described for the jump-start cables is intended for when your vehicle is being jump-started.

## Towing

### Introduction

You should only perform the following steps if you have the necessary technical knowledge and tools.

Towing requires a certain amount of practice. Audi recommends contacting a towing company to have the vehicle transported.

You should only have your vehicle towed by another vehicle when disabled in exceptional circumstances. Inexperienced persons should not tow a vehicle. Follow the legal regulations that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle.

Turn off the following assist systems when loading the vehicle onto a vehicle carrier, train, ship, or other type of transportation, or when towing the vehicle:

– Active front assist
– Rear turn assist
– Emergency assist

This can prevent undesired intervention from the respective systems. ▸

### Notes on towing

– The maximum permitted towing speed is 30 mph (50 km/h).
– The maximum permitted towing distance is 30 miles (50 km).

### Additional information on towing with a tow truck

The vehicle must be transported with both axles on a tow truck or a special transporter. Contact a towing service. Do not wrap any chains or cables around the brake lines.

### Tow bar and towing cable

The vehicle can be towed with a tow bar or towing cable. Both persons involved should be familiar with the special considerations when towing, especially when using a towing cable.

Always make sure the traction force does not exceed the permitted level and there are no shock loading conditions. There is always the risk of the coupling becoming overloaded when driving off-road.

For the most safety and security, drive with a tow bar. You should use a towing cable only if a tow bar is not available. Use a towing cable made of synthetic elastic cable or a cable made of similar elastic material.

**WARNING**

– Towing highly increases the risk of an accident, for example from colliding with the towing vehicle.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, do not allow anyone to remain inside the vehicle when it is being transported by a tow truck or a special transporter.
– Never secure the tow bar or towing cable to parts of the vehicle's axles or suspension. These could be damaged, resulting in accidents and serious injuries.

**Note**

– If normal towing methods are not possible, for example if the transmission is faulty or if the towing distance is greater than 30 miles (50 km), then transport the vehicle on a special carrier.
– The vehicle must not be tow started for technical reasons.

## Towing

Read and follow the important information on ⇨ *page 278*.

### Preparations

▸ Only secure the towing cable or tow bar at the designated towing eyes.
▸ Make sure the towing cable is not twisted. Otherwise it could disconnect from the towing eye while towing.
▸ Turn on the emergency flashers in both vehicles. However, do not do this if it prohibited by law.

### Towing vehicle (front)

▸ Start driving only once the towing cable is taut.
▸ Press the brake pedal very carefully.
▸ Avoid sudden braking or driving maneuvers.

### Vehicle being towed (rear)

▸ Make sure the ignition is turned on so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that you can use the turn signals, the horn, and the windshield wipers if needed.
▸ The full functionality of the brake booster and power steering may not be available. You would then need to use more force to steer and brake the vehicle.
▸ Release the parking brake.
▸ Select the "N" position.
▸ Make sure the towing cable is always taut.

**WARNING**

– Never tow a vehicle using a tow bar or towing cable if the vehicle does not have electrical power.
– If the vehicle loses power while it is being towed, stop towing the vehicle immediately and consult an authorized Audi dealer or qualified repair facility.

8B1012721BF

## Installing the front towing eye

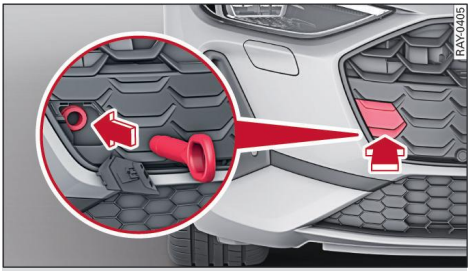



**Fig. 128** Front bumper: installing the towing eye (version 1)

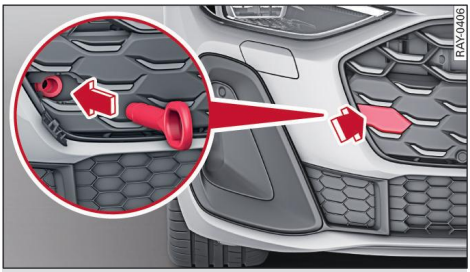



**Fig. 129** Front bumper: installing the towing eye (version 2)

Depending on the model, the shape of the cap can vary.

The threaded opening for the towing eye is located on the right side of the front bumper.

- Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit.
- Press the cap inward as shown or at the top (depending on the model) with quick, strong pressure. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
- Tighten the towing eye as far as it will go into the mount. Use a suitable object to tighten the towing eye completely and securely in the mount.
- After using, place the towing eye back in the vehicle tool kit.

**WARNING**

If the towing eye is not tightened all the way when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and result in an accident.

## Installing the rear towing eye

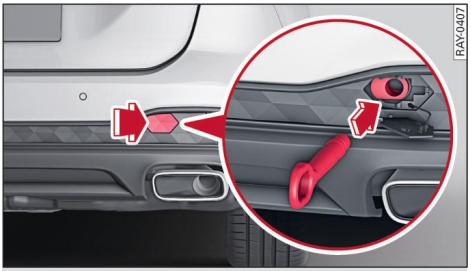



**Fig. 130** Rear bumper: installing the towing eye

Depending on the model, the shape of the cap can vary.

The threaded opening for the towing eye is located on the right rear of the bumper.

- Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit.
- Press the cap inward with brief, strong pressure. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
- Tighten the towing eye as far as it will go into the mount. Use a suitable object to tighten the towing eye completely and securely in the mount.
- After using, place the towing eye back in the vehicle tool kit.

**WARNING**

If the towing eye is not tightened all the way when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and result in an accident.

# Fuses and bulbs

## Replacing fuses

### Replacing fuses

**Action**

The fuses are located at various places in the vehicle, such as the engine compartment, the cockpit area, and the luggage compartment.

A fuse that has blown will have metal strips that have burned through. ▶

- Turn off the vehicle and all electrical equipment.
- Check the fuse assignment tables to see which fuse belongs to the affected equipment.
- Remove the appropriate cover.
- Remove the colored plastic bracket from the fuse panel, if present.
- Remove the clip from the corresponding fuse box.
- Remove the fuse using the clip.
- Replace the blown fuse only with a fuse that has the same amp rating.
- Reinstall the plastic bracket, if present.
- Install the cover.

### Fuse color identification

| Color | Current rating in amps |
|---|---|
| Black | 1 |
| Gray | 2 |
| Purple | 3 |
| Pink | 4 |
| Light brown | 5 |
| Brown | 7.5 |
| Red (narrow) | 10 |
| Light blue | 15 |
| Yellow | 20 |
| White or transparent | 25 |
| Light green | 30 |
| Teal | 35 |
| Orange | 40 |
| Red (wide) | 50 |

### Information about the tables

– The assignments for each fuse box are listed in tables.
– The tables only list fuses that you can change yourself. To have other fuses changed, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– The tables do not list fuse locations that are not used.
– Some the equipment shown is only installed in certain models or is supplied as an option.

**WARNING**

Do not repair fuses and never replace a blown fuse with one that has a different amp rating. This can cause damage to the electrical system and increases the risk of fire.

**Note**

If a new fuse burns out again shortly after you have installed it, have the electrical system checked as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

## Removing and installing the cover in the cockpit

**Fig. 131** Driver side cockpit: cover and clip on the back of the cover

The fuses and the clamp are located behind the rear side of the storage compartment.

## Fuse assignment in the cockpit

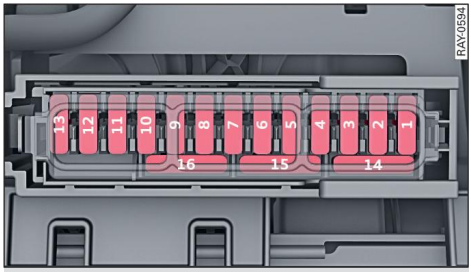



**Fig. 132** Driver side cockpit: fuse panel

The fuse assignment on right-hand drive vehicles is a mirror image of this. ▶

| No. | Equipment |
|---|---|
| 1 | Interior lighting |
| 2 | Chip card reader |
| 3 | Interior air sensors |
| 4 | Head-up display |
| 7 | Steering column lock |
| 8 | Front passenger display |
| 9 | Panoramic display |
| 12 | Steering column electronics |
| 15 | Steering column adjustment |
| 16 | Steering wheel heating |

## Removing and installing the cover in the footwell

**Fig. 133** Left footwell: cover

The fuses are located in the footwell on the left side of the

## Fuse assignment in the footwell

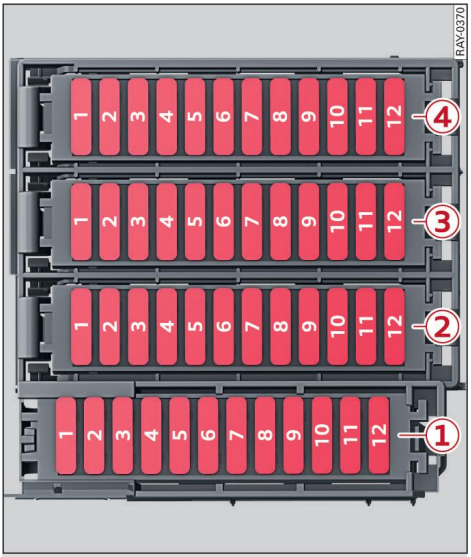



**Fig. 134** Left footwell: fuse panel

| Fuse panel ① (black) | |
|---|---|
| **No.** | **Equipment** |
| 1 | Thermal management, high-voltage battery coolant pump |
| 2 | Thermal management |
| 3 | High-voltage heating, thermomanagement |
| 4 | Thermal management sensors |
| 5 | Climate control system |
| 6 | Thermal management |
| 7 | Low-voltage power distribution control module, starter relay, electric drive system |
| 8 | Vehicle electrical system control module, diagnostic connection, rearview mirror, front seat electronics |
| 9 | Rear USB connections |

| Fuse panel ② (beige) | |
|---|---|
| **No.** | **Equipment** |
| 1 | Emergency call and communication control module |
| 2 | High-voltage battery |
| 3 | Airbag |

| Fuse panel ② (beige) | |
|---|---|
| 4 | Left headlight |
| 5 | Drive system and suspension control module |
| 6 | Driver assistance systems central control module |
| 7 | Right headlight |
| 8 | Windshield wipers |
| 9 | Radar sensors at the front corners of the vehicle |
| 10 | Diagnostic connection |
| 11 | Left front door control module |
| 12 | Left rear door control module |

| Fuse panel ③ (black) | |
|---|---|
| **No.** | **Equipment** |
| 1 | Automatic transmission |
| 2 | Climate control system, thermal management |
| 3 | Interior lighting, parking system |
| 4 | All wheel drive |
| 6 | Climate control system compressor |
| 7 | Instrument panel |
| 8 | Light/rain sensor |
| 9 | Keyless entry control module |
| 10 | Drive system control module |
| 11 | Driver assistance systems sensors |
| 12 | Passenger's side safety belt tensioner |

| Fuse panel ④ (white) | |
|---|---|
| **No.** | **Equipment** |
| 1 | Garage door opener |
| 2 | Starter relay, voltage converter |
| 3 | Auxiliary heating, Electronic Toll Collection System (ETC) |
| 4 | Headlight washer system, seat heating |
| 5 | Camera behind the windshield |
| 6 | Central locking system |
| 7 | Horn, anti-theft alarm system |
| 8 | Phone compartment with wireless charging function |
| 9 | Radiator fan |

| Fuse panel ④ (white) | |
|---|---|
| 10 | Driver's side safety belt tensioner |
| 11 | Exterior sound generator |
| 12 | Distance regulation control module |

## Removing and installing the cover in the luggage compartment

**Fig. 135** Left side of the luggage compartment: cover

The fuses are located in the luggage compartment on the left side.

## Fuse assignment in the luggage compartment

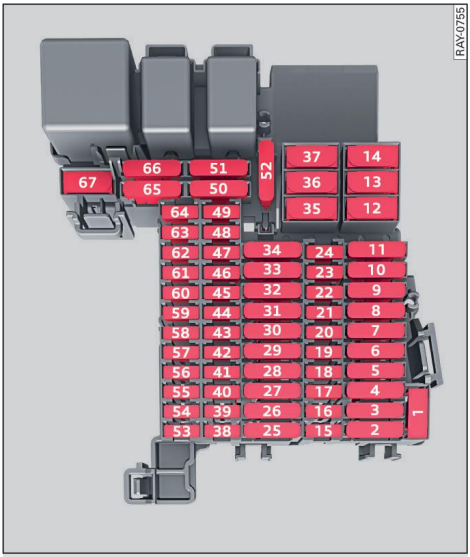



**Fig. 136** Left side of the luggage compartment: fuse panel ▶

Depending on the model, wires may be routed over the fuses. Carefully move the wires to the side to change the fuses below.

| No. | Equipment |
|---|---|
| 1 | Rear window defogger |
| 5 | Comfort system central control module |
| 6 | Left trailer hitch light |
| 7 | Right rear door control module |
| 8 | Comfort system central control module |
| 9 | High-voltage battery emergency cut-off point |
| 10 | Right trailer hitch light |
| 11 | Right front door control module |
| 12 | Anti-lock braking system (ABS), Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) |
| 17 | Radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle |
| 18 | Control module for driver's side doors |
| 19 | Control module for front passenger's side doors |
| 20 | Driver activity sensor |
| 21 | Distance regulation control module |
| 22 | Dash cam |
| 23 | Roof electronics |
| 24 | Vehicle electrical system control module |
| 25 | Rear climate control system control panel |
| 26 | Exhaust treatment, battery charge control panel |
| 27 | Anti-theft alarm system |
| 28 | All wheel drive clutch |
| 29 | Trailer hitch socket |
| 30 | Driver assistance systems control module |
| 32 | Infotainment system |
| 33 | Comfort system central control module |
| 34 | Comfort system central control module, sockets |
| 35 | Differential lock |
| 37 | Sound system |
| 39 | Interior lighting, interior accent lighting |
| 40 | Transmission selector |
| 41 | Luggage compartment lid control module |
| 42 | Access and start authorization control module |
| 43 | Area view camera control module |
| 44 | Tire pressure monitoring system |
| 45 | MMI control knob |
| 46 | Electric drive power and control electronics |
| 47 | Charging port door and charging socket control module |
| 51 | Engine components |
| 52 | USB connections |
| 55 | High-voltage battery |
| 57 | Drivetrain generator |
| 58 | Door control module |
| 59 | Data exchange and telematics control module |
| 60 | Center console switch module |
| 62 | 48 volt battery, electric drive system |
| 63 | Trailer hitch release |
| 65 | Rear seat heating |
| 66 | Sound system |

# Replacing bulbs

## Information about replacing bulbs

If your vehicle is equipped with maintenance-free headlights and tail lights, such as matrix LED headlights, you cannot change any bulbs. If a light source does not work, contact an authorized Authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

# Data privacy

## Privacy information

You can find information about data privacy online on the Audi website for your particular country or sales region, or in the vehicle MMI.

Select: ⊞ > **Legal notices**.

## Image recording

### Data privacy regarding surrounding area detection

Some assisted vehicle functions require detection and evaluation of the vehicle and the area around the vehicle. This is done by cameras installed permanently on the vehicle that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings (such as obstacles or guard rails). The live images from the cameras are transmitted to the applicable control module for processing. The control module analyzes the current camera image using image evaluation software. This image evaluation software detects anonymized technical measurements, such as distances to objects. The control module evaluates these technical measurements and makes it possible for the assist systems to control the vehicle as needed.

If certain system events are detected, for example by the active front assist system, the camera images of the vehicle's surroundings can be stored (not available in all countries). The length of the recording is limited to a very short time span. The stored data is encrypted and can only be read out by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

### Driver monitoring camera data protection

The function or equipment that is described was in development at the time this manual was published and may not be available in your vehicle.

The visual field of the driver monitoring camera captures the driver's head and evaluates the driver's capability to operate the vehicle. It cannot be directed toward other areas in the vehicle (such as the front passenger seat).

You can turn the driver monitoring camera on or off in the **Driver assistance** menu ⇨ *page 116*.

The camera images are not recorded or saved, but are immediately sent to the responsible control module in the vehicle for processing. The control module analyzes the current camera image using image evaluation software. The image evaluation software determines technical measurements of human facial characteristics (such as positioning of the head, nose, ears, or the direction of the eyes) and then evaluates the driver's capability to operate the vehicle, for example based on detected vitality, activity, and visual distraction. The image evaluation software may detect if the driver is unconscious or has fallen asleep. The technical measurements generated by the image evaluation software are abstract, collected anonymously, and are not assigned to an identity. Furthermore, they cannot be used to reconstruct the driver's facial features.

To allow driver monitoring to resume as soon as possible after a break in driving, technical measurements are saved in a small number of memory locations in the responsible control module. When the responsible control module's memory is full, older technical measurements will be overwritten by the newest ones.

## Data storage

### Information about vehicle control modules

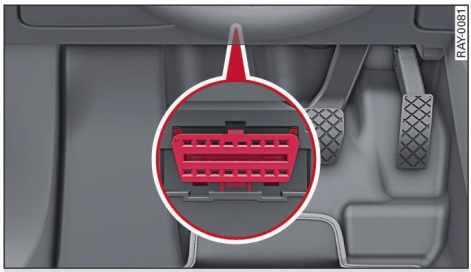



**Fig. 137** Driver's side footwell: connection port for the diagnostic system

#### Vehicle control modules

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic control modules for various vehicle systems such as the airbags. These vehicle control modules store data ▶

while driving normally that is required by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for diagnosis and repair purposes. In the process, data can be recorded and stored in the vehicle for a specific period of time. No noises, conversations, or images inside the vehicle will be recorded.

The data may include information such as the vehicle speed, the direction of travel, and information about the brake system, or also the behavior of the restraint system in the event of a collision. The stored data can be exported and downloaded with special devices, which must be connected directly to the vehicle.

### Diagnostic system

There is a diagnostic connector port in the driver's side footwell to read out the various control modules and the event data recorder. Data regarding the function and condition of the electronic control modules is stored in the event memory. Only have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility read out and clear data from the event memory.

**WARNING**

- Incorrect use of the diagnostic connector port can cause malfunctions, which can then result in accidents and serious injuries.
- Only allow an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to read out the data.

## Crash data recorder information

### Event Data Recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's system performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g. name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

### Assist system monitor

This vehicle is equipped with an Assist System Monitor (ASM). The ASM collects data that is not stored by the EDR in the event of an accident. The main task of the ASM is to make it possible to understand the role and the behavior of the assist systems in these accident situations. In addition to the data that the EDR stores, the ASM records data related to the assist systems starting several seconds before the accident or near-accident. The data collected by ASM depends on the equipment and may include the following information: status information of the assist systems (for example, if they are turned on or off, system events, etc.), control interventions (for example, by ESC, ABS, etc.), and assist system settings (such as speed settings).

Special devices and access to the vehicle or to the ASM are necessary in order to read the data from the ASM memory. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties such as law enforcement ▶

authorities can also read and analyze the stored data if they have access to the vehicle or to the ASM.

### Data usage

Audi can read out the information stored in the data memories or similar data, or give this information to third parties, especially in the following situations:

– If the vehicle owner or lessee agrees
– If there is an official request from the police
– If a court or authorities request it

If legally permitted, Audi can also use the data for analysis of vehicle operation and safety performance or provide this data to third parties for research purposes.

## Data memory for automated driving

The function or equipment that is described was in development at the time this manual was published and may not be available in your vehicle.

Data is stored in a memory in the vehicle when using certain driving and parking functions. This data is encrypted and is continuously overwritten by more current data after a few seconds. The data is erased when the vehicle is turned off.

In certain situations, such as if an airbag has deployed or a parking process has been ended, technical data about this may be stored in the data memory for automated driving. The data memory is a read-only memory that has a limited amount of storage space. If the storage space is full, the oldest data will be overwritten with the newest data.

### Exporting data

You can read out the data memory for automated driving and export this data to a USB stick. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary, the functions listed must not be active, and the vehicle must be on. A USB stick must be connected to the USB input.

▸ Select: ⊞ > **Vehicle** > **More** > **Data management** > **Export automated driving data**.

▸ Follow the instructions in the MMI.

The export will be canceled if you switch menus, for example.

### Recorded data

The following data is recorded with encryption, depending on the country:

– Interactions from the driver (such as pressing the brake pedal)
– Vehicle dynamics (such as speed)
– System status
– Control requests
– Relevant measurements for detection of the surrounding area
– Image data from the surround view cameras
– System status, timestamp, and vehicle location when deactivating/activating the respective functions

You can find additional information in the MMI:

– Select: ⊞ > **Vehicle** > **More** > **Data management** > **Privacy policy**.

### Additional information

– The data is processed and stored locally in the vehicle.
– It is not automatically transmitted to Audi or other third parties, for example through the cloud. The owner or driver is responsible for the data.
– For additional information and the evaluation of data, please contact Audi Customer Care.

# Privacy settings

## Introduction

Data is transmitted from the vehicle to Audi when using online services. Data can be transmitted to service providers, provided this is necessary for the respective online service. Only data that is required in order to provide online services will be transmitted.

Online services may process and transmit personal and location data, as well as allow remote access to the vehicle.

You can manage settings for online services that are related to privacy in the privacy settings. ▶

Services that are deactivated in the vehicle cannot be activated remotely.

## Managing and checking privacy settings in the vehicle

Requirement: the vehicle is turned on.

- To adjust settings in the privacy menu, select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Privacy settings**.
- To adjust settings for vehicle-related online services, select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Privacy settings** > **Vehicle-related online services**.
- To adjust vehicle-related online services individually, select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Privacy settings** > **Vehicle-related online services** > **Services overview**.
- To adjust Infotainment services individually, select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Privacy settings** > **Vehicle-related online services** > **Services overview** > **Installed infotainment services**. Press on the corresponding button to display all apps.
- To open detailed information, press ⓘ or ⊡ in the MMI.

Privacy settings are loaded depending on the user who is logged in. The driver is always responsible for managing the privacy settings.

## Effects of privacy settings

Your vehicle has the following types of online services: vehicle-related online services and Infotainment services. These online services can transmit data from the vehicle to Audi or to service providers, provided this is necessary for the respective online service.

If the **Mobile data** function is turned off, the vehicle-related online services will be deactivated. However, for Infotainment services, only the transmission of data from the vehicle will be deactivated while the Infotainment services themselves will remain active. This has the following results:

– Data is still processed locally in your vehicle.
– Local data stored offline can be sent from the vehicle after turning on the **Mobile data** function.

If you would like to prevent this from happening, you have the following options:

– You can adjust settings for individual Infotainment services and deactivate them.
– You can select a local user.

### Additional effects of the mobile data function

If the **Mobile data** function is turned off in the privacy settings, your vehicle will not receive any certificates and security updates for establishing a secure connection, depending on the vehicle equipment. In order to receive security updates and certificates, turn on the function at least once for a minimum of two minutes every twelve months. Make sure that your vehicle is connected to the Internet.

### Effects on specific online services

Changes to the privacy settings do not affect certain online services, or only affect them to a limited extent. These online services may be grayed out depending on the vehicle or highlighted with the 🔒 symbol.

Select: ⊞ > **Settings** > **Privacy settings** > **Vehicle-related online services** > **Additional information**.

### Effects on specific data interfaces

Changes to the privacy settings do not affect all data interfaces.

The following wireless interfaces, if equipped, are not affected by changes to the privacy settings: Bluetooth, Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE), Wi-Fi, Near Field Communication (NFC), Electronic Toll Collect (ETC), Integrated Toll Module (ITM), if equipped.

The following wired data transmissions, if equipped, are not affected by changes to the privacy settings: USB, charging communication (high-voltage system), diagnostic system, or On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD).

**Note**

You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection, and protection against loss of data on mobile ▶

devices that are used, for example, to access the Internet through the vehicle hotspot.

## Information about data collection

Depending on the country, Audi may be able to access the vehicle and collect data, for example for the following reasons:
– Data collection for research and development
– Data collection for statistics, analytics, and reporting
– Data collection for personalized evaluations

For example, various technical function data, environmental data, driving data, and usage data will be collected for a specific purpose and forwarded to Audi. The data will be sent from the vehicle at the time the data is collected.

You can find additional information about data collection in the MMI. Select: ⊞ > **Legal notices**.

If you would like to change the data collection settings, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information. Depending on the country and equipment, you may be able to change data collection in your vehicle's privacy settings.

# Accessories and technical changes

## Warranty

Your vehicle is covered by various warranties:

– New Vehicle Limited Warranty
– Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation
– Applies to: USA models: Emissions Control System Warranties: *Federal Emissions Control System Defect Warranty, Federal Emissions Performance Warranty*
– Applies to: Canada models: Emissions Warranties: *Emissions Control System Defect Warranty, Emissions Performance Warranty*
– Applies to: USA models: Kansas Safety Belt Limited Warranty
– Applies to: USA models: California-specific Warranties

You can find detailed information in your Warranty & Maintenance Booklet, in the California Warranties Booklet, or on the applicable website:
– Applies to: USA: maintenance.audiusa.com
– Applies to: Canada: www.audimaintenance.ca or www.audimaintenance.ca/#/search/fr

## Audi Literature Shop

Service information is made available as soon as possible after a model is introduced and can be ordered in the Audi Literature Shop: http://literature.audiusa.com

## Driving in other countries

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require motor vehicles to comply with emissions regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles that were produced for the U.S. and Canadian markets are different from vehicles produced for other countries.

If you plan to operate your vehicle outside of the United States or Canada, it is possible that:

– Fuel may have a significantly lower octane rating. Unsuitable fuels can cause engine damage.
– Proper maintenance and repair work may not be possible because special service equipment, tools, or measuring devices needed for your vehicle may not be available.
– Replacement parts may not always be available.
– Navigation systems for vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries.

**Note**

Audi is not liable for damage to the vehicle resulting from these country-specific differences.

8B1012721BF

# Maintenance, repairs, and technical modifications

## Introduction

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 224, Safety information about the engine compartment* and ⇨ *page 275, Raising the vehicle*.

Your vehicle was designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. Some regular maintenance is required to help ensure that your vehicle runs in a safe, economical, and reliable manner. Please refer to your Warranty & Maintenance Booklet for more detailed information about vehicle maintenance.

Due to the increasing complexity of technology in these vehicles, as well as the safety and environmental standards that apply, you can only perform a very limited amount of repairs and modifications to the vehicle yourself.

Proof of maintenance work may be required to submit a claim within the warranty period.

When operating the vehicle under more extreme operating conditions, for example when outside temperatures are very low or in very dusty environments, certain maintenance should be performed between the specified intervals.

## Information about maintenance, repairs, and technical modifications

Observe the safety information ⇨ *page 224, Safety information about the engine compartment* and ⇨ *page 275, Raising the vehicle*.

### Maintenance and repairs

Maintenance and repair work generally requires special tools, measuring devices, and other equipment that is available to trained vehicle technicians in order to help ensure that your vehicle and all of its systems operate correctly, reliably, and safely. Performing work on the vehicle incorrectly can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and may void one or more of your vehicle's warranties.

We recommend that you have your vehicle serviced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and that Audi Genuine Parts and Audi Genuine Accessories are used. This helps to ensure that your vehicle's functionality, performance, and safety are not impaired.

### Risks in the event of technical changes

Interference with electronic components, their software, the wiring, and data transfer may cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected, such malfunctions can also impair systems that are not directly involved. This means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and increased wear of vehicle components.

### Additional information about technical changes

Some convenience functions, such as the convenience turn signal function, individual door opening function, and displays, can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If functions are reprogrammed, the information and descriptions about these functions in this Owner's Manual may no longer apply to the changed functions. Audi recommends that an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility perform and verify any reprogramming procedures.

### Additional information about work according to Audi factory specifications

Because of your vehicle's aluminum body design, all service and repair procedures affecting the body should be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, who will perform the work according to Audi factory specifications. Only Audi Genuine Parts are used when Audi experts perform repair or service procedures. Failure to use Audi Genuine Parts or Audi Genuine Accessories or performing repairs incorrectly may result in severe vehicle damage, such as corrosion.

**WARNING**

– There is a risk of an accident if maintenance, repairs, technical modifications, or paint work are not performed correctly. The ▶

functionality of the airbags, the driver assistance systems, and the vehicle may be impaired. Having the vehicle serviced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility is recommended.
– There is the risk of an accident if work on the vehicle is performed incorrectly. Serious injuries may result. Having the vehicle serviced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility is recommended.
– Please refer to the safety information about the engine/motor compartment provided in ⇨ *page 224*.

**Note**

– Maintenance work, repairs, technical modifications to the vehicle (such as installing additional equipment), or paint work that is not performed correctly can cause vehicle damage.
– The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions if the recommended intended use of the vehicle and maintenance measures listed in the Audi Owner's Manual and the Warranty & Maintenance Booklet were not followed.
– If emergency repairs must be performed, take your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible.
– Audi is not liable for damage to the vehicle resulting from failure to comply with these guidelines.

**For the sake of the environment**

– Regular maintenance can help protect the environment.
– Technical modifications to the vehicle may have a negative affect on energy use.

# Accessories and replacement parts

## Introduction

Consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before purchasing accessories or replacement parts.

Audi recommends using Audi Genuine Parts and Audi Genuine Accessories. Audi does not evaluate the reliability and suitability of products that are not Audi Genuine Parts or endorse them, even if the product is approved by a certified testing agency or government agency.

Have all work performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility. Audi recommends having all work performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

**WARNING**

– Installing unapproved accessories or incorrect replacement parts can cause vehicle damage and can increase the risk of an accident.
– Never attach accessories, such as phone holders or cup holders, to the airbag covers or within the airbag deployment zone, because this increases the risk of injury if the airbag deploys.
– On vehicles that have factory-installed license plate brackets on the front of the vehicle, the brackets may only be replaced with ones that are the same size and made of the same material. Do not install any license plate brackets on the front of vehicles that do not have factory-installed brackets. Otherwise, the function of the system could be impaired.

## Radio communication equipment

A correctly-installed exterior antenna is required for operating radio equipment in the vehicle. Otherwise, the increased electromagnetic waves can cause malfunctions in the vehicle. Observe the regulations in the country where the vehicle is being operated and the instructions from the radio equipment manufacturer.

An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can inform you about installation options and radio communications equipment.

# Technical data

## Identification data

### Vehicle Identification Number

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is located in the following areas:

– Select: ⊞ > **Vehicle** > **More** > **Keys and VIN**.
– At the front behind the windshield
– Stamped into the engine compartment on the right side

### Information about technical data

The values may vary based on special equipment as well as market-specific equipment and measuring methods. The specifications in the vehicle documentation therefore always take priority.

Any technical data that is missing was not available at the time of publication.

## Vehicle data

### Dimensions

| | Length (in (mm)) | Width (in (mm)) | Width across the mirrors (in (mm)) | Height at curb weight (in (mm)) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| A5 sedan | 190.1 (4,829) – 190.3 (4,835) | 73.2 (1,860) | 82.6 (2,099) | 56.2 (1,427) – 57.3 (1,456) |
| S5 sedan | 190.3 (4,835) | 73.2 (1,860) | 82.6 (2,099) | 56.4 (1,433) – 56.6 (1,436) |

### Capacities

| | Approximate capacities |
|---|---|
| Fuel tank[a)] | 14.8 gal (56 L) |
| Windshield/headlamp washer system | 5.0 qt (4.7 L) |

a) Reserve fuel in the fuel tank reduces the capacity when fueling.

### Weights

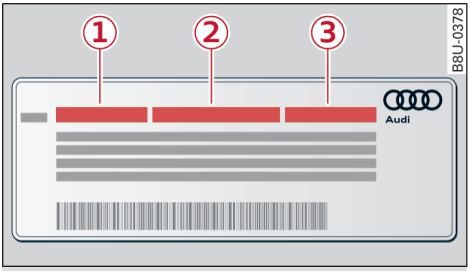



**Fig. 138** Safety certificate

#### Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The maximum permitted total weight ① of the vehicle is listed on the safety certificate on the side area of the door or on the driver's door pillar.

#### Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)

The maximum permitted load on the front axle ② or the rear axle ③ is listed on the safety certificate on the side area of the door or on the driver's door pillar.

#### Load

The maximum permitted load is listed on the tire pressure label on the driver's door pillar. ▶

### Roof load

The maximum permissible roof load is 198 lbs (90 kg)

# Other information

## Information about brands and licenses

This manual does not contain any symbols, such as ® or ™, to identify trademarks or registered trademarks. However, the absence of these symbols does not constitute a waiver of any rights associated with these names.

Apple, iPhone, AirPlay and Apple CarPlay are brands of Apple Inc.

Other product and manufacturer names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

## Disposal instructions

### Introduction

Follow the local legal regulations for disposing of electrical/electronic devices and of the vehicle.

### Disposing of batteries

Handling batteries that contain lithium (Li) requires special care. For example, they must not be overheated or damaged. Battery components can be harmful to human and animal health and can accumulate in the environment. To reduce this risk, follow the legal regulations for disposal of batteries that are applicable in your country.

### Disposing of the vehicle

Certain components in your vehicle such as undeployed airbag modules, pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain Perchlorate Material – special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

## Customer information for specific countries

### Declaration of compliance for telecommunications equipment and electronic systems

Your vehicle may be equipped with various radio systems and electronic systems, depending on vehicle equipment. The manufacturer is not liable for radio malfunctions that are caused by unauthorized changes to the equipment.

#### FCC Part 15.19

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### FCC Part 15.21

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

#### RSS-Gen

This device contains licence-exempt transmitter(s)/receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference; and

(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

#### FCC Part 95M

This device complies with Part 95M of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. ▶

This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm (8 inches) between the radiator and your body.

**RSS 102**

Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information: This equipment complies with FCC and ISED radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm (8 inches) between the radiator and your body. This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

**Additional declarations of compliance**

Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information: This equipment complies with FCC and ISED radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

**Integrated Toll Module – FCC (USA) and ISED (Canada)**

This device complies with FCC rules part 90 and Innovation, Science, and Economic Development Canada RSS–137. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation. WARNING: The transmitter has been tested and complies with FCC and ISED rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.

This equipment complies with FCC and ISED radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. End Users must follow the specific operating instructions for satisfying RF exposure compliance. This transmitter must be at least 20 cm (8 inches) from the user and must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

**Tips**

Additional information, updates, and supplements about the radio systems or product names are based on the vehicle equipment and country can be found on the following website: www.audi.com/generalinfo

## Reporting Safety Defects

### Applicable to U.S.A.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying

Audi of America, Inc.
2200 Ferdinand Porsche Drive
Herndon, VA 20171

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1–888–327–4236 (TTY: 1– ▶

888–275–9171); go to http://www.safercar.gov;

or write to:

Administrator NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Ave.,
S.E. West Building
Washington, DC
20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

## Applicable to Canada

If you live in Canada and you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls. You should also notify Audi Canada.

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may either call Transport Canada toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-800-333-0510 or
Tel.: 1-819-994-3328 (Ottawa region and from other countries)
TTY for hearing impaired:
1-888-675-6863

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Transport Canada
Motor Vehicle Safety Investigations Laboratory
80 Noel Street
Gatineau, QC
J8Z 0A1

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

English:
http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/menu.htm

French:
http://www.tc.gc.ca/fra/securiteautomobile/menu.htm

# A


ABS
*refer to* Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) . . 105
Accelerator pedal . . . . . 94
Accessories . . . . . 291
Active combination filter . . . . . 83
Active front assist . . . . . 144
Messages . . . . . 147
Adaptive cruise assist . . . . . 141
Cleaning the sensors . . . . . 267
Hands-free driving . . . . . 130
*also refer to* Adaptive cruise control . . . . . 141
*also refer to* Lane center guidance . . 127, 141
Adaptive cruise assist plus
*refer to* Adaptive cruise assist . . . . . 141
Adaptive cruise control . . . . . 133
Predictive speed adjustment . . . . . 139, 140
Adaptive light . . . . . 51
Adjusting air distribution . . . . . 85
Adjusting brightness . . . . . 54
Adjusting temperature . . . . . 84
Adjusting the air vents . . . . . 86
Adjusting the lane center guidance . . . . . 127
Adjusting volume . . . . . 23
Adjusting volume (announcements) . . . . . 216
Adjusting without confirmation (adjustment to speed limits) . . . . . 140
Airbag system . . . . . 69
Deactivating the front passenger's airbag . . 71
Air pressure
Tires . . . . . 255
All-season tires
*refer to* All-weather tires . . . . . 260
All-weather lights . . . . . 49
All-weather tires . . . . . 260
All wheel drive
*refer to* quattro . . . . . 104
Alternative routes . . . . . 200
Android Auto
*refer to* Smartphone interface . . . . . 214
Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) . . . . . 106
Anti-slip regulation . . . . . 106
Anti-theft wheel bolts . . . . . 275
Apple CarPlay
*refer to* Smartphone interface . . . . . 214
App overview . . . . . 21
Apps . . . . . 194
Legal information . . . . . 219
Software information . . . . . 219
App store . . . . . 194
Aspect ratio
*refer to* Picture format . . . . . 209
Audi assistant . . . . . 26
Activation options . . . . . 26
Help . . . . . 26
Audi assistant menu . . . . . 27
Audi connect
Key . . . . . 31
Key card . . . . . 31, 40, 42
*also refer to* connect . . . . . 191
Audi connect emergency call & service . . . . . 195
Audi connect navigation & Infotainment (plus) . . . . . 193
Audi connect Remote & Control . . . . . 193
Audi drive select . . . . . 102
AUTO
Automatic headlights . . . . . 49
Climate control system . . . . . 84
Automatic climate control system
*refer to* Climate control system . . . . . 83
Automatic luggage compartment lid . . . . . 45
Automatic music recognition . . . . . 204
Automatic route adjustment . . . . . 200
Automatic wiper/washer system . . . . . 57
Average consumption . . . . . 18
Avoiding highways . . . . . 200
Avoiding toll roads . . . . . 200


# B


Band
*refer to* Frequency band . . . . . 203
Battery
12 volt vehicle battery . . . . . 239
Charging (12 volt vehicle battery) . . . . . 242
Information . . . . . 240
Safety information . . . . . 239
Winter operation (12 volt vehicle battery) . 240
Battery (mobile device)
Charging via USB . . . . . 79
Wireless charging . . . . . 189

Better route
*refer to* Automatic route adjustment . . . . . 200
Blower . . . . . 84
Bluetooth . . . . . 216
Audio player . . . . . 208
Connecting a device . . . . . 216
Deleting a device . . . . . 217
Device overview . . . . . 216
Disconnecting a device . . . . . 217
Setting device usage . . . . . 217
Setting preferred devices . . . . . 217
Brake fluid . . . . . 237
Checking the brake fluid level . . . . . 237
Having the brake fluid changed . . . . . 237
Messages . . . . . 238
Brakes . . . . . 97
Overheating . . . . . 101
Braking
Brake fluid . . . . . 237
Emergency braking function . . . . . 100
New brake pads . . . . . 97
Brands . . . . . 293
Breaking in
New brake pads . . . . . 97
New tires . . . . . 252
Business card . . . . . 188

# C

California Proposition 65 Warning . . . . . 226
Battery specific . . . . . 240
Call
Answering and ending . . . . . 187
Declining with a text message . . . . . 187
Putting on hold . . . . . 187
Showing history . . . . . 186
Starting . . . . . 186
Swapping . . . . . 187
Cameras
Coverage areas . . . . . 114
Locations . . . . . 115
Cameras behind the windshield . . . . . 114
Capacities . . . . . 292
Cargo floor . . . . . 82
Car key . . . . . 40
Car wash . . . . . 266
Catalytic converter . . . . . 223
Central locking . . . . . 30
Adjusting . . . . . 32
Auto Lock . . . . . 32
Convenience closing . . . . . 47
Introduction . . . . . 31
Luggage compartment lid . . . . . 45
Messages . . . . . 33
Remote control key . . . . . 42
Safety information . . . . . 30
Sensors . . . . . 42
Central locking menu . . . . . 32
Central locking switch . . . . . 33
Certification . . . . . 293
Changing the track or station . . . . . 23
Checking the software version . . . . . 217
Child restraint systems . . . . . 73
Securing to the top tether anchor . . . . . 77
Securing with a safety belt . . . . . 76
Securing with LATCH . . . . . 75
Child safety lock
Messages . . . . . 33
Power windows . . . . . 34
Rear doors . . . . . 34
Cleaning . . . . . 265
Cleaning artificial leather . . . . . 269
Cleaning carbon components . . . . . 268, 270
Cleaning controls . . . . . 269
Cleaning decorative parts and trim . . . 267, 269
Cleaning exhaust tail pipes . . . . . 267
Cleaning microfiber . . . . . 269
Cleaning plastic parts . . . . . 269
Cleaning rubber seals . . . . . 267
Cleaning textiles . . . . . 269
Climate control system . . . . . 83
Displays . . . . . 83
Closing
Automatic luggage compartment lid . . . . . 45
Convenience closing . . . . . 47
Hood . . . . . 226
Luggage compartment lid . . . . . 45
Windows . . . . . 47
Cockpit dimming . . . . . 54
Cockpit (overview) . . . . . 9
Coming home/Leaving home
*refer to* Entry and exit lighting . . . . . 52
Compartments . . . . . 78

8B1012721BF

Compass in the mirror . . . . . 58
Compliance . . . . . 293
Compressor . . . . . 272
Conference call . . . . . 187
connect . . . . . 191
  Audi incident assistance . . . . . 196
  Data plans . . . . . 192
  Emergency call . . . . . 195
  Infotainment services . . . . . 193
  Online roadside assistance . . . . . 196
  Vehicle control services . . . . . 193
Connection manager . . . . . 216
  *also refer to* Bluetooth . . . . . 216
Connection manager menu . . . . . 216
Connections
  *refer to* Media . . . . . 207, 208
Connect key
  *refer to* Digital key . . . . . 40
Consumer information . . . . . 289
Consumption . . . . . 18
  Reducing . . . . . 95
Contact list . . . . . 187
  Downloading contacts . . . . . 187
  Searching for contacts . . . . . 186
  Sort order . . . . . 187
Controller
  *refer to* Game controller . . . . . 213
Convenience key . . . . . 31
  Convenience closing . . . . . 47
  *also refer to* Vehicle key . . . . . 40
Convenience opening and closing
  Windows . . . . . 47
Coolant additive . . . . . 233
Cool feet . . . . . 86
Cooling mode
  A/C cooling mode . . . . . 84
  Maximum cooling mode . . . . . 84
Cooling system
  Adding coolant . . . . . 235
  Checking coolant level . . . . . 234
  Coolant . . . . . 233
  Coolant additive . . . . . 233, 235
  Coolant level . . . . . 234
Cornering light . . . . . 51
Cup holder . . . . . 80
Curb warning . . . . . 165
  Messages . . . . . 166
Customer information . . . . . 244
Customer measures . . . . . 244

# D

Damper control . . . . . 103
Dash cam . . . . . 210
  Legal information . . . . . 219
Data . . . . . 192
Data module
  Serial number (IMEI) . . . . . 218
Data plans . . . . . 192
Data privacy . . . . . 288
Daytime running lights . . . . . 49
Deactivating the front passenger's airbag . . . 71
Declaration of compliance . . . . . 293
Destination
  Adding . . . . . 200
  Deleting . . . . . 200
  Displaying destination information . . . . . 200
  Displaying details . . . . . 199
  Replacing . . . . . 200
Detection of persons in the rear of the vehicle
  *refer to* Passenger occupant detection system . . . . . 35
Determining correct load limit . . . . . 259
Diagnostic system . . . . . 286
Digital compass . . . . . 58
Digital key
  Deleting . . . . . 41
  Displaying . . . . . 41
  Key . . . . . 40
  Key card . . . . . 42
  Removing the primary device . . . . . 41
  Setting up . . . . . 41
  Sharing . . . . . 41
  Turning on/off . . . . . 41
Digital key card . . . . . 42
Digital key menu . . . . . 41
Digital key service card . . . . . 42
Dimensions . . . . . 292
Dimming the exterior mirrors . . . . . 55
Dimming the rearview mirror . . . . . 55
Directory
  *refer to* Contact list . . . . . 187
Display
  Cleaning . . . . . 269

Disposal . . . . . 290
Distance warning . . . . . 118
Distraction warning . . . . . 123
Displays . . . . . 123
Doors
Child safety lock . . . . . 34
Door contact switch . . . . . 53
Driver assistance camera
*refer to* Cameras behind the windshield . . 114
Driver assistance menu . . . . . 116
Driver assistance systems
Audi drive select . . . . . 103
Detection of the surrounding area . . . . . 114
Driver assistance menu . . . . . 116
General driver assistance systems settings . 116
General messages . . . . . 116
Safety information . . . . . 113
System limitations . . . . . 113
System overview . . . . . 111
Driver assistance systems settings that reset automatically . . . . . 116
Driver monitoring camera . . . . . 285
Drives
*refer to* Media . . . . . 207, 208
Drive select
*refer to* Audi drive select . . . . . 102
Drive system . . . . . 89, 97
Audi drive select . . . . . 103
Emergency off . . . . . 89
Turning on or off . . . . . 89
Driving down hills . . . . . 101
Driving program . . . . . 93, 137
Driving through water . . . . . 102
Driving tips
Driving through water . . . . . 102
Efficient driving . . . . . 95
Uphill and downhill . . . . . 101
Driving up hills . . . . . 101
DTMF
*refer to* Sending tone sequences . . . . . 186
Dust filter
*refer to* Active combination filter . . . . . 83

# E

Easy entry . . . . . 62
Editing a message template . . . . . 186
EDR
*refer to* Event Data Recorder (EDR) . . . . . 286
Efficiency assist
Predictive speed adjustment . . . . . 139, 140
*also refer to* Predictive efficiency messag-es . . . . . 149
Electrical system . . . . . 238
Messages . . . . . 238
Electromechanical parking brake . . . . . 99
Electronic differential lock . . . . . 106
Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) . . . . . 105
Embedded SIM card . . . . . 192
Emergency assist . . . . . 142
Emergency assistance . . . . . 272
Emergency braking function . . . . . 100
Emergency call . . . . . 195
Emergency flashers . . . . . 52
Emergency mode . . . . . 95
Emissions control system . . . . . 223
Energy
Reducing consumption . . . . . 95
Energy management . . . . . 90
Energy recovery . . . . . 90
Engine
Breaking in . . . . . 93
Coolant . . . . . 233
Emergency off . . . . . 89
Start/Stop system . . . . . 96
Starting or stopping . . . . . 89
Engine braking effect
*refer to* Recuperation . . . . . 90
Engine compartment . . . . . 224, 233
Opening and closing the hood . . . . . 226
Overview . . . . . 228
Safety information . . . . . 224, 233
Engine oil
Adding . . . . . 228
Changing . . . . . 231
Checking oil level . . . . . 228
Checking the engine oil level in the MMI . . 229
Consumption . . . . . 228
Indicator light . . . . . 232
Replacement intervals . . . . . 243
Temperature indicator . . . . . 18
Type . . . . . 228
Engine stop
*refer to* Start/Stop system . . . . . 96

Entry and exit lighting . . . . . 52
Entry assistance . . . . . 61
*also refer to* Exit assistance . . . . . 61
Environment
Unleaded gasoline . . . . . 220
ESC
Limiting . . . . . 106
Turning off . . . . . 106
eSIM
*refer to* Embedded SIM card . . . . . 192
Event Data Recorder (EDR) . . . . . 286
Exit assistance . . . . . 61
Exit warning . . . . . 121
Experiences . . . . . 212
Exterior antenna
*refer to* Mobile communications coupling antenna . . . . . 189
Exterior lighting . . . . . 49
Exterior mirrors . . . . . 54
Folding settings . . . . . 32
External voice operation . . . . . 27

# F

Fatigue warning . . . . . 122
Displays . . . . . 122
Federal Communications Commission (FCC) . 293
File formats (media sources) . . . . . 209
Floor mats . . . . . 60
Fog (windows) . . . . . 85
Folding the rear seats forward and back . 81, 82
For the sake of the environment
Disposing of engine oil . . . . . 231
Fueling . . . . . 221
Leaks . . . . . 226
Forward gear
*refer to* Transmission selector position . . . . 91
Freeze protection
Coolant . . . . . 233
Windshield washer system . . . . . 243
Frequency band . . . . . 203
*also refer to* Frequency band . . . . . 203
Fresh air . . . . . 86
Front center armrest . . . . . 62
Front passenger display
*refer to* MMI front passenger display . . . . . 22
Front passenger's seat adjustment
Rear . . . . . 61
Front wiper blades
Cleaning . . . . . 57
Replacing . . . . . 57
Fuel . . . . . 220
Additives . . . . . 220
Capacities . . . . . 292
Gasoline . . . . . 220
Gasoline mixture . . . . . 220
Reducing consumption . . . . . 95
Fueling
Capacities . . . . . 292
Fuel filler door . . . . . 221
Functions on Demand . . . . . 194
Functions that require a license
*refer to* Store . . . . . 194
Fuse assignment
Cockpit . . . . . 281
Footwell . . . . . 282
Luggage compartment . . . . . 283

# G

Game controller . . . . . 213
Connecting . . . . . 213
Garage door opener . . . . . 47
Garment hooks . . . . . 78
Gasoline . . . . . 220
Additives . . . . . 220
Gas pedal
*refer to* Accelerator pedal . . . . . 94
GAWR
*refer to* Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) . 292
Gesture control . . . . . 19
Context menu . . . . . 19
Moving items . . . . . 19, 21
Opening or closing a hidden view . . . . . 19
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . . 247
Glove compartment . . . . . 78, 79
Goodbye screen . . . . . 21
Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) . . . . . 292
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) . . . . . 292
Ground clearance . . . . . 103
GVWR
*refer to* Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) . . . . . 292

# H


Hands-free system
*refer to* Phone . . . . . 185
Hazard information . . . . . 151
HD Radio . . . . . 204
Head-up display
Adjusting . . . . . 25
Adjusting the brightness . . . . . 54
Operating . . . . . 25
Turning on or off . . . . . 25
Headlamp washer system
Capacities . . . . . 292
Headlight range control . . . . . 51
Headlights
Cleaning . . . . . 267
Headlight range control . . . . . 51
Washer system . . . . . 57
Washer system (filling washer fluid) . . . . . 243
Head restraints
Adjusting . . . . . 64, 65
Removing and installing . . . . . 65
Heated exterior mirror . . . . . 85
Heated rear window . . . . . 85
Heated steering wheel . . . . . 85
Heat feet . . . . . 86
Heating . . . . . 83
High beam headlights
High beam assistant . . . . . 51
Highway lights . . . . . 51
HOLD . . . . . 100
Hold function . . . . . 100
Home address . . . . . 197
HomeLink
*refer to* Garage door opener . . . . . 47
Hood . . . . . 226
Messages . . . . . 227
Horn . . . . . 9
Hybrid radio
*refer to* Online station tracking . . . . . 204


# I


Idle
*refer to* Transmission selector position . . . . 91
Ignition
Turning on or off . . . . . 88
Imbalance (wheels) . . . . . 253
Indicator lights . . . . . 10
Infotainment services . . . . . 288
Infotainment system
*refer to* Dash cam . . . . . 210
Inspection interval
*refer to* Service interval display . . . . . 243
Installation history . . . . . 194
Instrument cluster . . . . . 17
Audi drive select . . . . . 103
Display areas . . . . . 17
Legal information . . . . . 219
Malfunction . . . . . 17
Operating . . . . . 17
Resetting the odometer . . . . . 18
Resetting values/memory . . . . . 17
Service interval display . . . . . 243
Switching the view . . . . . 17
Instrument illumination . . . . . 54
Integrated Toll Module . . . . . 156
Interior accent lighting . . . . . 54
Functional interior accent lighting . . . . . 54
Interior entertainment . . . . . 212
Interior lighting . . . . . 53
Interior monitoring menu . . . . . 34
Intermittent mode (windshield wipers) . . . . . 57
Internal combustion engine . . . . . 90
International travel . . . . . 192
Introduction
Central locking . . . . . 31


# J


Jump-starting . . . . . 276


# K


Key . . . . . 31, 40
Convenience opening and closing . . . . . 47
Deactivating unlocking with the convenience key . . . . . 32
Digital key . . . . . 40
Digital key card . . . . . 40
Key card . . . . . 42
Key replacement . . . . . 40
Mechanical key . . . . . 40
Not detected . . . . . 88
PANIC button . . . . . 40


8B1012721BF

Replacing the battery . . . . . 40
Unlocking and locking automatically . . . . . 43
Key card . . . . . 42
*also refer to* Audi connect . . . . . 42
Key switch (front passenger's airbag) . . . . . 71
Key user . . . . . 30
Kick-down . . . . . 94


# L


Lane assist
*refer to* Lane center guidance . . . . . 127, 141
*refer to* Lane departure warning . . . . 124, 127
Lane center guidance . . . . . 127
Lane center guidance behavior . . . . . 127
Lane center guidance button . . . . . 124, 127
*also refer to* Lane departure warning . 124, 127
Lane change
Assisted . . . . . 129
Lane change assist . . . . . 129
Lane departure warning . . . . . 124
Cleaning the camera area . . . . . 267
Lap counter
*refer to* Lap timer . . . . . 155
Lap timer
Introduction . . . . . 155
Lap statistics . . . . . 156
Operating . . . . . 155
Last destinations . . . . . 197
LATCH (securing child restraint systems) . . . . 75
Launch control . . . . . 94
Leather care and cleaning . . . . . 270
Legal information . . . . . 218
Apps . . . . . 219
Dash cam . . . . . 219
Data module serial number (IMEI) . . . . . 218
Head-up display . . . . . 219
Instrument cluster . . . . . 219
Smartphone interface . . . . . 219
Software information . . . . . 218
Software licenses . . . . . 218
System . . . . . 219
Version information . . . . . 218
License plate
Securing . . . . . 291
License plate bracket . . . . . 291
Lifting points (vehicle jack) . . . . . 275
Light/rain sensor
Headlights . . . . . 49
Intermittent mode (windshield wipers) . . . . 57
Lighting . . . . . 49
Exterior . . . . . 49
Interior . . . . . 53
Light switch module . . . . . 49
Light (lane center guidance behavior) . . . . . 127
Listener settings menu . . . . . 206
Load . . . . . 292
Local users . . . . . 29
Locking and unlocking
Using sensors . . . . . 42
Using the convenience key . . . . . 42
Low beam headlights . . . . . 49
LTE
*refer to* Mobile communications coupling antenna . . . . . 189
Luggage
Luggage compartment lid . . . . . 44
Luggage compartment
Cargo floor . . . . . 82
Increasing the size . . . . . 81, 82
Power sources . . . . . 79
Safety information . . . . . 80
*also refer to* Luggage compartment . . . . . 80
Luggage compartment cover, rigid
Removing and installing . . . . . 81
Luggage compartment lid . . . . . 44
Closing button . . . . . 45
General . . . . . 44
Manually unlocking . . . . . 46
Power closing . . . . . 45
Power opening . . . . . 45
Lumbar support . . . . . 61


# M


Maintenance . . . . . 290
Maintenance intervals
*refer to* Service interval display . . . . . 243
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) . . . . . 223
Maneuver assist . . . . . 166, 167
Maneuver display . . . . . 200
Manual operation
Luggage compartment lid . . . . . 46
Manual shifting . . . . . 94

Map
Adjusting orientation . . . . . 197
Adjusting scale . . . . . 197
Changing map colors . . . . . 202
Operating concept . . . . . 201
Updating . . . . . 202
Using a destination . . . . . 199
Viewing country information . . . . . 202
MAP
*refer to* Message Access Profile . . . . . 188
Map contents menu . . . . . 198
Massage function . . . . . 61
Front . . . . . 62
Matrix LED headlights . . . . . 51
Mechanical key . . . . . 40
Media . . . . . 207
Bluetooth audio player . . . . . 208
Connecting devices . . . . . 208
Online additional data . . . . . 209
Playback . . . . . 208
Search . . . . . 209
Selecting a source . . . . . 208
Settings menu . . . . . 209
Setting the picture format . . . . . 209
Supported formats . . . . . 209
Media player
*refer to* Media . . . . . 207, 208
Message Access Profile . . . . . 188
Messages
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) . . . . . 223
Passenger occupant detection system . . . . . 37
*also refer to* Text messages . . . . . 188
Messages menu . . . . . 186
Microphone input level . . . . . 186
Mild hybrid drive system . . . . . 90
Mirror compass . . . . . 58
Mirror heating . . . . . 85
Mirrors
Adjusting exterior mirrors . . . . . 54
Dimming . . . . . 55
Vanity mirror . . . . . 56
MMI
Adjusting audio and system volume . . . . . 23
Adjusting the brightness . . . . . 24
Adjusting the information tiles in the overview screen . . . . . 21
Adjusting the overview screen information tiles . . . . . 24
App overview . . . . . 21
Creating and managing folders . . . . . 24
Customizing . . . . . 24
Customizing the direct access area . . . . 21, 24
Deleting downloaded apps . . . . . 21, 24
Direct access area . . . . . 21
Goodbye screen . . . . . 21
Opening the app overview . . . . . 22
Opening the overview screen . . . . . 22
Overview screen . . . . . 21
Programming the steering wheel button . . . 23
Restarting . . . . . 23
Shutting down/booting up . . . . . 23
Status bar . . . . . 21
Storing/deleting favorites . . . . . 22
Symbols . . . . . 22
Tab area . . . . . 21
Turning the displays on or off . . . . . 23
Turning the standby screen on or off . . . . . 23
User interface . . . . . 21
MMI control knob . . . . . 9, 23
MMI front passenger display . . . . . 22
Mobile communications coupling antenna . . 189
Mobile data . . . . . 288
Mobile device
*refer to* Phone . . . . . 185
Mobile phone compartment
*refer to* Phone compartment . . . . . 189
Mountain passes . . . . . 101
Mountain roads . . . . . 101
Multifunction steering wheel
Audi assistant . . . . . 26
Programming buttons . . . . . 23
Multi Media Interface
*refer to* MMI . . . . . 20
Mute . . . . . 23
myAudi . . . . . 29, 193
myAudi navigation . . . . . 199
myAudi users . . . . . 29

# N

Natural leather care and cleaning . . . . . 270

Navigation . . . . . 197
Alternative routes . . . . . 200
Automatic route adjustment . . . . . 200
Canceling route guidance . . . . . 200
Destination information . . . . . 200
Displaying destination details . . . . . 199
Editing a route . . . . . 200
Home/work address . . . . . 197
Last destinations . . . . . 197
Maneuver display . . . . . 200
Map contents . . . . . 198
Map update . . . . . 202
myAudi navigation . . . . . 199
Predictive route guidance . . . . . 201
Route monitor . . . . . 200
Satellite map . . . . . 202
Selecting contacts as the destination . . . . 199
Settings menu . . . . . 198
Starting route guidance . . . . . 198
Traffic information . . . . . 202
Using a destination . . . . . 199
Using a search filter . . . . . 199
Neutral . . . . . 99
NHTSA . . . . . 294

# O

Octane rating (gasoline) . . . . . 220
Odometer . . . . . 18
OFF (climate control system) . . . . . 85
Oil
*refer to* Engine oil . . . . . 228
On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) . . . . . 223
Online
Car Care . . . . . 244
Measures . . . . . 244
Service . . . . . 244
Online additional data . . . . . 209, 210
Online Car Care . . . . . 244
Online map
*refer to* Satellite map . . . . . 202
Online Owner's Manual
*refer to* Owner's Manual (digital) . . . . . 7
Online roadside assistance . . . . . 196
Online station tracking . . . . . 204
Preferred data rate . . . . . 204
Opening . . . . . 30
Automatic luggage compartment lid . . . . . 45
Convenience opening . . . . . 47
Fuel filler door . . . . . 221
Hood . . . . . 226
Luggage compartment lid . . . . . 45
Windows . . . . . 47
Opening and closing
*refer to* Unlocking and locking . . . . . 31
Outside air temperature display . . . . . 17
Overview (cockpit) . . . . . 9
Owner's Manual (digital)
Accessing . . . . . 7
Accessing digitally . . . . . 7
In myAudi . . . . . 7
In the Infotainment system . . . . . 7

# P

Paint damage . . . . . 268
PANIC button . . . . . 40
Panoramic glass roof
Operating . . . . . 56
Park assist plus . . . . . 172
Parking . . . . . 93
Parking and maneuvering . . . . . 157
Parking brake
*refer to* Electromechanical parking brake . . 99
Parking lights . . . . . 49
Parking lock
*refer to* Transmission selector position . . . . 91
Parking service
*refer to* Valet mode . . . . . 28
Parking system menu . . . . . 117
Parking systems . . . . . 157
Automatic activation . . . . . 158
Cleaning the sensors and camera . . . . . 267
Entertainment fader while parking . . . . . 157
Park assist plus . . . . . 172
Parking space search . . . . . 170
Rear cross-traffic assist . . . . . 164
Rearview camera . . . . . 159
Remote-controlled parking . . . . . 175
Setting the volume . . . . . 157
Surround view cameras . . . . . 159
Turning off maneuver assist . . . . . 168

Particulate filter . . . . . 223
Cleaning . . . . . 224
Information . . . . . 223
Messages . . . . . 224
Regeneration drive . . . . . 224
Passenger occupant detection system
Function . . . . . 35
Functional limitations . . . . . 36
Introduction . . . . . 35
Messages . . . . . 37
Notifications . . . . . 37
Settings . . . . . 36
Setting the notification tone . . . . . 37
System limitations . . . . . 36
Pedals . . . . . 94
Perchlorate . . . . . 290
Performance during assisted driving . . . . . 137
Performing a reset
*refer to* Restoring factory settings . . . . . 216
Personal profiles
*refer to* Users . . . . . 29
Phone . . . . . 185
Answering and ending a call . . . . . 187
Conference call . . . . . 187
Connecting a mobile device . . . . . 185
Dialing a number . . . . . 186
Editing a message template . . . . . 186
Mobile communications coupling antenna . 189
Options while making a phone call . . . . . 186
Phone compartment . . . . . 188
Playing music . . . . . 208
Reminder warning . . . . . 190
Settings menu . . . . . 186
Starting a call . . . . . 186
Switching mobile devices . . . . . 186
Text messages . . . . . 188
Wireless charging . . . . . 189
Phonebook
*refer to* Contact list . . . . . 187
Phone compartment . . . . . 188
Picture format
Video . . . . . 209
PIN
Protection . . . . . 29
Playback
Media . . . . . 208
Radio . . . . . 203
Playing music
*refer to* Media . . . . . 207, 208
Polishing . . . . . 268
Pollen filter
*refer to* Active combination filter . . . . . 83
Power sources . . . . . 79
Power windows . . . . . 47
Predictive control
*refer to* Predictive speed adjustment . 139, 140
Predictive efficiency messages . . . . . 149
Predictive route guidance . . . . . 201
Predictive speed adjustment . . . . . 139, 140
*also refer to* Predictive speed adjustment . . . . . 139, 140
Preferred online radio data rate . . . . . 204
Preferred screen view . . . . . 204
Pressure
Tire pressure monitoring system . . . . . 262
Privacy settings
*refer to* Data privacy . . . . . 288
Proactive occupant protection . . . . . 153
Front . . . . . 153
Messages . . . . . 154
Rear . . . . . 153
Side . . . . . 153
System limitations . . . . . 153
Progressive steering . . . . . 104
Protecting . . . . . 268
Purchased apps and digital services . . . . . 195
Purchased functions (functions on demand) . 194
Purchase history . . . . . 194
Pyrotechnic elements . . . . . 290

## Q

quattro . . . . . 104
Audi drive select . . . . . 103
Quick access area . . . . . 21
Function overview . . . . . 22
Symbols . . . . . 22

## R

Radio . . . . . 203
Automatic music recognition . . . . . 204
Connecting a music streaming service . . . . 205
Frequency band . . . . . 203

HD Radio . . . . . 204
Online station tracking . . . . . 204
Opening the sources menu . . . . . 204
Operating . . . . . 203
Radio text . . . . . 205
Search . . . . . 203
Selecting stations . . . . . 203
Settings menu . . . . . 204
Setting the frequency . . . . . 203
SiriusXM . . . . . 205
Radio communication equipment . . . . . 291
Radio equipment . . . . . 291
Radio Standards Specification (RSS) . . . . . 293
Rain/light sensor
Headlights . . . . . 49
Intermittent mode (windshield wipers) . . . . 57
Reading lights . . . . . 53
Rear cross-traffic assist . . . . . 164
Rear emergency brake assist . . . . . 163
Rear lid
*refer to* Luggage compartment lid . . . . . 45
Rear notification tone menu . . . . . 33
Rearview camera . . . . . 159
Rear window defogger . . . . . 85
Recalls . . . . . 244
Recirculation mode . . . . . 84
Recuperation . . . . . 90
Refueling . . . . . 221
Fuel filler door manual release . . . . . 223
Reminder signal
*refer to* Reminder warning . . . . . 190
Reminder warning . . . . . 190
Remote-controlled parking . . . . . 175
Remote access authorization (key user) . . . . . 30
Remote control
Garage door opener . . . . . 47
Remote control key . . . . . 31, 40
Convenience opening and closing . . . . . 47
Key replacement . . . . . 40
LED . . . . . 40
Replacing the battery . . . . . 40
Unlocking and locking . . . . . 42
*also refer to* Vehicle key . . . . . 40
Remote drive assistant . . . . . 178
Remote park assist
*refer to* Remote-controlled parking . . . . . 175
Removing wheel bolt caps . . . . . 274
Repairs . . . . . 290
Replacement key . . . . . 40
Replacement parts . . . . . 291
Replacing bulbs . . . . . 284
Replacing fuses . . . . . 280
Replacing the battery
12 volt vehicle battery . . . . . 240
Vehicle key . . . . . 40
Reporting Safety Defects . . . . . 294
Resetting the system
*refer to* Restoring factory settings . . . . . 216
Resetting (factory settings) . . . . . 216
Restoring factory settings . . . . . 216
Reverse gear
*refer to* Transmission selector position . . . . 91
Rims . . . . . 259
Cleaning . . . . . 267
Ringtone . . . . . 186
Ringtone volume . . . . . 186
Rolling . . . . . 93
Rolling ability
Electromechanical parking brake . . . . . 99
Establishing . . . . . 99
”N” position . . . . . 92
Roof load . . . . . 293
Roof rack . . . . . 82
*also refer to* Roof rack . . . . . 82
Route
Alternative routes . . . . . 200
Editing . . . . . 200
Route monitor . . . . . 200
Setting the route criteria . . . . . 200
Route guidance
Canceling . . . . . 200
Starting . . . . . 198
Running direction (tires) . . . . . 276

# S

Safety belts . . . . . 65
Cleaning . . . . . 269
Locking . . . . . 76
Securing child restraint systems . . . . . 76
Satellite map . . . . . 202

Search
Media . . . . . 209
Navigation . . . . . 198
Radio . . . . . 203
SiriusXM . . . . . 205
Searching for a destination . . . . . 198
Internet search . . . . . 198
Searching for a point of interest . . . . . 198
Using a destination from the map . . . . . 199
Using a search filter . . . . . 199
Searching for a gas station . . . . . 198
Searching for a parking space . . . . . 198
Seat heating . . . . . 85
Seats
Adjusting the front seats . . . . . 61
Adjusting the thigh support . . . . . 61
Cleaning . . . . . 269
Folding the rear seats forward and back . 81, 82
Head restraints . . . . . 64
Massage function . . . . . 61
Resetting the position . . . . . 61
Seat ventilation . . . . . 85
Selecting a source
Media . . . . . 208
Selective wheel torque control . . . . . 106
Self-learning navigation
*refer to* Predictive route guidance . . . . . 201
Selling the vehicle (factory settings) . . . . . 216
Sending tone sequences . . . . . 186
Sensors
Coverage areas . . . . . 114
Locations . . . . . 115
Service card . . . . . 42
Service interval
*refer to* Service interval display . . . . . 243
Service interval display . . . . . 243, 244
Operating . . . . . 244
Service measures . . . . . 244
Settings . . . . . 215
Announcements and sounds . . . . . 216
Bluetooth . . . . . 216
Central locking . . . . . 32
Checking the software version . . . . . 217
Connection manager . . . . . 216
Date and time . . . . . 215
Digital key . . . . . 41
Interior monitoring . . . . . 34
Languages and input . . . . . 216
Location . . . . . 216
Media . . . . . 209
Navigation . . . . . 198
Passenger occupant detection system . . . . . 36
Phone . . . . . 186
Radio . . . . . 204
Rear notification tone . . . . . 33
Resetting to factory settings . . . . . 216
SiriusXM . . . . . 206
Software update . . . . . 217
Sound . . . . . 216
Units . . . . . 216
Updating the software . . . . . 217
Valet mode . . . . . 28
Settings menu . . . . . 215
Setting the rear notification tone . . . . . 37
Shade
Rear doors . . . . . 56
Shift light indicator . . . . . 19
Shift paddles . . . . . 94
Turning recuperation on or off . . . . . 90
Shop
*refer to* Store . . . . . 194
Side assist . . . . . 119
Cleaning the sensors . . . . . 267
Side shade
Rear doors . . . . . 56
SIM card . . . . . 192
SiriusXM . . . . . 205
Functions . . . . . 206
Listener profiles . . . . . 206
Listener settings . . . . . 206
Live Sports . . . . . 206
Notifications . . . . . 206
Operating . . . . . 205
Pandora stations . . . . . 206
Registering . . . . . 206
Search . . . . . 205
Selecting a program . . . . . 205
Selecting the commentary . . . . . 206
Settings menu . . . . . 206
Team Notifications . . . . . 206
Tune start . . . . . 206
Smartphone
*refer to* Phone . . . . . 185

Smartphone interface . . . . . 214
Connecting . . . . . 214
Legal information . . . . . 219
Snow chains . . . . . 260
Socket
*refer to* Power sources . . . . . 79
Software information
*refer to* Legal information . . . . . 218
Software update . . . . . 217
Sort order . . . . . 187
Sound profile
Audi drive select . . . . . 103
Speed limit information
*refer to* Traffic sign recognition . . . . . 150
Speed limits
*refer to* Traffic sign recognition . . . . . 150
Speed warning . . . . . 118
Sport differential . . . . . 105
Start/Stop system . . . . . 96
Messages . . . . . 97
Turning off or on . . . . . 96
Starting rearview camera cleaning . . . . . 162
Starting to drive . . . . . 93
Starting (engine) . . . . . 97
Status bar . . . . . 21
Symbols . . . . . 22
Steering . . . . . 104
Audi drive select . . . . . 103
*also refer to* Steering . . . . . 104
Steering wheel
Adjusting . . . . . 63
Shift paddles . . . . . 94
Steering wheel heating . . . . . 85
Steps for determining correct load limit . . . 259
Stopping . . . . . 93
Stopping (engine) . . . . . 97
Storage . . . . . 78
Store . . . . . 194
Strong (lane center guidance behavior) . . . . 127
Sun visors . . . . . 56
Supplying battery power from an external source . . . . . 276
Surround view cameras . . . . . 159
Suspension . . . . . 103
Audi drive select . . . . . 103
Symbols
Navigation . . . . . 197
Phone . . . . . 186
Radio . . . . . 204
*also refer to* Indicator lights . . . . . 10
SYNC (climate control system) . . . . . 85
System
Legal information . . . . . 219
Software information . . . . . 219

# T

Tachometer . . . . . 18
Tail lights
Cleaning . . . . . 267
Tank system
Messages . . . . . 223
Technical data . . . . . 292
Technical modifications . . . . . 290
Technical product information . . . . . 244
Tethering
*refer to* Wi-Fi . . . . . 192
Text input . . . . . 19
Switching the input language . . . . . 19
Switching the input method . . . . . 19
Text messages . . . . . 188
Texts
*refer to* Text messages . . . . . 188
Themes . . . . . 212
Tie-downs . . . . . 82
Tightening specification (wheel bolts) . . . . . 276
Time gap to the vehicle driving ahead . . . . . 118
tiptronic
*refer to* Manual shifting . . . . . 94
Tire Mobility System (tire repair kit) . . . . . 272
Tire pressure
Displaying . . . . . 263
Storing . . . . . 264
Tire pressure sticker . . . . . 255
Tires . . . . . 244
Labeling . . . . . 245
Load index . . . . . 245
Low-profile tires . . . . . 261
Manufacture date . . . . . 245
Replacing . . . . . 274
Service life . . . . . 253
Speed rating . . . . . 245

Tire pressure . . . . . 255
Tire pressure monitoring system . . . . . 262
Tire pressure table . . . . . 256
Tire pressure (trailer towing) . . . . . 107
Tire repair kit . . . . . 272
Treadwear indicators . . . . . 253
Unidirectional . . . . . 247, 276
Uniform tire quality grading . . . . . 261
Tires and wheels
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 247
Tires and vehicle load limits . . . . . 257
Tire temperature
Displaying . . . . . 263
Toll Module
*refer to* Integrated Toll Module . . . . . 156
Tool . . . . . 272
Top tether anchor (securing the child restraint system) . . . . . 77
Torque
Wheel bolts . . . . . 276
Towing . . . . . 278
Towing eye . . . . . 280
TPMS
Tire pressure monitoring system . . . . . 262
Traffic information . . . . . 202
Free flowing traffic . . . . . 202
Traffic light information . . . . . 154
Displays . . . . . 154
Traffic rerouting
*refer to* Automatic route adjustment . . . . . 200
Traffic sign recognition . . . . . 150
Trailer towing . . . . . 107
Tongue weight . . . . . 107
Trailer hitch . . . . . 109
Trailer load . . . . . 107
Trailer stabilization . . . . . 109
Transmission selector . . . . . 91
Transmission selector position . . . . . 92
Turn signals . . . . . 50


# U


Uniform tire quality grading . . . . . 261
Unlocking and locking . . . . . 31
Automatically . . . . . 43
Using the central locking switch . . . . . 33
Using the digital key . . . . . 43
Using the digital key card . . . . . 43
Update (software) . . . . . 217
USB connection . . . . . 79
Playing music . . . . . 208
USB stick
Supported types or formats . . . . . 209
User management . . . . . 22
Users
Local users . . . . . 29
myAudi users . . . . . 29
Opening the user management . . . . . 22
Using routines . . . . . 27
Using suggestions . . . . . 27


# V


Valet mode . . . . . 28
Settings menu . . . . . 28
Setting the duration . . . . . 28
Valet parking
Key card . . . . . 42
*also refer to* Key card . . . . . 42
Vanity mirror . . . . . 56
Vehicle
Care/cleaning . . . . . 265
Dimensions . . . . . 292
Identification data . . . . . 292
Out of service . . . . . 271
Parking . . . . . 93
Raising . . . . . 275
Securing . . . . . 93
Starting . . . . . 88
Unlocking and locking automatically . . . . . 43
Vehicle-related online services . . . . . 288
Vehicle care . . . . . 265
Vehicle control services . . . . . 193
*also refer to* Audi connect Remote & Control . . . . . 193
Vehicle hotspot . . . . . 194
Vehicle Identification Number . . . . . 292
Vehicle jack
Tire change mode . . . . . 274
Vehicle key . . . . . 31, 40
Replacing the battery . . . . . 40
Vehicle menu . . . . . 25
Vehicle starting system . . . . . 97


8B1012721BF

Vehicle tool kit . . . . . 272
Ventilation . . . . . 83
VIN
*refer to* Vehicle Identification Number . . . 292

# W

Warning lights
*refer to* Indicator lights . . . . . 10
Washing matte finish paint . . . . . 266
Wave band
*refer to* Frequency band . . . . . 203
Weights . . . . . 292
Wheel bolts . . . . . 259
Anti-theft . . . . . 275
Loosening . . . . . 275
Torque . . . . . 276
Wheels . . . . . 244
Cleaning . . . . . 267
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 247
Replacing . . . . . 274
Tire pressure monitoring system . . . . . 262
Tires and vehicle load limits . . . . . 257
Wheel wrench . . . . . 272
Wi-Fi . . . . . 192
Wi-Fi network . . . . . 192
Windows
Child safety lock . . . . . 34
Cleaning and removing ice . . . . . 269
Convenience opening and closing . . . . . 47
Defrosting . . . . . 85
Opening and closing . . . . . 47
Power windows . . . . . 47
Windshield
Cleaning . . . . . 57
*also refer to* Windshield . . . . . 57
Windshield washer system . . . . . 57, 243
Capacities . . . . . 292
Messages . . . . . 243
Windshield wipers . . . . . 57
Winter operation
12 volt vehicle battery . . . . . 240
Cooling system . . . . . 233
Defrosting the windows . . . . . 85
Rear window defogger . . . . . 85
Removing ice from windows . . . . . 269
Seat heating . . . . . 85
Snow chains . . . . . 260
Steering wheel heating . . . . . 85
Tires . . . . . 260
Washing your vehicle . . . . . 265
Windshield washer system . . . . . 243
Winter tires . . . . . 260
Wireless charging . . . . . 189
Wireless charging menu . . . . . 189
Work address . . . . . 197